Government Gazette
Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 698 4 August Augustus 2023 No. 49079

PART 1 OF 3

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5845

IMPORTANT NOTICE:

THE GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS WILL NOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY ERRORS THAT MIGHT OCCUR DUE TO THE SUBMISSION OF INCOMPLETE / INCORRECT / ILLEGIBLE COPY.

NO FUTURE QUERIES WILL BE HANDLED IN CONNECTION WITH THE ABOVE.

Contents

General Notices • Algemene Kennisgewings

Board Notices • Raadskennisgewings

government printing
Department:
Government Printing Works
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

HIGH ALERT: SCAM WARNING!!!

TO ALL SUPPLIERS AND SERVICE PROVIDERS OF THE GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS

It has come to the attention of the *GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS* that there are certain unscrupulous companies and individuals who are defrauding unsuspecting businesses disguised as representatives of the *Government Printing Works* (*GPW*).

The scam involves the fraudsters using the letterhead of *GPW* to send out fake tender bids to companies and requests to supply equipment and goods.

Although the contact person's name on the letter may be of an existing official, the contact details on the letter are not the same as the *Government Printing Works*'. When searching on the Internet for the address of the company that has sent the fake tender document, the address does not exist.

The banking details are in a private name and not company name. Government will never ask you to deposit any funds for any business transaction. *GPW* has alerted the relevant law enforcement authorities to investigate this scam to protect legitimate businesses as well as the name of the organisation.

Example of e-mails these fraudsters are using:

PROCUREMENT@GPW-GOV.ORG

Should you suspect that you are a victim of a scam, you must urgently contact the police and inform the *GPW*.

GPW has an official email with the domain as **@gpw.gov.za**

Government e-mails DO NOT have org in their e-mail addresses. All of these fraudsters also use the same or very similar telephone numbers. Although such number with an area code 012 looks like a landline, it is not fixed to any property.

GPW will never send you an e-mail asking you to supply equipment and goods without a purchase/order number. *GPW* does not procure goods for another level of Government. The organisation will not be liable for actions that result in companies or individuals being resultant victims of such a scam.

Government Printing Works gives businesses the opportunity to supply goods and services through RFQ / Tendering process. In order to be eligible to bid to provide goods and services, suppliers must be registered on the National Treasury's Central Supplier Database (CSD). To be registered, they must meet all current legislative requirements (e.g. have a valid tax clearance certificate and be in good standing with the South African Revenue Services - SARS).

The tender process is managed through the Supply Chain Management (SCM) system of the department. SCM is highly regulated to minimise the risk of fraud, and to meet objectives which include value for money, open and effective competition, equitability, accountability, fair dealing, transparency and an ethical approach. Relevant legislation, regulations, policies, guidelines and instructions can be found on the tender's website.

Fake Tenders

National Treasury's CSD has launched the Government Order Scam campaign to combat fraudulent requests for quotes (RFQs). Such fraudulent requests have resulted in innocent companies losing money. We work hard at preventing and fighting fraud, but criminal activity is always a risk.

How tender scams work

There are many types of tender scams. Here are some of the more frequent scenarios:

Fraudsters use what appears to be government department stationery with fictitious logos and contact details to send a fake RFQ to a company to invite it to urgently supply goods. Shortly after the company has submitted its quote, it receives notification that it has won the tender. The company delivers the goods to someone who poses as an official or at a fake site. The Department has no idea of this transaction made in its name. The company is then never paid and suffers a loss.

OR

Fraudsters use what appears to be government department stationery with fictitious logos and contact details to send a fake RFQ to Company A to invite it to urgently supply goods. Typically, the tender specification is so unique that only Company B (a fictitious company created by the fraudster) can supply the goods in question.

Shortly after Company A has submitted its quote it receives notification that it has won the tender. Company A orders the goods and pays a deposit to the fictitious Company B. Once Company B receives the money, it disappears. Company A's money is stolen in the process.

Protect yourself from being scammed

- If you are registered on the supplier databases and you receive a request to tender or quote that seems to be from a government department, contact the department to confirm that the request is legitimate. Do not use the contact details on the tender document as these might be fraudulent.
- Compare tender details with those that appear in the Tender Bulletin, available online at **www.gpwonline.co.za**
- Make sure you familiarise yourself with how government procures goods and services. Visit the tender website for more information on how to tender.
- If you are uncomfortable about the request received, consider visiting the government department and/or the place of delivery and/or the service provider from whom you will be sourcing the goods.
- In the unlikely event that you are asked for a deposit to make a bid, contact the SCM unit of the department in question to ask whether this is in fact correct.

Any incidents of corruption, fraud, theft and misuse of government property in the *Government Printing Works* can be reported to:

Supply Chain Management: Ms. Anna Marie Du Toit, Tel. (012) 748 6292.
Email: **Annamarie.DuToit@gpw.gov.za**

Marketing and Stakeholder Relations: Ms Bonakele Mbhele, at Tel. (012) 748 6193.
Email: **Bonakele.Mbhele@gpw.gov.za**

Security Services: Mr Daniel Legoabe, at tel. (012) 748 6176.
Email: **Daniel.Legoabe@gpw.gov.za**

Closing times for **ORDINARY WEEKLY** *GOVERNMENT GAZETTE* 2023

*The closing time is **15:00** sharp on the following days:*

- **08 December,** Thursday for the issue of Thursday **15 December 2022**
- **15 December,** Thursday for the issue of Friday **23 December 2022**
- **22 December,** Thursday for the issue of Friday **30 December 2022**
- **29 December,** Thursday for the issue of Friday **06 January 2023**
- **06 January,** Friday for the issue of Friday **13 January 2023**
- **13 January,** Friday for the issue of Friday **20 January 2023**
- **20 January,** Friday for the issue of Friday **27 January 2023**
- **27 January,** Friday for the issue of Friday **03 February 2023**
- **03 February,** Friday for the issue of Friday **10 February 2023**
- **10 February,** Friday for the issue of Friday **17 February 2023**
- **17 February,** Friday for the issue of Friday **24 February 2023**
- **24 February,** Friday for the issue of Friday **03 March 2023**
- **03 March,** Friday for the issue of Friday **10 March 2023**
- **10 March,** Friday for the issue of Friday **17 March 2023**
- **16 March,** Thursday for the issue of Friday **24 March 2023**
- **24 March,** Friday for the issue of Friday **31 March 2023**
- **30 March,** Thursday for the issue of Thursday **06 April 2023**
- **05 April,** Wednesday for the issue of Friday **14 April 2023**
- **14 April,** Friday for the issue of Friday **21 April 2023**
- **20 April,** Thursday for the issue of Friday **28 April 2023**
- **26 April,** Wednesday for the issue of Friday **05 May 2023**
- **05 May,** Friday for the issue of Friday **12 May 2023**
- **12 May,** Friday for the issue of Friday **19 May 2023**
- **19 May,** Friday for the issue of Friday **26 May 2023**
- **26 May,** Friday for the issue of Friday **02 June 2023**
- **02 June,** Friday for the issue of Friday **09 June 2023**
- **08 June,** Thursday for the issue of Thursday **15 June 2023**
- **15 June,** Thursday for the issue of Friday **23 June 2023**
- **23 June,** Friday for the issue of Friday **30 June 2023**
- **30 June,** Friday for the issue of Friday **07 July 2023**
- **07 July,** Friday for the issue of Friday **14 July 2023**
- **14 July,** Friday for the issue of Friday **21 July 2023**
- **21 July,** Friday for the issue of Friday **28 July 2023**
- **28 July,** Friday for the issue of Friday **04 August 2023**
- **03 August,** Thursday for the issue of Friday **11 August 2023**
- **11 August,** Friday for the issue of Friday **18 August 2023**
- **18 August,** Friday for the issue of Friday **25 August 2023**
- **25 August,** Friday for the issue of Friday **01 September 2023**
- **01 September,** Friday for the issue of Friday **08 September 2023**
- **08 September,** Friday for the issue of Friday **15 September 2023**
- **15 September,** Friday for the issue of Friday **22 September 2023**
- **21 September,** Thursday for the issue of Friday **29 September 2023**
- **29 September,** Friday for the issue of Friday **06 October 2023**
- **06 October,** Friday for the issue of Friday **13 October 2023**
- **13 October,** Friday for the issue of Friday **20 October 2023**
- **20 October,** Friday for the issue of Friday **27 October 2023**
- **27 October,** Friday for the issue of Friday **03 November 2023**
- **03 November,** Friday for the issue of Friday **10 November 2023**
- **10 November,** Friday for the issue of Friday **17 November 2023**
- **17 November,** Friday for the issue of Friday **24 November 2023**
- **24 November,** Friday for the issue of Friday **01 December 2023**
- **01 December,** Friday for the issue of Friday **08 December 2023**
- **08 December,** Friday for the issue of Friday **15 December 2023**
- **15 December,** Friday for the issue of Friday **22 December 2023**
- **20 December,** Wednesday for the issue of Friday **29 December 2023**

LIST OF TARIFF RATES

FOR PUBLICATION OF NOTICES

COMMENCEMENT: 1 APRIL 2018

NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL

Notice sizes for National, Provincial & Tender gazettes 1/4, 2/4, 3/4, 4/4 per page. Notices submitted will be charged at R1008.80 per full page, pro-rated based on the above categories.

Pricing for National, Provincial - Variable Priced Notices		
Notice Type	**Page Space**	**New Price (R)**
Ordinary National, Provincial	1/4 - Quarter Page	252.20
Ordinary National, Provincial	2/4 - Half Page	504.40
Ordinary National, Provincial	3/4 - Three Quarter Page	756.60
Ordinary National, Provincial	4/4 - Full Page	1008.80

EXTRA-ORDINARY

All Extra-ordinary National and Provincial gazette notices are non-standard notices and attract a variable price based on the number of pages submitted.

The pricing structure for National and Provincial notices which are submitted as **Extra ordinary submissions** will be charged at R**3026.32** per page.

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

The **Government Printing Works** (**GPW**) has established rules for submitting notices in line with its electronic notice processing system, which requires the use of electronic *Adobe* Forms. Please ensure that you adhere to these guidelines when completing and submitting your notice submission.

Closing Times for Acceptance of Notices

1. The *Government Gazette* and *Government Tender Bulletin* are weekly publications that are published on Fridays and the closing time for the acceptance of notices is strictly applied according to the scheduled time for each gazette.

2. Please refer to the Submission Notice Deadline schedule in the table below. This schedule is also published online on the Government Printing works website www.gpwonline.co.za

   All re-submissions will be subject to the standard cut-off times.
   All notices received after the closing time will be rejected.

Government Gazette Type	Publication Frequency	Publication Date	Submission Deadline	Cancellations Deadline
National Gazette	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 working days prior to publication
Regulation Gazette	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 working days prior to publication
Petrol Price Gazette	Monthly	Tuesday before 1st Wednesday of the month	One day before publication	1 working day prior to publication
Road Carrier Permits	Weekly	Friday	Thursday 15h00 for next Friday	3 working days prior to publication
Unclaimed Monies (Justice, Labour or Lawyers)	January / September 2 per year	Last Friday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Parliament (Acts, White Paper, Green Paper)	As required	Any day of the week	None	3 working days prior to publication
Manuals	Bi- Monthly	2nd and last Thursday of the month	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
State of Budget (National Treasury)	Monthly	30th or last Friday of the month	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Extraordinary Gazettes	As required	Any day of the week	*Before 10h00 on publication date*	*Before 10h00 on publication date*
Legal Gazettes A, B and C	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 working days prior to publication
Tender Bulletin	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 working days prior to publication
Gauteng	Weekly	Wednesday	Two weeks before publication	3 days **after** submission deadline
Eastern Cape	Weekly	Monday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Northern Cape	Weekly	Monday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
North West	Weekly	Tuesday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
KwaZulu-Natal	Weekly	Thursday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Limpopo	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication
Mpumalanga	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

Government Gazette Type	Publication Frequency	Publication Date	Submission Deadline	Cancellations Deadline
Gauteng Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	Wednesday before the First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 working days **after** submission deadline
Northern Cape Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 working days **after** submission deadline
National Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 working days **after** submission deadline
Mpumalanga Liquor License Gazette	Bi-Monthly	Second & Fourth Friday	One week before publication	3 working days prior to publication

Extraordinary Gazettes

3. *Extraordinary Gazettes* can have only one publication date. If multiple publications of an *Extraordinary Gazette* are required, a separate Z95/Z95Prov *Adobe* Forms for each publication date must be submitted.

Notice Submission Process

4. Download the latest *Adobe* form, for the relevant notice to be placed, from the **Government Printing Works** website www.gpwonline.co.za.

5. The *Adobe* form needs to be completed electronically using *Adobe Acrobat* / *Acrobat Reader*. Only electronically completed *Adobe* forms will be accepted. No printed, handwritten and/or scanned *Adobe* forms will be accepted.

6. The completed electronic *Adobe* form has to be submitted via email to submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za. The form needs to be submitted in its original electronic *Adobe* format to enable the system to extract the completed information from the form for placement in the publication.

7. Every notice submitted **must** be accompanied by an official **GPW** quotation. This must be obtained from the *eGazette* Contact Centre.

8. Each notice submission should be sent as a single email. The email **must** contain **all documentation relating to a particular notice submission**.

   8.1. Each of the following documents must be attached to the email as a separate attachment:

   8.1.1. An electronically completed *Adobe* form, specific to the type of notice that is to be placed.

   8.1.1.1. For National *Government Gazette* or *Provincial Gazette* notices, the notices must be accompanied by an electronic Z95 or Z95Prov *Adobe* form

   8.1.1.2. The notice content (body copy) **MUST** be a separate attachment.

   8.1.2. A copy of the official **Government Printing Works** quotation you received for your notice. *(Please see Quotation section below for further details)*

   8.1.3. A valid and legible Proof of Payment / Purchase Order: **Government Printing Works** account customer must include a copy of their Purchase Order**. Non-Government Printing Works** account customer needs to submit the proof of payment for the notice

   8.1.4. Where separate notice content is applicable (Z95, Z95 Prov and TForm 3, it should **also** be attached as a separate attachment. *(Please see the Copy Section below, for the specifications)*.

   8.1.5. Any additional notice information if applicable.

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

9. The electronic *Adobe* form will be taken as the primary source for the notice information to be published. Instructions that are on the email body or covering letter that contradicts the notice form content will not be considered. The information submitted on the electronic *Adobe* form will be published as-is.

10. To avoid duplicated publication of the same notice and double billing, Please submit your notice **ONLY ONCE.**

11. Notices brought to **GPW** by "walk-in" customers on electronic media can only be submitted in *Adobe* electronic form format. All "walk-in" customers with notices that are not on electronic *Adobe* forms will be routed to the Contact Centre where they will be assisted to complete the forms in the required format.

12. Should a customer submit a bulk submission of hard copy notices delivered by a messenger on behalf of any organisation e.g. newspaper publisher, the messenger will be referred back to the sender as the submission does not adhere to the submission rules.

QUOTATIONS

13. Quotations are valid until the next tariff change.

    13.1. ***Take note:*** **GPW**'s annual tariff increase takes place on ***1 April*** therefore any quotations issued, accepted and submitted for publication up to ***31 March*** will keep the old tariff. For notices to be published from 1 April, a quotation must be obtained from **GPW** with the new tariffs. Where a tariff increase is implemented during the year, **GPW** endeavours to provide customers with 30 days' notice of such changes.

14. Each quotation has a unique number.

15. Form Content notices must be emailed to the *eGazette* Contact Centre for a quotation.

    15.1. The *Adobe* form supplied is uploaded by the Contact Centre Agent and the system automatically calculates the cost of your notice based on the layout/format of the content supplied.

    15.2. It is critical that these *Adobe* Forms are completed correctly and adhere to the guidelines as stipulated by **GPW**.

16. **APPLICABLE ONLY TO GPW ACCOUNT HOLDERS**:

    16.1. **GPW** Account Customers must provide a valid **GPW** account number to obtain a quotation.

    16.2. Accounts for **GPW** account customers **must** be active with sufficient credit to transact with **GPW** to submit notices.

        16.2.1. If you are unsure about or need to resolve the status of your account, please contact the **GPW** Finance Department prior to submitting your notices. (If the account status is not resolved prior to submission of your notice, the notice will be failed during the process).

17. **APPLICABLE ONLY TO CASH CUSTOMERS:**

    17.1. Cash customers doing **bulk payments** must use a **single email address** in order to use the **same proof of payment** for submitting multiple notices.

18. The responsibility lies with you, the customer, to ensure that the payment made for your notice(s) to be published is sufficient to cover the cost of the notice(s).

19. Each quotation will be associated with one proof of payment / purchase order / cash receipt.

    19.1. This means that **the quotation number can only be used once to make a payment.**

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

Copy (Separate Notice Content Document)

20. Where the copy is part of a separate attachment document for Z95, Z95Prov and TForm03

    20.1. Copy of notices must be supplied in a separate document and may not constitute part of any covering letter, purchase order, proof of payment or other attached documents.

    The content document should contain only one notice. (You may include the different translations of the same notice in the same document).

    20.2. The notice should be set on an A4 page, with margins and fonts set as follows:

    Page size = A4 Portrait with page margins: Top = 40mm, LH/RH = 16mm, Bottom = 40mm; Use font size: Arial or Helvetica 10pt with 11pt line spacing;

    Page size = A4 Landscape with page margins: Top = 16mm, LH/RH = 40mm, Bottom = 16mm; Use font size: Arial or Helvetica 10pt with 11pt line spacing;

Cancellations

21. Cancellation of notice submissions are accepted by **GPW** according to the deadlines stated in the table above in point 2. Non-compliance to these deadlines will result in your request being failed. Please pay special attention to the different deadlines for each gazette. Please note that any notices cancelled after the cancellation deadline will be published and charged at full cost.

22. Requests for cancellation must be sent by the original sender of the notice and must accompanied by the relevant notice reference number (N-) in the email body.

Amendments to notices

23. With effect from 01 October 2015, **GPW** will not longer accept amendments to notices. The cancellation process will need to be followed according to the deadline and a new notice submitted thereafter for the next available publication date.

Rejections

24. All notices not meeting the submission rules will be rejected to the customer to be corrected and resubmitted. Assistance will be available through the Contact Centre should help be required when completing the forms. (012-748 6200 or email info.egazette@gpw.gov.za). Reasons for rejections include the following:

    24.1. Incorrectly completed forms and notices submitted in the wrong format, will be rejected.

    24.2. Any notice submissions not on the correct *Adobe* electronic form, will be rejected.

    24.3. Any notice submissions not accompanied by the proof of payment / purchase order will be rejected and the notice will not be processed.

    24.4. Any submissions or re-submissions that miss the submission cut-off times will be rejected to the customer. The Notice needs to be re-submitted with a new publication date.

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

Approval of notices

25. Any notices other than legal notices are subject to the approval of the Government Printer, who may refuse acceptance or further publication of any notice.

26. No amendments will be accepted in respect to separate notice content that was sent with a Z95 or Z95Prov notice submissions. The copy of notice in layout format (previously known as proof-out) is only provided where requested, for Advertiser to see the notice in final Gazette layout. Should they find that the information submitted was incorrect, they should request for a notice cancellation and resubmit the corrected notice, subject to standard submission deadlines. The cancellation is also subject to the stages in the publishing process, i.e. If cancellation is received when production (printing process) has commenced, then the notice cannot be cancelled.

Government Printer Indemnified Against Liability

27. The Government Printer will assume no liability in respect of—

    27.1. any delay in the publication of a notice or publication of such notice on any date other than that stipulated by the advertiser;

    27.2. erroneous classification of a notice, or the placement of such notice in any section or under any heading other than the section or heading stipulated by the advertiser;

    27.3. any editing, revision, omission, typographical errors or errors resulting from faint or indistinct copy.

Liability of advertiser

28. Advertisers will be held liable for any compensation and costs arising from any action which may be instituted against the Government Printer in consequence of the publication of any notice.

Customer inquiries

Many of our customers request immediate feedback/confirmation of notice placement in the gazette from our Contact Centre once they have submitted their notice – While **GPW** deems it one of their highest priorities and responsibilities to provide customers with this requested feedback and the best service at all times, we are only able to do so once we have started processing your notice submission.
GPW has a 2-working day turnaround time for processing notices received according to the business rules and deadline submissions.
Please keep this in mind when making inquiries about your notice submission at the Contact Centre.

29. Requests for information, quotations and inquiries must be sent to the Contact Centre ONLY.

30. Requests for Quotations (RFQs) should be received by the Contact Centre at least **2 working days** before the submission deadline for that specific publication.

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

Payment of cost

31. The Request for Quotation for placement of the notice should be sent to the Gazette Contact Centre as indicated above, prior to submission of notice for advertising.

32. Payment should then be made, or Purchase Order prepared based on the received quotation, prior to the submission of the notice for advertising as these documents i.e. proof of payment or Purchase order will be required as part of the notice submission, as indicated earlier.

33. Every proof of payment must have a valid **GPW** quotation number as a reference on the proof of payment document.

34. Where there is any doubt about the cost of publication of a notice, and in the case of copy, an enquiry, accompanied by the relevant copy, should be addressed to the Gazette Contact Centre, **Government Printing Works**, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001 email: info.egazette@gpw.gov.za before publication.

35. Overpayment resulting from miscalculation on the part of the advertiser of the cost of publication of a notice will not be refunded, unless the advertiser furnishes adequate reasons why such miscalculation occurred. In the event of underpayments, the difference will be recovered from the advertiser, and future notice(s) will not be published until such time as the full cost of such publication has been duly paid in cash or electronic funds transfer into the **Government Printing Works** banking account.

36. In the event of a notice being cancelled, a refund will be made only if no cost regarding the placing of the notice has been incurred by the **Government Printing Works**.

37. The **Government Printing Works** reserves the right to levy an additional charge in cases where notices, the cost of which has been calculated in accordance with the List of Fixed Tariff Rates, are subsequently found to be excessively lengthy or to contain overmuch or complicated tabulation.

Proof of publication

38. Copies of any of the *Government Gazette* or *Provincial Gazette* can be downloaded from the **Government Printing Works** website www.gpwonline.co.za free of charge, should a proof of publication be required.

39. Printed copies may be ordered from the Publications department at the ruling price. The **Government Printing Works** will assume no liability for any failure to post or for any delay in despatching of such *Government Gazette*(s)

GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS CONTACT INFORMATION

Physical Address:
Government Printing Works
149 Bosman Street
Pretoria

Postal Address:
Private Bag X85
Pretoria
0001

GPW Banking Details:
Bank: ABSA Bosman Street
Account No.: 405 7114 016
Branch Code: 632-005

For Gazette and Notice submissions: Gazette Submissions: **E-mail:** submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za
For queries and quotations, contact: Gazette Contact Centre: **E-mail:** info.egazette@gpw.gov.za
Tel: 012-748 6200

Contact person for subscribers: Mrs M. Toka: **E-mail:** subscriptions@gpw.gov.za
Tel: 012-748-6066 / 6060 / 6058
Fax: 012-323-9574

GOVERNMENT NOTICES • GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

NO. 3750 **4 August 2023**

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 [ACT 22 OF 1994] AS AMENDED

Notice is hereby given in terms of **Section 11[1] of the Restitution of the Land Rights Act 1994 [Act 22 of 1994] as amended,** that a land claim for **Restitution of Land Rights** has been lodged by **Mr. Andries Mtsweni, ID No: 700605 6256 084** on behalf of the Mtsweni family on the following property mentioned hereunder situated under Lekwa Local Municipality, Gert Sibande District Municipality in Mpumalanga Province: **KRP 12175**

ELANDSFONTEIN 147 IS

Description of property	Owner of Property	Title Deed Number	Extent of Property	Bonds	Bond Holder	Other Endorsements
The Remaining Extent of Portion 5	TRIBET INV PTY LTD (198900756507)	T714/2016	453.5565 hectares	None	None	K2739/1990RM K4325/1990PC K439/1988PC K54/1978RM K5645/1994S IN FAVOUR OF WESSELS MARIA JOHANNA K623/1976PC VA93/2016 IN FAVOUR OF WESSELS MARIA JOHANNA

Notice is hereby given in terms of **Section 11[1] of the Restitution of the Land Rights Act 1994 [Act 22 of 1994] as amended,** that a land claim for **Restitution of Land Rights** has been lodged by **Mr. Andries Mtsweni, ID No: 700605 6256 084** on behalf of the Mtsweni family on the following property mentioned hereunder situated under Lekwa Local Municipality, Gert Sibande District Municipality in Mpumalanga Province**: KRP 12175**

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner, Mpumalanga Province will investigate all the claims in terms of the provisions of the Act, any party interested in the above-mentioned property is hereby invited to submit within **30 [thirty days]** from the date of publication of this notice to submit any comments, or further information to:

Commissioner for Restitution of Land Rights
30 Samora Machel Drive
Nelspruit, 1200
Tel No: 013 756 6000
Fax No: 013 752 3859

MR L.H. MAPHUTHA
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER
DATE: 31.03.2023

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

NO. 3751 **4 August 2023**

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM & RURAL DEVELOPMENT
PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHTS ACT, 1976
(ACT No. 15 of 1976)

In terms of the provisions of the Plant Breeders' Rights Act, 1976 (Act No. 15 of 1976), it is hereby made known that all aspects of plant breeders' rights, of which the particulars appear in the Sections herewith have been processed for the period October 2022 to December 2022.
Any objections must be submitted in writing to the Registrar of Plant Breeders' Rights within THREE months with reference to denominations, and within SIX months with reference to applications and grants from the date of publication of this issue, accompanied by the appropriate fees.

The bracketed numbers are reference to the addresses of the applicants and agents which can be found on the plant breeders' rights page, on the www.dalrrd.gov.za website or upon request from the Plant Breeders' Rights Office.

Mr Thapelo Sekele
Acting Registrar of Plant Breeders' Rights

SECTION 1

RECEIPTS OF APPLICATIONS FOR PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHTS
PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHTS

AGRICULTURAL CROPS

Kind of plant: *Gossypium hirsutum* L. [Cotton]

Application number	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9855	MIC 186 B2RF	Mahyco Grow [1961]	ZA	Mahyco Grow [1961]	2022-11-02
PT 9856	MIC 192 B2RF	Mahyco Grow [1961]	ZA	Mahyco Grow [1961]	2022-11-02

VEGETABLE CROPS

Kind of plant: *Brassica oleracea* L. [Broccoli]

Application number	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9893	Kilimanjaro	Sakata Vegetable Europe [1726]	FR	Sakata Seed SA [1356]	2022-11-21
PT 9894	Rubens	Sakata Vegetable Europe [1726]	FR	Sakata Seed SA [1356]	2022-11-21

Kind of plant: *Brassica oleracea* L. [White Cabbage]

Application number	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9895	Lunaria	Plennegy [1540]	ZA	Plennegy [1540]	2022-12-12

Kind of plant: *Capsicum* L. [Pepper]

Application number	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9890	Chocolony	Rijk Zwaan Zaadteelt [382]	NL	Rijk Zwaan SA [1056]	2022-11-23
PT 9889	Dubstep	Rijk Zwaan Zaadteelt [382]	NL	Rijk Zwaan SA [1056]	2022-11-23
PT 9846	Remba	Piquante Brands [1171]	ZA	Spoor & Fisher [157]	2022-10-14
PT 9891	Verdial	Rijk Zwaan Zaadteelt [382]	NL	Rijk Zwaan SA [1056]	2022-11-23

Kind of plant: *Cucumis* L. [Melon]

Application number	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9896	Turan	Nunhems [101]	NL	DM Kisch [124]	2022-12-15

Kind of plant: Cucurbita L. [Squash]

Application number	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9892	Mieluna	Sakata Vegetable Europe [1726]	FR	Sakata Seed SA [1356]	2022-11-24

ORNAMENTAL PLANTS

Kind of plant: *Hydrangea* L. [Hydrangea hybrid]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9858	Bailmacfive	Bailey Nurseries [1347]	US	PSD [82]	2022-11-28
PT 9857	USHYD0405	WinGEn LLC [1962]	US	San Michell Farms Pty Ltd [1960]	2022-11-01

Kind of plant: *Impatiens* L. [Impatiens]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9867	SAKIMP049	Sakata Seed Corporation [44]	JP	Sakata SA [1356]	2022-11-01
PT 9868	SAKIMP050	Sakata Seed Corporation [44]	JP	Sakata SA [1356]	2022-11-01
PT 9869	SAKIMP066	Sakata Seed Corporation [44]	JP	Sakata SA [1356]	2022-11-01
PT 9870	SAKIMP067	Sakata Seed Corporation [44]	JP	Sakata SA [1356]	2022-11-01
PT 9871	SAKIMP070	Sakata Seed Corporation [44]	JP	Sakata SA [1356]	2022-11-01
PT 9872	SAKIMP071	Sakata Seed Corporation [44]	JP	Sakata SA [1356]	2022-11-01

Kind of plant: *Paulownia* Siebold & Zucc. [Kiri tree]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9862	H2F4	WeGrow Germany GmbH [1927]	DE	Spoor & Fisher [157]	2022-11-16

FRUIT CROPS

Kind of plant: *Citrus* L. [Lemon]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9865	PLBA1	BioGold Network EM SA [1966]	SP	Citrogold [Pty] Ltd. [964]	2022-12-06

Kind of plant: *Citrus* L. [Mandarin]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9848	Candy	ARO, Volcani Centre [327]	IL	Source Citrus Genesis [1620]	2022-10-03
PT 9854	Patensie Early	Citrigene [1144]	ZA	Gert Ferreira [1144]	2022-11-02
PT 9849	Saar	ARO, Volcani Centre [327]	IL	Source Citrus Genesis [1620]	2022-10-03
PT 9850	Tigerclem	Gert Ferreira [1144]	ZA	Gert Ferreira [1144]	2022-11-02

Kind of plant: *Citrus* L. [Sweet orange]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9845	B8	Stargrow Cultivar Development [731]	ZA	Stargrow Cultivar Development [731]	2022-10-22
PT 9851	GEN 337IANG	Citrigene [1144]	ZA	Gert Ferreira [1144]	2022-11-02
PT 9852	Midlands Late	Ryno du Preez [1415]	ZA	Citrigene [1144]	2022-11-02
PT 9853	Pink Pebbles	Citrigene [1144]	ZA	Gert Ferreira [1144]	2022-11-02

Kind of plant: *Fragaria x ananassa* Duchesne [Strawberry]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9861	Fandango	Fresh Forward Holding [2001]	NL	SAPO Trust [59]	2022-11-29

Kind of plant: *Malus* Mill. [Apple]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9843	Cortina Pink	Cortina Farms [1956]	ZA	Topfruit [Pty.] Ltd. [229]	2022-10-24
PT 9844	Cortina Red	Cortina Farms [1956]	ZA	Topfruit [Pty.] Ltd. [229]	2022-10-24
PT 9864	Nicored	Werner Zanetti [1965]	IT	Adams & Adams [65]	2022-11-15

Kind of plant: *Mangifera indica* L. [Mango]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9858	MOHL-A8-SEN	J. Fivaz, Hoedspruit [1963]	ZA	SAPO Trust [59]	2022-10-31

Kind of plant: *Prunus armeniaca* L. [Apricot]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9873	Apricandy	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9874	Apridelice	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05

Kind of plant: *Prunus avium* [L.] L. [Sweet Cherry]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9875	Redlam	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9876	Rosalolam	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05

Kind of plant: *Prunus persica* L. Batsch. [Peach]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9860	White October	Bufland Agri, Mookgophong [1964]	ZA	SAPO Trust [59]	2022-10-31
PT 9883	Crisplova	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9884	Crisponda	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9885	Crispreve	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9886	Flatbuzz	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9887	Flatcandy	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9888	Flatwo	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05

Kind of plant: *Prunus persica* [L.] Batsch. var *nucipersica* Schneid. [White flat nectarine]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9877	Cakebella	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9878	Cakelam	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9879	Cakemoon	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9880	Cakesnow	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05
PT 9881	Cakestar	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05

Kind of plant: *Prunus persica* [L.] Batsch. var *nucipersica* Schneid. [Yellow nectarine]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9882	Nectajoy	Agro Selections Fruits [SAS] [1320]	FR	SAPO [59]	2022-12-05

Kind of plant: *Prunus* spp. [Inter-specific plum]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9863	Flavor Delight	Zaiger Inc. Genetics [605]	US	Zaiger SA [1272]	2022-11-14
PT 9866	ZAI208PR	Zaiger Inc. Genetics [605]	US	Zaiger SA [1272]	2022-12-05

Kind of plant: *Rubus* L. [Raspberry]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9842	PBBRasp1348	Hortifrut North America, Inc. [2009]	US	Spoor & Fisher [157]	2022-10-13

Kind of plant: *Vitis* L. [Grape]

Application No.	Proposed denomination	Applicant	Country	Agent	Date accepted
PT 9847	BRS Melodia	Empresa Brasileira de Pesquisa Agropecuária [1958]	BR	Von Seidels [1308]	2022-10-01

SECTION 2

APPLICATIONS WITHDRAWN

Kind of plant: *Fragaria x ananassa* Duchesne [Strawberry]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Withdrawal
PT 9046	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisStrawSixtySix	2022-10-13
PT 9082	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisStrawSeventySeven	2022-10-13
PT 6673	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisStrawTwentySeven	2022-10-13

Kind of plant: *Malus* Mill. [Apple]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Withdrawal
PT 8445	Stargrow Cultivar Development [731]	Stargrow Cultivar Development [731]	SG AP 16-98	2022-10-21

Kind of plant: *Rubus* L. [Blackberry]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Withdrawal
PT 8738	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisBlackEighteen	2022-10-13
PT 8560	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisBlackSeventeen	2022-10-13
PT 8218	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisBlackSixteen	2022-10-13

Kind of plant: *Rubus* L. [Raspberry]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Withdrawal
PT 8129	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisRaspTen	2022-10-13
PT 8415	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisRaspThirteen	2022-10-13

Kind of plant: *Vaccinium* L. [Blueberry]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Withdrawal
PT 9191	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisBlueTwentyOne	2022-10-13
PT 9049	Driscoll's Inc. [981]	Adams & Adams [65]	DrisBlueTwenty	2022-10-13

SECTION 3

APPLICATIONS REJECTED

Kind of plant: *Argyranthemum* Webb *ex* Sch. Bip [Argyranthemum]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7705	Nuflora [1021]	PSD [82]	2001-371mut	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Abelia* R. Br. [Abelia]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7588	SAPHO [1720]	PSD [82]	BMRGold	2022-11-39
PT 7230	Pepiniers Minier SA [1324]	PSD [82]	Minduo2	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Begonia* hybrid [Begonia]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7852	Terra Nova [1460]	PSD [82]	First Blush	2022-11-39
PT 7853	Terra Nova [1460]	PSD [82]	Painter's Palette	2022-11-39
PT 7854	Terra Nova [1460]	PSD [82]	Ruby Slippers	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Carex oshimensis* Nakai [Carex]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 8189	Fitzgerald Patrick [1475]	PSD [82]	Everlime	2022-11-39
PT 8190	Fitzgerald Patrick [1475]	PSD [82]	Eversheen	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Coprosma* JR & G Forster [Coprosma]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7413	Annton Nursery [912]	PSD [82]	Midnight Martini	2022-11-39
PT 7509	Annton Nursery [912]	PSD [82]	Scarlet O'Hara	2022-11-39
PT 6534	Burton S [1411]	PSD [82]	Tequila Sunrise	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Cordyline australis* [Cordyline]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7417	Growing Spectrum [1682]	PSD [82]	Can Can	2022-11-39
PT 7418	Growing Spectrum [1682]	PSD [82]	Cha Cha	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Cuphea hyssopifolia* HBK. [Cuphea]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 6922	Outback Plants [1598]	PSD [82]	Magenta Border	2022-11-39
PT 6947	Southern Advanced Plants [1607]	PSD [82]	Southern Border	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Dianthus* L. [Dianthus]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7790	KIWIFLORA [1744]	PSD [82]	Angel of Desire	2022-11-39
PT 7791	KIWIFLORA [1744]	PSD [82]	Angel of Forgiveness	2022-11-39
PT 7792	KIWIFLORA [1744]	PSD [82]	Angel of Piece	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Gazania* Gaertn. [Gazania]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7258	Floreta IP [PTY] LTD [1664]	PSD [82]	Flogazhip	2022-11-39
PT 7259	Floreta IP [PTY] LTD [1664]	PSD [82]	Flogazlem	2022-11-39
PT 7260	Floreta IP [PTY] LTD [1664]	PSD [82]	Flogazora	2022-11-39
PT 7261	Floreta IP [PTY] LTD [1664]	PSD [82]	Flogazsun	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Hibiscus* L. [Hibiscus]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7440	Graff Breeding A/S [1605]	PSD [82]	Adonicus Apricot	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Lavandula* L. [Lavender]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7947	Van der Salm Holding [1769]	PSD [82]	Anouk Deluxe 169	2022-11-39
PT 7948	Van der Salm Holding [1769]	PSD [82]	Anouk Deluxe 173	2022-11-39
PT 7949	Van der Salm Holding [1769]	PSD [82]	Anouk White	2022-11-39
PT 7946	Van der Salm Holding [1769]	PSD [82]	Felice	2022-11-39
PT 5932	Plantgrow [769]	PSD [82]	Strawberry Ruffles	2022-11-39
PT 5933	Plantgrow [769]	PSD [82]	Sweetberry Ruffles	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Liriope muscari* [Decne] LH Bailey [Liriope]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 6965	Ozbreed [1216]	PSD [82]	Lirblonde	2022-11-39
PT 6677	Ozbreed [1216]	PSD [82]	LirJ	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Lomandra* Labill. [Lomandra]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7925	Ozbreed [1216]	PSD [82]	NPW3	2022-11-39
PT 6446	Greenhills Nursery [1517]	PSD [82]	Seascape	2022-11-39

Kind of plant: *Loropetalum* R. Br ex Rchb. [Loropetalum]

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Proposed denomination	Date of Refusal
PT 7735	Plant Growers [769]	PSD [82]	Plum Gorgeous	2022-11-39

IV. DENOMINATIONS

IV.A Application for variety denominations

Vide I

SECTION 4

APPLICATIONS FOR APPROVAL OF ALTERATIONS OF DENOMINATIONS

Kind of plant: Zea mays L. [Maize]

Application/Registration No.	*Applicant*	*Agent*	*Previous denomination*	*Date alteration granted*	*New denomination*
ZA 20217539	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	X28D308WPW	2022-11-16	P2849W PW

SECTION 5

NOTIFICATIONS OF CHANGE OF AGENTS

Kind of plant: *Citrus* L. [Sweet orange]

Application/Registration No.	*Applicant*	*Variety Denomination*	*Previous Agent*	*New Agent*
PT 9319	Agricola Ruiz Valero SL [1928]	Onix Blood	Smit & van Wyk [1304]	Source Citrus Genesis [1620]

Kind of plant: *Citrus* L. [Sweet orange]

Application/Registration No.	*Applicant*	*Variety Denomination*	*Previous Agent*	*New Agent*
PT 9141	IFG, LLC [1399]	IFG Cher-two	Heidi de Villiers [1799]	Alwyn van Jaarsveld [1967]
PT 9475	IFG, LLC [1399]	IFG Cher-three	Heidi de Villiers [1799]	Alwyn van Jaarsveld [1967]
PT 9142	IFG, LLC [1399]	IFG Cher-four	Heidi de Villiers [1799]	Alwyn van Jaarsveld [1967]
PT 9476	IFG, LLC [1399]	IFG Cher-six	Heidi de Villiers [1799]	Alwyn van Jaarsveld [1967]
PT 9477	IFG, LLC [1399]	IFG Cher-eight	Heidi de Villiers [1799]	Alwyn van Jaarsveld [1967]
PT 9478	IFG, LLC [1399]	IFG Cher-nine	Heidi de Villiers [1799]	Alwyn van Jaarsveld [1967]
PT 9479	IFG, LLC [1399]	IFG Cher-ten	Heidi de Villiers [1799]	Alwyn van Jaarsveld [1967]

SECTION 6

CHANGES IN THE PERSON OF THE HOLDER OF A PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHT

Kind of plant: *Macadamia* F. Mueller [Macadamia]

Registration No.	*Date granted*	*Variety Denomination*	*Date of transfer*	*Portion transferred*	*Previous Holder*	*New Holder*
ZA 20227663	2022-05-10	Mohr	2022-10-06	100%	Balanities [Pty] Ltd [1903]	iBreed ValleyMax [Pty] Ltd [1957]

Kind of plant: *Rubus* L. [Blackberry]

Registration No.	*Date granted*	*Variety Denomination*	*Date of transfer*	*Portion transferred*	*Previous Holder*	*New Holder*
ZA 20227597	2022-03-16	Midnight	2022-10-18	100%	Beekers Berries Breeding BV [2003]	BBB IP BV [2003]

SECTION 7

CHANGES IN THE PERSON OF THE APPLICANT OF A PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHT

Kind of plant: **None**

Application No.	*Registration date*	*Variety Denomination*	*Date of change*	*Previous Applicant*	*New Applicant*

SECTION 8

GRANT OF PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHTS

AGRICULTURAL CROPS

Kind of plant: *Hordeum* L. [Barley]

Application No.	*Variety Denomination*	*Grantee*	*Agent*	*Grant No.*	*Date of Grant*	*Expiry Date*
PT 8896	RGT Planet	RAGT 2n [1371]	Jannie Fourie [1872]	ZA 20227806	2022-10-10	2042-10-10

Kind of plant: *Panicum* L. [White Buffalo Grass]

Application No.	*Variety Denomination*	*Grantee*	*Agent*	*Grant No.*	*Date of Grant*	*Expiry Date*
PT 9065	Aries 2	Matsuda [1672]	Brasuda [1671]	ZA 20227807	2022-10-04	2042-10-04

Kind of plant: *Pisum* L. [Garden pea]

Application No.	*Variety Denomination*	*Grantee*	*Agent*	*Grant No.*	*Date of Grant*	*Expiry Date*
PT 9081	PP-1804	FTE Genetics	Adams & Adams [65]	ZA 20227805	2022-10-11	2042-10-11

Kind of plant: *Zea mays* L. [Yellow Conventional Maize]

Application No.	*Variety Denomination*	*Grantee*	*Agent*	*Grant No.*	*Date of Grant*	*Expiry Date*
PT 9584	1018A901-01	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227809	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9585	1019A153-01	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227810	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9569	1019A154-01	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227811	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9583	1022A004-01	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227812	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9580	1024A389-01	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227813	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9578	1024A390-01	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227814	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8688	15Y1052	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227815	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9003	16YR10026	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227816	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8685	16YR10027	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227817	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9000	17YR20092	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227818	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8999	17YR20162	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227819	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8995	17YR20163	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227820	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9001	17YR20227	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227821	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9002	17YR20289	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227822	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8677	DKC 60-70	Monsanto Tech. [1338]	Bayer SA [1514]	ZA 20227823	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8365	DKC65-72	Monsanto Tech. [1338]	Bayer SA [1514]	ZA 20227824	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9621	DKC78-72	Monsanto Tech. [1338]	Bayer SA [1514]	ZA 20227825	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8686	KKS 8420	Limagrain Zaad SA [1924]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227826	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9623	NP6690	Monsanto Tech. [1338]	Bayer SA [1514]	ZA 20227827	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8615	PAN 5A-166	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227829	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8159	PH1708	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227831	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8148	PH1FTC	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227832	2022-10-21	2042-10-21

PT 8149	PH1SY8	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227833	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8378	PHNAR	Pioneer Hi-Bred Int. [1810]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227834	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 9009	WPM138	Limagrain Europe [1862]	Limagrain SA [1924]	ZA 20227835	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8943	X18P2961	Pioneer Hi-Bred Int. [1810]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227828	2022-10-21	2042-10-21
PT 8948	X25P304	Pioneer Overseas [133]	Corteva RSA [411]	ZA 20227830	2022-10-21	2042-10-21

VEGETABLE CROPS

Kind of plant: *Brassica oleracea* L. [Broccoli]

Application No.	*Variety Denomination*	*Grantee*	*Agent*	*Grant No.*	*Date of Grant*	*Expiry Date*
PT 9642	McLaren	Syngenta Crop [1577]	Syngenta SA [809]	ZA 20227808	2022-10-04	2042-10-04

FRUIT CROPS

Kind of plant: *Vaccinium* L. [Blueberry]

Application No.	*Variety Denomination*	*Grantee*	*Agent*	*Grant No.*	*Date of Grant*	*Expiry Date*
PT 8823	FCM12-087	Fall Creek Farm & Nursery [1219]	Adams & Adams [65]	ZA 20227841	2022-11-01	2047-11-01
PT 8822	FCM12-045	Fall Creek Farm & Nursery [1219]	Adams & Adams [65]	ZA 20227838	2022-11-01	2047-11-01
PT 8824	FCM12-097	Fall Creek Farm & Nursery [1219]	Adams & Adams [65]	ZA 20227839	2022-11-01	2047-11-01
PT 8821	FCM12-131	Fall Creek Farm & Nursery [1219]	Adams & Adams [65]	ZA 20227837	2022-11-01	2047-11-01
PT 8825	FCM14-052	Fall Creek Farm & Nursery [1219]	Adams & Adams [65]	ZA 20227840	2022-11-01	2047-11-01
PT 9124	FLR12-11	Florida Found [1117] & Rusticas del Guadalquivir SL [1904]	DM Kisch [144]	ZA 20227836	2022-11-01	2047-11-01
PT 9126	FLR14-372	Florida Found [1117] & Rusticas del Guadalquivir SL [1904]	DM Kisch [144]	ZA 20227787	2022-11-01	2047-11-01
PT 6047	Springhigh	Florida Foundation [1117]	DM Kisch [124]	ZA 20227779	2022-10-03	2047-10-03
PT 8828	TH-929	University of Georgia [1866]	Adams & Adams [65]	ZA 20227786	2022-11-01	2047-11-01
PT 9313	Winter Bell	Weber Genetics, LLC [1929]	Adams & Adams [65]	ZA 20227785	2022-11-01	2047-11-01

ORNAMENTAL PLANTS

Kind of plant: *Alternanthera* Forssk. [Joyweeds]

Application No.	*Variety Denomination*	*Grantee*	*Agent*	*Grant No.*	*Date of Grant*	*Expiry Date*
PT 7446	LRU30	Athena Brazil [1691]	PSD [82]	ZA 20227782	2022-10-03	2042-10-03

Kind of plant: *Angelonia* Humb. & Bonpl. [Angelonia]

Application No.	*Variety Denomination*	*Grantee*	*Agent*	*Grant No.*	*Date of Grant*	*Expiry Date*
PT 8497	Balarcher	Ball Horticultural Company [676]	Ball Straathof [108]	ZA 20227781	2022-10-03	2042-10-03

Kind of plant: *Coreopsis lanceolata* L. [Lanceleaf coreopsis]

Application No.	Variety Denomination	Grantee	Agent	Grant No.	Date of Grant	Expiry Date
PT 8188	Firefly	Terra Nova Nurseries [1460]	PSD [82]	ZA 20227780	2022-10-03	2047-10-03

Kind of plant: *Heuchera* L. [Coral Bells]

Application No.	Variety Denomination	Grantee	Agent	Grant No.	Date of Grant	Expiry Date
PT 7027	Vienna	Terra Nova Nurseries [1460]	PSD [82]	ZA 20227783	2022-10-03	2042-10-03

Kind of plant: *Spiraea* L. [Spirea]

Application No.	Variety Denomination	Grantee	Agent	Grant No.	Date of Grant	Expiry Date
PT 7225	Bailcarol	Bailey Nurseries Inc. [1347]	PSD [82]	ZA 20227784	2022-11-11	2047-11-11

SECTION 9

REFUSAL OF GRANTS FOR PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHTS

Kind of plant: **None**

Application No.	Applicant	Agent	Variety Denomination	Date of Rejection

SECTION 10

PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHTS EXPIRED

Registration No.	Genus & species	Common Name	Variety Denomination	Holder	Agent	Date Expired

SECTION 11

PLANT BREEDERS' RIGHTS SURRENDERED

Registration No.	Genus & species	Common Name	Variety Denomination	Holder	Agent	Date Surrendered
ZA 20094206	*Malus* Mill.	Apple	Nicogreen	Better3Fruit [1463]	SAPO Trust [59]	2022-11-10

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

NO. 3752 **4 August 2023**

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF SECTION 11 (1) OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT NO.22 OF 1994), AS AMEMENDED

1.1. Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994), as amended, that Kgoshi Sakia Ledikwa Mogoboya has lodged a land claim for restitution of land rights on behalf of Batlhabine Community in respect of the farms tabulated below which are situated in the Mopani District of Limpopo Province. The prescribed land claim form was received by the Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner of Limpopo on the 29th of October 1998 which date falls within the cut-off date of lodgement of claims.

Detailed information of the claimed farms are depicted in the table below as follows:

FARM NAME	PORTION	CURRENT OWNER	EXTENT OF THE PROPERTY	ENDORSEMENT	HOLDER
Long Valley 644 LT	0 (R/E)	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	1914.8228 Ha	I-12922/2012CPTA K5080/1999RMPTA	- LEBOWA MINERAL TRUST
	1	Republiek Van Suid-Afrika	204.1574 Ha	-	-
Uplands 653 LT	0 (R/E)	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	992.1824 Ha	I-12922/2012CPTA K2495/1999RMPTA	- LEBOWA MINERAL TRUST
Yosemite 11 KT	0 (R/E)	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	1568.1317 Ha	I-12922/2012CPTA I-275/2018C K4708/1999RMPTA	- - LEBOWA MINERAL TRUST
	1	Republiek van South Africa	44.6032 Ha	I-275/2018C	-
Thabina Valley 13 KT	0	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	1682.3102 Ha	I-12922/2012CPTA K2461/1999RMPTA	- LEBOWA MINERAL TRUST
Tours 17 KT	R/E	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	3601.9840 Ha	KT, 17 K5354/1999RM LEBOWA	- ANGLO GOLD ASHANTI -
	2	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	594.4975 Ha	KT, 17, 2 LEBOWA	- -

Total:		10602, 6892 Ha	

All interested parties should take note that the office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner-Limpopo is investing these land claims. Any party that has an interest in the above properties is hereby invited to submit in writing within **30** days of publication of this notice, any comments or information or objection under reference number **KRP 11495/2545 to:**

Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo

Private Bag X9552

Polokwane

0700

Submission may also be delivered to:
Koos Smit Building
61 Biccard Street
Polokwane
0700

MR L. MAPHUTHA
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISIONER
DATE: 2023/07/17

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

NO. 3753 **4 August 2023**

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT No. 22 OF 1994), AS AMENDED

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994), as amended, that a claim for Restitution of Land Rights was lodged by Mr. Masilela Surgent Lucky on part of Portion 25 of the farm Maposchgronde 500 JS and on part of the farm Maposchgronde 742 JS. These properties are located in the Elias Motsoaledi local municipality, in the Sekhukhune District of the Limpopo.

This land claim was lodged on the 31st December 1998 and was allocated file reference (KRP) no 10706. Detailed information with regard to the properties under claim are as follows:

Property Description	Current owner of the property	Title Deed Number	Extent	Endorsements	Holder
Part of Portion 25 of the farm Maposchgronde 500 JS	Buwane Moselebane Salome & Buwane Serapa Meshack	T82940/2014PTA	107.2358 ha (claimants were found to have lost rights on 11.7878 ha)	B13042/2016PTA I-8140/2006CPTA K1352/1985SPTA K6311/1992SPTA VA7870/2014 VA9115/2006PTA CONVERTED FROM PTA JS,500,25	Land & Landbou-Ontwikkelbank Van Suid-Afrika - - Erasmus Daniel Johhanes Gehardus Erasmus Daniel Johhanes Gehardus Erasmus Daniel Johhanes Gehardus -
Part of Maposchgronde 742 JS	Engelbrecht Jonny & Engelbrecht Paulina Laudina	T123654/2006PTA	23.4743 ha (claimants were found to have lost rights on 15.0783 ha)	K6311/1992SPTA VA9115/2006PTA CONVERTED FROM PTA FROM-743,JS JS,742	Erasmus Daniel Johhanes Gehardus Erasmus Daniel Johhanes Gehardus - - -

Take note that the office of the Regional Land claims Commissioner: Limpopo, is investigating this land claim. Any party that has an interest in the above-mentioned properties is hereby invited to submit in writing within 30 Days of the publication of this notice, any comments or detailed objections on this Land Claim to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo, using the under-mentioned contact details and under reference number: **KRP 10706.**

The Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo

Private Bag X9552

POLOKWANE

0700

OR

Submission may also be delivered at:

13th Floor, Thabakgolo Building, 50 – 58 Landros Mare Street

POLOKWANE

0700

MR LH MAPHUTHA
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER
COMMISSION ON RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS
DATE: 2023/07/05

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

NO. 3754 **4 August 2023**

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT NO. 22 OF 1994), AS AMENDED.

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act No. 22 of 1994, as amended, that a land claim for Restitution of Land Rights was lodged on the farm Steelpoortsdrift 296 KT situated within the Fetakgomo-Tubatse Local Municipality, Sekhukhune District: Limpopo.

The land claim was lodged by the late Mr. Riba Lehlaba Jonathan on behalf of Riba Community on the 29th of December 1998 in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No.22 of 1994) as amended. The land claim is in relation to the following portions of the farm Steelpoortsdrift 296 KT.

Farm Name	Owners	Title Deed	Extent	Bonds/ Endorsements	Holder
R/E of Portion 9 of the farm Steelpoortsdrift 296 KT	Republic of South Africa	T43312/1971PTA	1604811 H	I-189/2018C I-8140/2006C KT,296,9PTA K4373/2012SPTA Lebowa	Provinsial Noord Transvaal - - - -
R/E of Portion 10 of the farm Steelpoortsdrift 296 KT	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	T29899/1971PTA	1290858 H	I-8140/2006CPTA KT,296,10PTA K2015/2000RMP TA K4373/2012SPTA LEBOWA	- - - Lebowa Mineral Trust
R/E of Portion 11 of the farm Steelpoortsdrift 296 KT	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	T29899/1971PTA	1082137 H	I-8140/2006CPTA KT,296,11PTA K1754/2000RMP TA Lebowa	- - Lebowa Mineral Trust -

All interested parties should take note that the office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo is investigating this land claim. Any party that has an interest in the above-mentioned property is hereby invited to submit in writing within **30** days of publication of this notice, any comment, and / or objection to the Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo at the addresses set out below, citing the land claim reference numbers: **KRP 2387**

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo
Private Bag X9552
Polokwane
0700

Submissions can also be hand delivered to:
Koos Smit Building 61 Biccard Street/
13th – 15th Floor Thabakgolo Nedbank Building,
50-58 Landros Mare Street
Polokwane
0700

MR. LEBJANE MAPHUTHA
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER
DATE 2023/07/17

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

NO. 3755 **4 August 2023**

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 [ACT 22 OF 1994] AS AMENDED

Notice is hereby given in terms of **Section 11[1] of the Restitution of the Land Rights Act 1994 [Act 22 of 1994] as amended,** that a land claim for **Restitution of Land Rights** has been lodged by the late **Mr. Msongelwa Philip Nkosi , ID No: 260414 5184 088** on behalf of the Nkosi family on the following property mentioned hereunder situated under Thembisile Hani Local Municipality, Nkangala District Municipality in Mpumalanga Province**: KRP 9048**

SPITSKOP 276 IS

Description of property	Owner of Property	Title Deed Number	Extent of Property	Bonds	Bond Holder	Other Endorsements
Portion 68	FAMHIRST ESTATE PTY LTD {60/03451}	T45434/1986	85.4891 ha **The affected hectares are 83.7684 ha**	None	None	K3384/1986S

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 [ACT 22 OF 1994] AS AMENDED

Notice is hereby given in terms of **Section 11[1] of the Restitution of the Land Rights Act 1994 [Act 22 of 1994] as amended,** that a land claim for **Restitution of Land Rights** has been lodged by the late **Mr. Msongelwa Philip Nkosi, ID No: 260414 5184 088** on behalf of the Nkosi family on the following property mentioned hereunder situated under Thembisile Hani Local Municipality, Nkangala District Municipality in Mpumalanga Province: **KRP 9048**

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner, Mpumalanga Province will investigate all the claims in terms of the provisions of the Act, any party interested in the above-mentioned property is hereby invited to submit within **30 [thirty days]** from the date of publication of this notice to submit any comments, or further information to:

Commissioner for Restitution of Land Rights
30 Samora Machel Drive
Nelspruit, 1200
Tel No: 013 756 6000
Fax No: 013 752 3859

MR L.H. MAPHUTHA
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER
DATE: 2023/03/02

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

NO. 3756 **4 August 2023**

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED

Notice is hereby given in terms of section 11(1) (c) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 as amended) that a claim has been lodged for restitution of land rights on:

REF NO	CLAIMANT	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	CURRENT LANDOWNERS	DEED OF TRANSFER	INTERESTED PARTIES
KK 288	Mr. Rashid Ahomed Lunat	Stand No. 213 township of Krugersdorp (17A President street) now described as Erf 1046 in the township of Krugersdorp IQ	Davies Joseph Agar	T10509/1946	Land Claimant, the current landowners, and the Krugersdorp under the Mogale City Municipality.

Take further notice that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of Rule 5 of the Rules Regarding Procedure of Commission Established in terms of section 16 of Restitution of Land Rights Act as amended. Any interested party on the claim is hereby invited to submit, representations in terms of section 11A of the Restitution of Land Rights Act 22 of 1994 as amended within 90 (ninety) working days from the publication date of this notice, any comments/information may be send to:

Chief Directorate: Land Restitution Support Gauteng Province
Private Bag X03
ARCADIA
0007
Tel: (012) 310-6500
Fax: (012) 324-5812

MR. L.H MAPHUTHA
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER
DATE: 2023/07/17

DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

NO. 3757 **4 August 2023**

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT NO. 22 OF 1994), AS AMENDED

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994), as amended, that a land claim for Restitution of Land Rights has been lodged on the property in the Fetakgomo-Tubatse (Greater Tubatse) Local Municipality of Limpopo Province.

The late Mfishane Caiphus Nkosi lodged a restitution land claim on behalf of the Mangabane Community on the farms Apiesboomen 295 KT, Onverwacht 292 KT, Hendriksplaats 281 KT, Doornbosch 294 KT and Winterveld 293 KT. However, this gazette is in respect of the farms Apiesboomen 295 KT and Doornbosch 294 KT since the claim on the other farms was gazetted and resolved.

Property Description	Current Owner	Title Deed No	Extent	Endorsements	Holder
APIESBOOMEN 295 KT					
0 (Remaining Extent)	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	T22747/1975 T110631/2007	3358.3384ha	VA8285/2007PTA K6101/2007PTA I-8140/2006CPTA	Government of Lebowa - -
Portion 1	National Government of the Republic of South Africa	T18738/1985 T3573/2016	510.244ha	K1355/2000RMPTA I-8140/2006CPTA	Government of Lebowa -
DOORNBOSCH 294 KT					
0 (Remaining Extent)	Republiek Van Suid-Afrika	T25231/1971	1257.8240ha	K6395/1996RMPTA K7406/1997PTA	Randgold & Exploration CO LTD Samancor LTD
1 (Remaining Extent)	Samancor Chrome LTD	T84360/2007	268.6579ha	VA3986/2013PTA	Samancor Chrome LTD
Portion 3	Samancor Chrome LTD	T84360/2007	214.133ha	VA3986/2013PTA	Samancor Chrome LTD
Portion 4	Samancor Chrome LTD	T133491/1997	685.226ha	VA4308/2015PTA	Samancor Chrome LTD
Portion 5	Samancor Chrome LTD	T133491/1997	480.0669ha	VA4308/2015PTA	Samancor Chrome LTD

Portion 6	Samancor Chrome LTD	T8-[illegible]60/2007	214.133ha	VA3986/2013PTA	Samanco Chrome LTD

Take **Further Notice** that the Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo, is investigated this land claim. Any party that has an interest in the above-mentioned properties is hereby invited to submit in writing within **90 Days** of the publication of this notice, any comments or detailed objections on this Land Claim to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo, using the under-mentioned contact details and under reference **KRP No. 1916.**

Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo
Private Bag X9552
POLOKWANE
0700

or

Submissions may also be delivered at:
Koos Smit Building
61 Biccard Streets
POLOKWANE, 0700

MR LEBJANE MAPHUTHA
REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER
COMMISSION ON RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS
DATE: 2023/04/24

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 3758 **4 August 2023**

PHARMACY ACT, 1974 (ACT NO. 53 OF 1974)

REGULATIONS RELATING TO THE ELECTION OF MEMBERS OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN PHARMACY COUNCIL: AMENDMENT

The Minister of Health, in consultation with the South African Pharmacy Council and in terms of section 49(1)*(a)* and (3), read with section 5 of the Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act No. 53 of 1974), intends to make the Regulations in the Schedule.

DR MJ PHAAHLA, MP
MINISTER OF HEALTH
DATE: 13/07/2023

SCHEDULE

GENERAL EXPLANATORY NOTE:

_____ Words underlined with a solid line indicate insertions in existing enactments.

[ ] Words in brackets indicate deletion in existing enactments

Definition

1. In these Regulations any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Act has the meaning so assigned and, unless the context otherwise indicates-

"Regulations" means the Regulations relating to the election of members of the South African Pharmacy Council, published under Government Notice No. R. 823 of 19 June 1998.

Amendment of regulation 1 of Regulations

2. Regulation 1 of the Regulations is hereby amended –

(a) by the insertion of the following definitions:

"'**electronic'** means any form of electronic technology that generates, stores, and processes data;

'electronic voting' means voting that uses electronic means to manage casting and counting ballots;"

(b) by the insertion after the definition of **"returning officer"** of the following definition:

"'**signature'** means inputting a signature or name or initials, including an electronic image of a signature or electronic signature appended by way of inserting a relevant code, password or personal identification number, including but not limited to, a one-time-pin (OTP), and **sign** shall bear the same meaning;"

Amendment of regulation 2 of the Regulations

3. Regulation 2 of the Regulations is hereby amended by substitution for sub-regulation (4) of the following sub-regulation:

"(4) The returning officer, the officers appointed by him or her and the members of the body contemplated in sub-regulation (3) shall make a declaration on oath or affirmation in a form as determined by the returning officer."

Amendment of regulation 3 of the Regulations

4. Regulation 3 of the Regulations is hereby amended by the deletion in sub-regulation (1) of the words "in the form set out in Annexure B".

Amendment of regulation 4 of the Regulations

5. Regulation 4 of the Regulations is hereby amended–

(a) by the substitution for sub-regulation (1) of the following sub-regulation:

"(1) Each candidate shall be nominated on a nomination form, as determined by council, and nominations must reach the returning officer not later than the time and date determined by the returning officer in that form."

(b) by the substitution for sub-regulation (4) for the following sub-regulation:

"(4) Simultaneously with the lodging of a nomination, or not later than the time and date contemplated in regulation (1), a candidate shall lodge the following documentation with the returning officer:

(*a*) His or her consent to the nomination;

(*b*) proof, to the satisfaction of the returning officer, of South African citizenship;

(*c*) a *curriculum vitae* of not more than 400 words in English; and

(*d*) an electronic, head and shoulders passport photograph.

(c) by the substitution in sub-regulation (5) for paragraph "(c)" of the following paragraph:

"*(c)* If a validly nominated candidate dies before the date of publication of the list of candidates in the *Gazette*, his or her nomination shall lapse, provided the returning officer is satisfied of the fact of the death of the candidate."

Insertion of Regulation 5A in the Regulations

6. The following Regulation is hereby inserted after regulation 5 of the Regulations:

"Election of Council members

5A. The election of council members in terms of the Pharmacy Act, 53 of 1974 shall be conducted by way of an electronic election system or any other form of election system as determined by council as published by way of notice.".

Substitution of regulation 6 of the Regulations

7. The following Regulation is hereby substituted for Regulation 6 of the Regulations:

"Procedure for election

6. (1) If, at the time and date contemplated in regulation 4(1), the number of validly nominated candidates exceeds the number of members to be elected—

(*a*) the returning officer shall, by notice in the *Gazette*, and on the official website of council —

(i) list the names of the validly nominated candidates in alphabetical order;

(ii) determine a time and date, not earlier than one month after the date of publication of such notice, by which each pharmacist eligible to vote shall be entitled to lodge a ballot [paper];

(*b*) the returning officer shall, at least one month before the date contemplated in sub-regulation (1)(*a*)(ii), transmit the following to the registered **[address]** electronic contact details of each pharmacist eligible to vote whose name appeared in the register at the time and on the date contemplated in regulation 4(1):

(i) a **[ballot paper in the form set out in Annexure D]** list of nominated candidates;

(ii) a **[printed identification envelope in the form set out in Annexure E]** secured mechanism as determined by council to cast his or her ballot; and

(iii) the *curricula vitae* and photographs referred to in regulation 4(4)(*c*) and (*d*).

(2) Nothing contained in this regulation shall preclude the council from providing access to the electronic election system to pharmacists in terms of an electronic management approach, provided such access shall include an authentication process for persons who wish to cast their vote".

Repeal of regulation 7 of the Regulations

8. Regulation 7 of the Regulations is hereby repealed.

Amendment of regulation 8 of the Regulations

9. The following Regulation is hereby substituted for Regulation 8 of the Regulations:

"Voting, counting of, and announcement of results

8. (1) The returning officer shall determine a place, time and date for the commencement of voting, which duration for voting shall be no more than 72 hours.

(2) Within five (5) days of the close of the voting, the independent monitoring body as appointed in terms of regulation 2(3), shall provide a validation report of the election results to the returning officer, which report shall be made available to all candidates.

(3) Within one (1) day after the release of the validation report in terms of sub-regulation 8(2) the returning officer shall announce the results of the election.

(4) The returning officer shall declare the candidates for whom the greatest number of votes have been cast to be elected members of the council; provided that, if the number of votes cast for any two or more candidates is found to be equal and if this equality of votes affects the result of the election, the returning officer shall, in the presence of the independent monitoring body, immediately determine by lot which candidate shall be declared elected.

(5) (*a*) Any pharmacist may lodge with the returning officer a substantiated, written objection regarding the election process with the returning officer.

(*b*) If an objection referred to in paragraph (*a*) is not resolved before the next phase of the electoral process, the next phase shall not commence until an independent, arbitrator has resolved the issue.

(*c*) When an objection is lodged during the counting process, all counting shall be discontinued immediately until the objection is resolved.

(*d*) If an objection referred to in paragraph (*c*) is not resolved within one (1) day of it being declared, an independent arbitrator shall be called to resolve the issue".

Insertion of Regulation 8A in the Regulations

10. The following Regulation is hereby inserted after Regulation 8 of the Regulations:

"**Offence**

8A. Any person who wilfully interrupts, obstructs or disturbs the proceedings of the elections shall be guilty of an offence and, on conviction, be liable to a fine not exceeding R2 000 or imprisonment for a period not exceeding two years.".

Amendment of regulation 9 of the Regulations

11. The Regulation 9 is hereby amended by substitution for sub-regulation (2) of the following sub-regulation

"(2) The returning officer shall keep all **[ballot boxes]** election records in safe custody."

Repeal of Regulation 10 of the Regulations

12. Regulation 10 of the Regulations is hereby repealed.

Amendment of regulation 11 of the Regulations

13. The Regulations 11 is hereby amended by substitution for sub-regulation (2) is for the following sub-regulation:

"(2) If a person who carries out his or her duties under the Act or who is **[present at the counting of votes]** part of the election process, obtains knowledge as to the candidate for whom any person has voted, he or she shall not, except in answer to a question lawfully put to him or her in the course of proceedings in a competent court of law, disclose such knowledge to any other person.".

Amendment of regulation 12 of the Regulations

14. Regulation 12 is hereby amended by the substitution for sub-regulation (1) of the following sub-regulation:

"(1) The returning officer shall retain all election **[documents]** records for a period of 5 years from the date of the declaration of the result of an election and he or she shall thereafter destroy the **[documents]** records, unless a competent court of law directs otherwise.".

Substitution of regulation 13 of the Regulations

15. The following Regulation is hereby substituted for Regulation 13 of the Regulations:

"Penalties

13. Any person who—

(*a*) induces or procures or attempts to induce or procure any other person to become a candidate or to withdraw as a candidate in any election in consideration of payment or for consideration of any nature;

(*b*) becomes a candidate or withdraws as a candidate in any election as a result of payment or consideration of any nature;

(*c*) publishes a false statement of the withdrawal of a candidate in an election, knowing such statement to be false;

[(*d*) with the intent to cheat, destroys a ballot paper or identification envelope]

(*e*) without due authority supplies **[a ballot paper or identification envelope]** access to voting to any person;

(*f*) withholds or attempts to withhold **[the ballot paper]** access to voting of any voter, or prevents or attempts to prevent any voter from obtaining **[a ballot paper]** access to voting;

(*g*) with the intent to cheat, votes more than once at any election;

[(*h*) with the intent to cheat, brings about or attempts to bring about the issuing of a ballot paper or an identification envelope in terms of regulation 6 (2);]

(*i*) induces or procures or attempts to induce or procure any other person to bring about, with the intent to cheat, the issuing of **[a ballot paper] or an identification envelope]** access to voting in terms of regulation 6 **[(2)]** (1);

(*j*) interferes with or attempts to interfere with a voter when that voter is marking a vote, or otherwise attempts to obtain information as to the candidate for whom any voter is about to vote or has voted;

(*k*) directly or indirectly, personally or through any other person—

(i) makes use or threatens to make use of any force or violence against;

(ii) inflicts or threatens to inflict any physical or psychological harm upon; or

(iii) does or, threatens to do anything to the disadvantage of,

a person in order to induce or compel that person to vote or refrain from voting for a particular candidate or candidates, shall be guilty of an offence and on conviction to a fine of R2 000 or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding two years.".

Repeal of Regulation 14 of the Regulations

16. Regulation 14 of the Regulations is hereby repealed.

Short title

17. These Regulations are called Regulations Relating to the Election of Members of the South African Pharmacy Council Amendment, 2023

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 3759 **4 August 2023**

REGULATIONS REGARDING FEES PAYABLE IN TERMS OF THE PROVISIONS OF THE MEDICINES AND RELATED SUBSTANCES ACT, 1965 (ACT No. 101 of 1965)

The Minister of Health intends, in consultation with the Minister of Finance and the South African Health Products Regulatory Authority, in terms of Section 35(1)(xxxi) and (xxxii) read together with Section 35(4) of the Medicines and Related Substances, to make the Regulations in the Schedule.

Interested persons are invited to submit any substantiated comments or representations on the proposed regulations to the Director-General of Health, Private Bag X828, Pretoria, 0001 (for attention of the Director: Public Entities Governance; mihloti.mushwana@health.gov.za and paul.tsebe@health.gov.za), within three months of the date of publication of this notice.

DR JOE PHAAHLA, MP
MINISTER OF HEALTH
DATE: 20/07/2023

SCHEDULE

Definitions

1. In these Regulations, any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Act shall bear such meaning and, unless the context otherwise indicates:-

"the Act" means the Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965, as amended (Act No. 101 of 1965).

Fees payable to CEO or Director-General

2. The following fees shall be payable to the Chief Executive Officer or the Director General as the case may be:

(a) Application for all priority review assessment: Fee charged for a declined priority review application: R11 500;

(b) For approved priority pre-registration evaluations:-

(i) Generic Medicine application, including 2 API's, 2 BE studies and response review per. Additional API's and BE studies will be charged for in line with the Fee Regulation: R475 000,

(ii) New Chemical Entity application, including 2 API's, Final Finished Product, and response reviews. Additional API's and BE studies will be charged for in line with the revised fee regulation: R300 000 and

(iii) Biological Medicine application, including response reviews: R322 000.

(c) For approved priority post-registration evaluations relating to quality variations, including biologicals:

(i) Priority Quality Type II, minor amendment: R6 500, and

(ii) Priority Quality Type II, major amendment: R23 000.

(d) For approved priority post-registration evaluations relating to quality variations, including biologicals:

(i) Priority Type II safety amendment: R29 500,

(ii) Priority Type II safety and efficacy amendment: R44 900, and

(iii) Priority Clinical responses with clinical data per application: R24 700.

(e) Request for an application number: R2 000 per number and

(f) Request for a borderline product status review: R15 000.

Category A medicines (Human Medicines)

3. The fees payable for human medicines, including Biologicals, for which an application for registration is submitted as contemplated in Section 15 of the Act, are:-

(a) In respect of the submission of an application for registration of:

(i) New Chemical Entities, new biotherapeutics other than vaccines (first strength, first dosage form): R217 200 per application,

(ii) Strengths and dosage forms other than those referred to in sub- paragraph (i): R85 400 per application,

(iii) Biological products i.e., vaccines (excluding new biotherapeutics): R184 400 per application,

(iv) Biological products i.e., biosimilars (excluding new biotherapeutics): R180 300 per application,

(v) Strengths and dosage forms other than those referred to in sub- paragraph (iv): R57 300 per application,

(vi) Generic products (pharmaceutical and analytical evaluated) including generic dental and radio-pharmaceutical products (first strength, first dosage form): R87 600 per application,

(vii) Generic products (pharmaceutical, analytical and bioavailability evaluated) including generic dental and radio-pharmaceutical products (first strength, first dosage form): R120 000 per application,

(viii) Strengths and dosage forms other than those referred to in sub- paragraph (v): R28 100,

(ix) Generic products with clinical data: R87 600,

(x) Strengths and dosage forms other than those referred to in sub- paragraph (viii): R28 100 per application,

(xi) Evaluation of additional submitted clinical data (pre-registration), per application: R5 300 and

(xii) An application in terms of Section 15C of the Act (supply of affordable medicines): R39 400.

(b) For the response review of the evaluation outcome of New Chemical Entities, New Biological Products other than vaccines (first strength, first dosage form), per evaluation outcome:

(i) Response review of major queries: R45 000,

(ii) Response review of moderate queries: R22 500 and

(iii) Response review of minor queries: R9 000.

(c) Response review of the evaluation outcome of all types of Variations per application number per variation queried:

(i) Response review of Type II: R6 800,

(ii) Response review of Type IB: R2 400 and

(iii) Response review of Type IA: R1 300.

(d) Pre- Registration Consultation Meeting for Biological Medicines Under Developments and with the intention to submit for registration (Pre-IND), per application:

(i) Type A - meetings conducted before finalisation of non-clinical tests: R43 200,

(ii) Type B - meetings conducted when non-clinical development is complete and Ph-I trials are ready for submission: R32 400 and

(iii) Type C - meetings conducted during the clinical development phase and prior to final registration application: R21 600.

(e) Fees for additional API sources (excluding CEP's and CPQ's) and additional BE studies:

(i) Generic application with more than 2 APIs, for each additional API and API source: R18 600 and

(ii) Generic application with more than 1 BE study, for each additional BE study: R26 200.

(f) Any medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3) of the Act:

(i) In respect of registration of any medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3) of the Act (in the case of medicines in minute-dose form; the fee encompasses different dilutions and different volumes, when submitted simultaneously for the same indication or intended use) and in respect of which an application fee has been paid: R2 100 for each registration,

(ii) Evaluation of request for rescheduling or reclassification of a product: R16 600,

(iii) Evaluation of request to amend Professional Information and Patient Information Leaflets in respect of which data relating to safety must be evaluated (post registration) per application: R16 200,

(iv) Evaluation of request to amend Professional Information and Patient Information Leaflets in respect of which clinical data relating to safety and efficacy must be evaluated (post registration): R32 800,

(v) Evaluation of request to amend the Innovator or Generic medicine Professional and Patient Information Leaflet where clinical data is not required (post registration): R3 300,

(vi) Evaluation of request to amend the innovator or Generic medicine professional information and Patient Information Leaflet where clinical data is not required (post registration): Type IB R6 000 and

(vii) Response to clinical variation application substantiated with data: R7 200.

(g) For quality variations, the fees are applicable per application number:

(i) Type II Level 1 (post registration) - Evaluation of request for major technical amendments in respect of which data relating to quality must be evaluated for the first two variations in the same application: R29 700 per variation and for the third and subsequent variation of the same application: R4 600,

(ii) Type II Level 2 (post registration) - Evaluation of request for major technical amendments in respect of which data relating to quality

must be evaluated for the first two variations in the same application: R13 800 per variation and for the third and subsequent variation of the same application: R4 600,

(iii) Type II Level 3 (post registration) - Evaluation of request for major technical amendments in respect of which data relating to quality must be evaluated for the third and every subsequent Type II Level 1 and Level 2 variations in the same application: R4 600,

(iv) Type IA (post registration) - Evaluation of request for minor technical amendments (per grouping of a maximum of three variations per application) in respect of which data relating to quality must be evaluated:
R3 500,

(v) Type IB (post registration) - Evaluation of request for minor technical amendments (per grouping of a maximum of two variations per application) in respect of which data relating to quality must be evaluated:
R5 600,

(vi) Evaluation of requests for approval of once-off deviations from registered requirements per product: R5 500,

(vii) Evaluation of requests for exemption from registered post-importation testing requirements per product per product per year the exemption is valid for: R5 500,

(viii) Annually, in respect of the retention of the registration of a medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R5 200: Provided that this provision shall come into effect one year after the date on which the registration of the said medicine was approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3); Provided further that the said fees payable during a particular calendar year shall be payable on or before the last working day of June that year, failing which the registration may be cancelled in terms of Section 16(4),

(ix) Every 5 years, in respect of the renewal of a New Chemical Entity Health Product/Medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R50 000 per Master application and R20 000 per Line Extension up to a maximum of three lines including the Master,

(x) Every 5 years, in respect of the renewal of a Generic Health Product/Medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R40 000 per Master application and R12 000 per Line Extension up to a maximum of three lines including the Master,

(xi) Evaluation of medicine proprietary name changes (post registration) per application: R3 400 and

(xii) Authorised Prescribers Amendment per application: R35 800.

(h) In respect of the testing of a human vaccine for purposes of batch release by the National Control Laboratory:

(i) New applications per batch: R70 000 for the first 12 months of this

Gazette and R146 500 thereafter and

(ii) Re-release per batch (previously tested): R35 000 for the first 12 months of this Gazette and R75 500 thereafter.

Category C medicines (Veterinary Medicines)

4. Veterinary medicines, including Biologicals, for which Authority has determined by resolution that they are registerable:

(a) In respect of the submission of an application for registration of:

(i) New Chemical Entities not previously included in a veterinary medicine for x1 non-food producing species x1 API per application: R40 000,

(ii) New Chemical Entities previously included in a veterinary medicine for x1 non-food producing species x1 API per application: R35 000,

(iii) New Chemical Entities not previously included in a veterinary medicine for food producing species x1 API; more than one species; more than one indication and residue studies per application: R45 000,

(iv) New Chemical Entities previously included in a veterinary medicine for food producing species x1 API; more than one species; more than one indication and residue studies per application: R40 000

(v) Line extensions with additional indications for food producing animals per application: R27 000,

(vi) Line extensions with additional indications for non-food producing animals per application: R20 000

(vii) Generic products (bioavailability evaluated) for non-food producing species per application: R25 000,

(viii) Generics for food producing species, for more than one species, with safety clinical data; x1 API per application: R30 000,

(ix) For Biowaivers (Generics) for food producing species, for more than one species, with AMR evaluation; more than 1 API per application: R21 900,

(x) For Biowaivers (Generics) for non-food producing species, for more than one species, more than 1 API per application: R15 100 and

(xi) Evaluation of additional submitted clinical data (pre-registration) per application: R2 900.

(b) Fees for additional API sources and BE studies:

(i) NCE/Generic application with more than 2 APIs, for each additional API and API source: R18 600 and

(ii) Generic application with more than 2 BE studies, for each additional BE study: additional R15 100

(c) Any medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3):

(i) In respect of the registration of any medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3) (in the case of medicines in minute-dose forms; the fee encompasses different dilutions and different volumes, when submitted simultaneously for the same

indication or intended use) and in respect of which an application fee has been paid: R1 900 for each registration,

(ii) Every 5 years, in respect of the renewal of a New Chemical Entity Health Product/Medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R50 000 per Master application and R20 000 per Line Extension up to a maximum of three lines including the Master,

(iii) Every 5 years, in respect of the renewal of a Generic Health Product/Medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R40 000 per Master application and R12 000 per Line Extension up to a maximum of three lines including the Master,

(iv) Evaluation of request for rescheduling of products per application: R6 400,

(v) Request to amend Professional Information in respect of which data relating to safety must be evaluated (post registration) per application: R9 400,

(vi) Request to amend Professional Information in respect of which clinical data relating to safety and efficacy must be evaluated (post registration): R16 200,

(vii) Request to amend the Innovator or Generic medicine Professional Information and where clinical data is not required (post registration): R3 300,

(viii) Annually, in respect of the retention of the registration of a medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R2 400: Provided that this provision shall come into effect one year after the date on which the registration of the said medicine was approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): Provided further that the said fees payable during a particular calendar year shall be payable on or before the last working day of June that year, failing which the registration may be cancelled in terms of Section 16(4) and

(ix) Evaluation of medicine proprietary name changes (post registration) per application: R3 400

(d) For veterinary quality variations, the fees are applicable per application number

(i) Type II veterinary medicine variation (post registration) - Evaluation of request for major technical amendments relating to quality for the first two variations in the same application: R13 800 per application and R4 600 for the third and subsequent variation of the same application,

(ii) Type IA veterinary medicine variation (post registration) – Evaluation of request for minor technical amendments (per grouping of a maximum of three variations per application) in respect of which data relating to quality must be evaluated: R3 500 and

(iii) Type IB (veterinary medicine variation (post registration) – Evaluation of request for technical amendments (per grouping of a maximum of three variations per application) in respect of which data relating to quality must be evaluated: R5 600.

Category D medicines (Human medicines)

5. Human medicines for which an application for registration has been submitted as contemplated in Section 15 of the Act,

(a) In respect of the submission of an application for registration of:

(i) Products submitted, with clinical and or toxicological data (first strength, first dosage form) per application: R16 700,
(ii) Strengths and dosage forms other than those referred to in sub-paragraph (i) per application: R6 500,
(iii) Products submitted with no clinical or toxicology data (first strength, first dosage form) per application: R8 500per application,
(iv) Strengths and dosage forms other than those referred to in sub-paragraph (iii) per application: R4 000,
(v) Evaluation of additional submitted clinical data (pre-registration) per application:R3 000 and
(vi) An application in terms of Section 15C of the: R36 100.

(b) Any medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3) of the Act:

(i) In respect of registration of any medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3) of the Act and in respect of which an application fee has been paid per registration: R1 900,
(ii) Evaluation of request for rescheduling of products per product registered: R6 000,
(iii) Evaluation of request to amend Professional Information in respect of which clinical data relating to safety and efficacy must be evaluated (post- registration) per application: R3 600,
(iv) Annually, in respect of the retention of the registration of a medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R1 900: Provided that this provision shall come into effect one year after the date on which the registration of the said medicine was approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3); Provided further that the said fees payable during a particular calendar year shall be payable on or before the last working day of June that year, failing which the registration may be cancelled in terms of Section 16(4) and
(v) Evaluation of medicine proprietary name changes (post registration) per application: R3 400.

Category D medicines (Veterinary medicine)

6. Veterinary medicines for which Authority has determined by resolution that they are registerable:

(a) In respect of the submission of an application for registration of:

(i) Products submitted with clinical and or toxicological data, (first strength, first dosage form) per application: R5 900,

(ii) Products submitted with no clinical or toxicology data (first strength, first dosage form) per application: R4 800,

(iii) Strengths and dosage forms other than those referred to in sub-paragraphs (i), (ii) per application: R3 500 and

(iv) Evaluation of additional submitted clinical data (pre-registration) per application: R1 600.

(b) Any medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3):

(i) In respect of the registration of any medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3) and in respect of which an application fee has been paid: R1 900 for each registration,

(ii) Evaluation of request for rescheduling of products per product registered: R6 000,

(iii) Evaluation of request to amend Professional Information in respect of which clinical data relating to safety and efficacy must be evaluated per application: R3 600,

(iv) Annually, in respect of the retention of the registration of a medicine, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R1 400: Provided that this provision shall come into effect one year after the date on which the registration of the said medicine was approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): Provided further that the said fees payable during a particular calendar year shall be payable on or before the last working day of June that year, failing which the registration may be cancelled in terms of Section 16(4) and

(v) Evaluation of medicine proprietary name changes (post registration) per application: R3 400.

Fees for clinical trials (Human and Veterinary)

7. Fees payable:

(a) In respect of the submission of an application for the authorisation of the use of an unregistered medicine and medical devices for clinical trials:

(i) Clinical trial application (Safety and efficacy): R33 700,

(ii) Clinical trial application (Bioequivalence study): R31 700,

(iii) Clinical trial application (Postgraduate study) with pharmaceutical company involvement: R11 200 and

(iv) Phase 4 Clinical Trial Application and any other clinical trial application, including university involved postgraduate qualification and/or pre consultation of clinical trials i and ii above): R5 100.

(c) In respect of clinical trials amendments and other S21 applications:

(i) Fees in respect of an application for technical amendments: R7 200 per amendment,

(ii) Fees in respect of an application for administrative amendment: R4 200 per amendment and

(iii) Any other application except for the purpose of performing a clinical trial: R400.

Medical devices fees (IVD'S and non IVD'S)

8. Medical devices fees payable for :

(a) Any Medical Device (IVD and non-IVD), for which an application for registration has been submitted as contemplated in Section 15 of the Act, per application for a device:
- (i) Reliance - Evaluation Class A (low risk medical device): R6 500
- (ii) Reliance - Evaluation Class B (low to moderate risk medical device): R14 700
- (iii) Reliance - Evaluation Class C (moderate to high-risk medical device): R17 400
- (iv) Reliance - Evaluation Class D (high risk medical device): R20 100
- (v) Full assessment - Evaluation Class A (low risk medical device): R28 900
- (vi) Full assessment - Evaluation Class B (low to moderate risk medical device): R62 800
- (vii) Full assessment - Evaluation Class C (moderate to high-risk medical device): R69 700
- (viii) Full assessment - Evaluation Class D (high risk medical device): R85 100
- (ix) Registration Approval Class A, B, C and D: R2 000
- (x) Notification Technical Amendment Class A, B, C and D: R800
- (xi) Prior-Approval Technical Amendment Class A, B, C and D: R6 100
- (xii) Administrative Amendment Class A, B, C and D: R3 000
- (xiii) Annually, in respect of the retention of the registration of a medical device, the registration of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): R5 200: Provided that this provision shall come into effect one year after the date on which the registration of the said medicine was approved by the Authority in terms of Section 15(3): Provided further that the said fees payable during a particular calendar year shall be payable on or before the last working day of June that year, failing which the registration may be cancelled in terms of Section 16(4),
- (xiv) Transfer of certificate of registration or old medicine letter per product or the amendment of proprietary name, manufacturer, packer, or laboratory per product: R1 800,
- (xv) Evaluation of request for reclassification of a products: R16 600 and
- (xvi) Evaluation of request for approval of once off deviations from registered requirements: R5 500.

Fees for Licences (Including Medical Devices and Complementary Medicines)

9. Fees payable for licences are as follows:

(a) An application for a new licence in terms of Section 22C (1)(b) of the Act:
- (i) Manufacture: R26 200,
- (ii) Distribute: R15 600 (Holder of certificate of registration),
- (iii) Wholesale: R15 600,
- (iv) Import: R15 600 (Holder of certificate of registration) and

(v) Export: R15 600 (Holder of certificate of registration).

(b) An application for a new medical device establishment licence in terms of Section 22C (1) (b) of the Act.
(i) a manufacturer licence to manufacture, import or export medical devices or IVDs: R26 200; or
(ii) a distributor licence to import, export and distribute medical devices or IVDs: R15 600; or
(iii) a wholesale licence to act as wholesaler of medical devices or IVDs; R15 600.

(c) An application for the renewal of a licence in terms of Section 22D of the Act, the licensing of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 22C(1)(b) of the Act:

(i) Manufacture: R22 900

(ii) Distribute: R13 100 (Holder of certificate of registration),

(iii) Wholesale: R13 100,

(iv) Import: R9 600 (Holder of certificate of registration) and

(v) Export: R9 600 (Holder of certificate of registration),

(d) An application for the renewal of a medical device establishment licence in terms of Section 22D of the Act, the licensing of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 22C(1)(b) of the Act:
(i) a manufacturer licence to manufacture, import or export medical devices or IVDs: R22 900; or
(ii) a distributor licence to import, export and distribute medical devices or IVDs: R13 100; or
(iii) a wholesale licence to act as wholesaler of medical devices or IVDs: R13 100.

(e) Annually, in respect of the retention of a licence issued in terms of Section 22C(1)(b) of the Act: R4 400, and this fee is payable on or before the last working day of June that year, failing which the license may be revoked;

(f) Licensing for any manufacturer, distributor, wholesale, import or export, the license of which has been approved by the Authority in terms of Section 22(1)(b) of the Act including medical devices: R3 500 and

(g) Application for the amendment to an existing licence to manufacture, distribute, wholesale, import or export including medical devices: R5 500.

Fees for inspections to assess quality, safety and efficacy of medicines, scheduled substances and medical devices

10. Payable fees are:

(a) The charge out rate per inspector will amount to R1 660 per hour per inspector for all scheduled inspections conducted. Inspection hours and travel time will be charged for in accordance with the applicable guideline.

(b) Desktop inspection to assess quality, safety and efficacy of medicines or

scheduled substances, review of GxP compliance status after license amendments and medical devices: R2 200 per day per inspector

Fees for permits and certificates

11. Payable fees are as follows:

(a) In respect of the issuing of a permit or a certificate:

(i) Certificate [Certificate of a Pharmaceutical Product (WHO), Good Manufacturing Practice (GMP) Certificate, Certificate of Free Sale]: R1 460,

(ii) Import permit (holder of certificate of registration: R990,

(iii) Export permit (holder of certificate of registration: R960,

(iv) Any other permit or certificate: R990,

(v) Permits issued by the Director-General in terms of Section 22A of the Act, excluding government departments: R990 and

(vi) Review of port health and or border detainment products: R400

Amendment of information in the register

12. In respect of all applications for amendments in terms of Section 15A, the name of the medicine approved by the Authority under Section 15(5), which shall be the proprietary name, the approved name of each active ingredient of the medicine and the quantity thereof contained in a dosage unit or per suitable mass or volume or unit of the medicine, the conditions of registration, the name of the applicant, the name and address of the manufacturer, packer, final product release control, final product release responsibility: R850 per application.

Transfer of certificates of registration

13. Payable fee in respect of an application in terms of Section 158: R1 100 per application.

Appeal against the decision of the authority

14. Payable fee in respect of an application in terms of Section 24 (3): R52 500 per application.

Repeal of laws

15. Regulations published in Government Notice R1379 Government *Gazette* No 44026 are hereby repealed.

Short Title

16 These Regulations are called Regulations regarding Fees Payable in terms of the Provisions of the Medicines and related substances Act, 1965 (Act No. 101 of 1965),2023.

DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 3760 **4 August 2023**

HEALTH PROFESSIONS ACT, 1974 (ACT NO.56 OF 1974)

REGULATIONS DEFINING THE SCOPE OF THE PROFESSION OF NUTRITIONISTS

The Minister of Health has, under section 33 (1) of the Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act No. 56 of 1974) and on the recommendation of the Health Professions Council of South Africa and the Professional Board for Dietetics and Nutrition, made the regulations in the Schedule.

DR M.J. PHAAHLA
MINISTER OF HEALTH
DATE: 13/07/2023

SCHEDULE

Definitions

1. In these regulations any expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Act shall bear that meaning and, unless the context otherwise dictates-
"the Act" means the Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974),

Acts pertaining to scope of Nutritionist Profession

2. The following acts are deemed to be acts pertaining to the scope of the professions of Nutritionists: -

(a) Use of evidence-based theory and practice of nutrition to address population-based nutrition related problems and its causes through appropriate programmes and policies;

(b) Use of evidence-based theory and practice to plan, implement, monitor, evaluate and manage programmes to address nutrition problems or challenges and associated causes and maintain nutritional well-being;

(c) Use of a comprehensive body of knowledge of principles of nutritional sciences to advise on food and nutrition in an ethical, responsible manner to communities or population groups during the different stages of the life cycle of all individuals;

(d) Advocate for the nutritional profession, services, and programmes;

(e) Assessment the nutritional situation of groups, communities, and populations using relevant methodologies;

(f) Applying information, communication, and education skills and social mobilizing to empower communities or populations to change their food or nutritional behaviour to make safe, healthy food choices to prevent nutrition related diseases and to improve quality of life;

(g) Conceptualising, planning, implementation, monitoring, evaluating, and documentations of appropriate nutrition policies, strategies, and guidelines;

(h) Responsible for the use and application of nutrition policies, strategies, and guidelines;

(i) Influencing the national food system or environment to enable all individuals to have access to affordable, nutritious, and safe food;

(j) Plan and execute an effective food service system based on specified food and nutritional needs in groups or population;

(k) Managing human, financial, and other resources to ensure optimal and equitable delivery of nutrition services at primary health care level;

(l) Conceptualize, formulate, implement, and communicate nutrition related research;

(m) Plan, implement, manage, evaluate, monitor, and document procedures and policies relating to human, financial, operational, and other resources; and

(n) Applying critical and creative thinking in working effectively with the community and stakeholders to contribute to the personal, social, and economic development of the society in an ethical and professional manner.

Short title

3. These Regulations are called Regulations Defining the Scope of the Profession of Nutritionists, 2023.

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

NO. 3761 **4 August 2023**

HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING THE FINAL RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT PLANS FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 138 MHz TO 144 MHz IN TERMS OF REGULATION 3 OF THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATIONS, 2015

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the Final **Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 138 MHz to 144 MHz** in terms of regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations, 2015, read with the Radio Frequency Migration Regulation 2013, the 2013 and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plans.

YOLISA KEDAMA
ACTING CHAIRPERSON

Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band
138 MHz to 144 MHz

Table of Contents

1 Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used will have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise:

"Act"	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005) as amended
"Administration"	means any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002).
"BTX"	means Base Transceiver
"DF"	means Dual Frequency
"ECC"	means the Electronic Communications Committee (ECC) within the European Conference of Postal and Telecommunications Administrations (CEPT)
"EIRP"	means the Effective Isotropic Radiated Power
"HCM"	means the Harmonised Calculation Method
"HCM4A"	means the Harmonised Calculation Method for Africa
"HIPSSA"	means the Sub-Saharan Africa Assessment Report on Harmonization of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa
"ICNIRP"	means International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP)
"IMT"	means International Mobile Communications
"ISM"	means the Industrial, Scientific, and Medical, especially regarding the portions of the radio spectrum reserved internationally for industrial, scientific, and medical (ISM) purposes
"ITU"	means the International Telecommunication Union
"ITU-R"	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
"NRFP"	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 for South Africa
"PCI"	means the Physical-Layer Cell Identities
"PAMR"	means the Public Access Mobile Radio
"PMR"	means the Private Mobile Radio
"RFSAP"	means the Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
"SF"	means the Single Frequency
"SKA"	means the Square Kilometre Array, a radio telescope, a portion of which is located in the Northern Cape Province of South Africa and requires protection from interference

"UHF"	means the Ultra High Frequency band, which is 300 MHz to 3 GHz
"WRC-19"	means the World Radiocommunication Conference 2019 held in Sharm el-Sheikh

2 Purpose

2.1 A Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) provides information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP). This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination, and details on the required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment.

2.2 As per Appendix A and in line with footnote 5.212 in the ITU Radio Regulations from WRC-19, the frequency band 138 - 144 MHz is allocated to the fixed and mobile services on a primary basis.

2.3 The feasibility study consultation concerning the 138 - 144 MHz band[1] was carried out, as mandated by the Radio Frequency Migration Regulations and Radio Frequency Migration Plan, published in Gazette Number 36334 (Notice No. 352 of 2013) [2]. The intention of the 2018 RFSAP[3] was to:

2.3.1 Maintain the Mobile 1 MTX 138 - 140.5 MHz band paired with BTX 141.5 - 144 MHz;

2.3.2 Maintain SF Alarms in the 140.5 - 141 MHz band and allocate 141 - 141.5 MHz to Single Frequency (SF) Alarms;

2.3.3 Migrate out SF Mobile from the 141 - 141.5 MHz band.

2.4 Therefore, the Authority, in the 2021 feasibility study[4], proposed and confirmed the following uses of the 138 MHz – 144 MHz band:

2.4.1 "*Single frequency ('SF') alarms (such as those that warn people of an event such as intrusion or fire), as explained in the 2018 RFSAP (Government Gazette Number 41512, Notice 146 of 2018[5]) for this band.*

2.4.2 *SF and dual frequency links used in private and communal radio repeaters, which boost and retransmit weak radio signals (explained in the 2018 RFSAP). The 2019 IMT*

[1] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

[3] The Final Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan published in Government Gazette Number 41512

[4] *Ibid*.

[5] The Final Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan published in Government Gazette Number 41512.

Roadmap (Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019[6]) documented that these repeaters are used for mining, farming and by other small businesses.

2.4.3 *Remote control industrial apparatus (explained in the 2018 RFSAP [7])".*

2.5 Only systems using digital technologies which have higher spectral efficiency compared to the analogue systems will be issued with a licence for this band.

2.6 UHF repeaters operated by Eskom in the SKA area using 407/417 MHz would move into the 138-144 MHz frequency band.

2.7 Stakeholders are requested to provide any further information in this context to the Authority to assist in this matter relating to the migration.

2.8 This Frequency Assignment Plan states the requirements for the utilisation of the frequency band between 138 MHz and 144 MHz in South Africa.

3 General

3.1 Technical characteristics of the equipment used for Single Frequency Mobile and other single and dual frequency links as well as remote control apparatus shall conform to all applicable South African standards, international standards, International Telecommunication Union (ITU) and its radio regulations as agreed and adopted by South Africa.

3.2 All installations must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.

3.3 The equipment used shall be certified under South African law and regulations.

3.4 The allocation of this frequency band and the information in this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) are subject to review.

3.5 Use of this band will be for single frequency alarms and other single frequency and dual frequency links as well as remote control apparatus.

3.6 Various types of alarms are catered for by different types of systems and services whose typical technical and operational characteristics are described in the documents listed below

3.6.1 ITU-T L-Series (Rec. L.21 [8]); and

3.6.2 International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) International Standard 60839 (Alarm Systems).

3.7 The key characteristics of some of the emitters from the band may be found in Report M.2474-0 [9] and Rec. ITU-R M.1808-1 [10].

---

[6] Final Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019, Government Gazette Number. 42337, 29 March 2019.

[7] "Encourage remote controlled industrial apparatus to migrate out of the 141 - 142 MHz band into a band dedicated for ISM".

[8] ITU-T Recommendation L.21 (10/96): Fire detection and alarm systems, detector and sounder devices. Available online at https://www.itu.int/rec/T-REC-L.21 .

[9] Report M.2474-0 (09/2019): Conventional digital land mobile radio systems. Available online at https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2474-2019 .

[10] ITU Recommendation M.1808-1 (11/2019): Technical and operational characteristics of conventional and trunked land mobile systems operating in the mobile service allocations below 869 MHz to be used in sharing studies in bands below 960 MHz. Available online at https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1808.

3.8 While not currently applicable in South Africa, the future use may include the current practice from some of the European Union countries, where the band can be used for example for non-specific short-range devices (SRDS) in 138.2-138.45 MHz and ground-and wall- probing radars (GPR/WPR) in 30-230 MHz, as defined by Rep. ITU-R SM.2153-2 [11], CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 [12], ECC/DEC/ (06)08 [13], and EU 2019/1345 [14] .

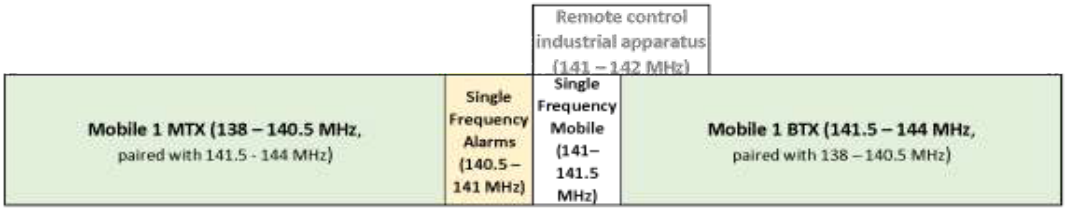
4 Channelling Plan

4.1 As shown in Annexure A National Radio Frequency Allocation table, ITU Region 1 spectrum allocation highlights 3 sub bands, i.e. (1) 138 - 143.6 MHz, (2) 143.6 - 143.65 MHz, and (3) 143.65 - 144 MHz. The latter two sub bands are allocated to Aeronautical Mobile and/or Space Research in the ITU Region 1. However, South Africa has Fixed and Mobile only allocation from 138 - 144 MHz i.e., one sub band only.

4.2 The frequency band 138 - 144 MHz provides a total bandwidth of 6 MHz for alarms and other single and dual frequency (SF and DF) links.

4.3 The previous and new channel arrangements for the band are based on Appendix A and shown in Figure 1.

a) Previous channel arrangement:



b) New channel arrangement:

[11] Report ITU-R SM.2153-2 (06/2011) Technical and operating parameters and spectrum use for short-range radiocommunication devices. Available online at https://www.itu.int/dms_pub/itu-r/opb/rep/R-REP-SM.2153-2-2011-PDF-E.pdf .

[12] CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03: ERC Recommendation 70-03 Relating to the use of Short Range Devices (SRD), Tromsø 1997, Subsequent amendments 8 October 2021, available at https://docdb.cept.org/download/3497 .

[13] CEPT/ECC/DEC/ (06)08: ECC Decision (06)08 the conditions for use of the radio spectrum by Ground and Wall-Probing Radar (GPR/WPR) imaging systems, Approved 1 December 2006, Updated 26 October 2018, available at https://docdb.cept.org/download/1602 .

[14] 2019/1345: Commission Implementing Decision (EU) 2019/1345 of 2 August 2019 amending Decision 2006/771/EC updating harmonised technical conditions in the area of radio spectrum use for short-range devices, Official Journal of the European Union, L 212/53, 13.8.2019, available at https://eur-lex.europa.eu/legal-content/EN/TXT/PDF/?uri=CELEX:32019D1345&from=EN .

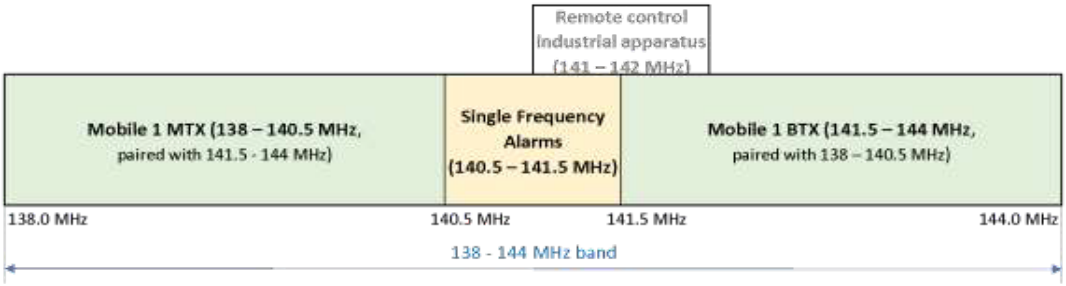


Figure 1: Frequency channel assignments: a) previous channel arrangement, b) new channel arrangement.

5 Requirements for usage of radio frequency spectrum

5.1 This chapter covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary in order to make the best use of the available frequencies.

5.2 The use of the 138 - 144 MHz band is for Fixed and Mobile Services and is limited to single frequency alarms and other single frequency and dual frequency links as well as remote control apparatus

5.3 Capacity enhancing digital techniques are common and such techniques that promote efficient use of spectrum, without reducing quality of service are encouraged. Only systems using digital technologies that promote spectral efficiency will be issued with an assignment.

5.4 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.5 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP), and an extract of the NRFP is shown in Appendix A.

5.6 Maximum radiated power:

5.6.1 Base Station transmissions should not exceed 44.8 dBm / 5 MHz EIRP.

5.6.2 Mobile Station transmissions should not exceed 38.8 dBm EIRP.

5.6.3 On a case to case basis, higher EIRP may be permitted if acceptable technical justification is provided.

5.7 ICNIRP[15] Guideline[16] compliance is required, where applicable;

5.8 Criteria and guidelines for interference mitigation are described in Appendix B.

6 Implementation

6.1 This Radio Frequency Assignment Plan comes into effect on the date of revocation i.e., on the 1st of April 2023.

---

[15] https://www.icnirp.org/

[16] https://www.icnirp.org/en/publications/article/rf-guidelines-2020.html

6.2 No new assignment for single frequency alarms and other single frequency and dual frequency links shall be approved unless they comply with the RFSAP.

6.3 SF/DF repeaters are subject to coordination with the authorised licensees.

7 Coordination Requirements

7.1 Co-ordination is performed by the Authority during the process of assignment.

7.2 In the event of any interference, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution.

7.3 In the event of any interference, the Authority will require affected parties to carry out coordination. In the event that the interference continues to be unresolved after 24 hours, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution.

7.4 The Authority will decide the necessary modifications and schedule of modifications to resolve the dispute.

7.5 The Authority will be guided by the interference resolution process as shown in Appendix B.

7.6 Assignment holders shall take full advantage of interference mitigation techniques such as antenna discrimination, tilt, polarization, frequency discrimination, shielding/blocking (introduce diffraction loss), site selection, and/or power control to facilitate the coordination of systems.

8 Assignment

8.1 Standard Approach

8.1.1 The assignment of frequency will take place according to the Standard Application Procedures in the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015 [17].

9 Amendments

9.1 The Authority will amend all SF Mobile licenses in the 141 MHz to 141.5 MHz band from the 1st of April 2023.

9.2 Upon publication of this RFSAP, the provisions of Regulation 6 of the Radio Frequency Migration Regulations 2013 shall be implemented.

10 Radio Frequency Migration

10.1 The Authority will migrate SF Mobile from 141 - 141.5 MHz out of the band.

10.2 Remote control industrial apparatus must move to an ISM band if they experience harmful interference.

[17] Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015, Government Gazette No. 38641, 30 March 2015. Available online at https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/Radio-Frequency-Spectrum-Regulations-2015.pdf .

Appendix A **National Radio Frequency Plan**

Table 1 shows an extract from the National Frequency Plan for South Africa.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
138-143.6 MHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) 5.210 5.211 5.212 5.214	138-144 MHz FIXED MOBILE	Single Frequency Alarms (140.5 – 141 MHz) Mobile 1 MTX (138 – 140.5 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (141 – 141.5 MHz) Mobile 1 BTX (141.5 – 144 MHz) Remote control industrial apparatus (141 – 142 MHz) PMR and / or PAMR	Paired with 141.5 - 144 MHz Paired with 138 – 140.5 MHz Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015).
143.6-143.65 MHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-Earth) 5.211 5.212 5.214		Mobile 1 BTX (141.5 – 144 MHz) PMR and / or PAMR	Paired with 138 – 140.5 MHz Allocation includes BTX assignments at 142.8 – 143.275 MHz and 143.325 - 143.975 MHz Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan GG 41512 Notice 146 of 2018 Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (GG No. 42337 Notice 36 of 2019)
143.65-144 MHz AERONAUTICAL MOBILE (OR) 5.210 5.211 5.212 5.214			

Table 1: National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa for 138 - 144 MHz band[18]. In terms of notations, the aeronautical mobile service and the aeronautical mobile-satellite service,

[18] National Radio Frequency Plan 2021, (NRFP-21) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz, Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, Government Gazette No 44803, 9 July 2021.

the marking (R) after name of the service means a service on national and international air routes, (OR) outside these air routes.

Appendix B **Interference Resolution Process**

Technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements for four (4) geographical sub-regions are defined by the African Union, which includes the Southern African sub-region of ten (10) countries. Cross-Border Frequency Coordination and interference resolution should follow the HIPSSA[19] ,and HCM4A,[20] or any appropriate methods applicable.

When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration affected. All of the following characteristics should be included:

a) carrier frequency (MHz).
b) name of transmitter station;
c) country of location of transmitter station;
d) geographical coordinates (latitude, longitude);
e) effective antenna height (m);
f) antenna polarisation;
g) antenna azimuth (degrees);
h) antenna gain (dBi);
i) effective radiated power (dBW);
j) expected coverage zone or radius (km);
k) date of entry into service (month, year);
l) code group number used; and
m) antenna tilt (degrees).

The Administration affected will evaluate the request for coordination and will, within thirty (30) days, notify the Administration requesting coordination the result of the evaluation. If, in the course of the coordination procedure, the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within (30) days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. Where the Administration fails to respond within thirty (30) days following communication of the reminder will be deemed to have given its consent, and the code coordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

The above-mentioned periods are subject to extension by common consent.

[19] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A), Agreement. HIPSSA - Harmonization of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa, ITU, 2013, 54pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

[20] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination Agreement Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A): On the coordination of frequencies between 29.7 MHz and 43.5 GHz For the fixed service and the land mobile service. Adopted on)01.01.2022). DRAFT, 25pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/PRIDA/PublishingImages/Pages/default/HCM4A_2022_%20Main%20text_and%20annex%2012%20_EN_v.0.pdf

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

NO. 3762 **4 August 2023**

HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT PLANS FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 156.8375 MHz TO 174 MHz IN TERMS OF REGULATION 3 OF THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATIONS, 2015

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the Final **Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 156.8375 MHz to 174 MHz** in terms of regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations, 2015, read with the Radio Frequency Migration Regulation 2013, the 2013 and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plans.

YOLISA KEDAMA
ACTING CHAIRPERSON

Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band
156.8375 MHz to 174 MHz

Table of Contents

1 Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise:

"Act"	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005) as amended
"Administration"	means any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002).
"BTX"	means Base Transceiver
"dBc"	means decibels relative to carrier
"DMR"	Digital Mobile Radio
"FAP"	means Frequency Allocation Plan
"FWA"	means Fixed Wireless Access
"GMDSS"	means Global Maritime Distress and Safety System
"IMO"	means International Maritime Organisation
"ITU"	means the International Telecommunication Union;
"ITU-R"	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
"MTX"	means Mobile Transceiver
"NRFP"	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 for South Africa
"RFSAP"	means Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
"SF"	means Single Frequency
"WRC-12"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2012
"WRC-15"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2015
"WRC-19"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Sharm el-Sheikh in 2019

2 Purpose

2.1 The Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) provides information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP). This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination, and details on required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment

2.2 The Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) provides information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP). This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination, and details on required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment

2.3 This Frequency Assignment Plan states the requirements for the utilization of the frequency band between 156.8375-174 MHz for primary Fixed and Mobile (except Aeronautical mobile for all sub bands and Maritime mobile satellite for some sub bands) services. As per Appendix A, some sub bands of this band are allocated to Maritime Mobile Satellite and Mobile-Satellite (Earth to Space) services on a secondary basis.

2.4 This follows the feasibility study concerning the 156.8375-174 MHz band[1], as mandated by the 2013[2] and 2019[3] RF migration plans.

2.5 Key to the feasibility consultation into this band is the MTX-DF and BTX-DF challenge as shown in Figure 1. As per the Government Gazette 36031, the MTX-DF (165.55-167.5 MHz) and BTX-DF (172.05-174 MHz) were interchanged in this band[4]. The outcome of the consultation in 2012 into this challenge recommended the following (which are all consistent with the 2013[5] and 2019[6] RF migration plans):

2.5.1 Step 1: swapping MTX and BTX to optimise the usage of the band through aggregating the MTX mobile frequencies in the centre of the band, leading to minimised interference between the four FDD pairs of frequencies.

2.5.2 Step 2: conducting a feasibility study into simplex frequencies (FDMA or TDMA) with different channel spacing, including coexistence of multiple technologies, bandwidths

[1] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

[2] Frequency Migration regulation and Radio Frequency Migration Plan March 2013, Government Gazette No 36334, 3 April 2013

[3] ICASA. 2019. Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019. Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019

[4] https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/201409/36031gen10641.pdf . Government Gazette No 36031, 24 December 2012?

[5] Frequency Migration regulation and Radio Frequency Migration Plan March 2013, Government Gazette No 36334, 3 April 2013

[6] ICASA. 2019. Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019. Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019

etc. Depending on the outcome, the band would need to be re-planned (year 2 + after studies have been completed).

2.5.3 Step 3: Develop RFSAP (realised by this document)

2.6 However, at the conclusion of the feasibility study into this band[7], the Authority has concluded the following:

2.6.1 The MTX DF and BTX DF swap shown in Figure 1 may be desirable but not very feasible; and that

2.6.2 It may be feasible, but it would require significant stakeholder galvanisation on the part of the Authority - particularly the thousands of non-specific SRDs, wireless microphones and assistant listening devices - with a likely low probability of success.

2.7 Therefore, the Authority has concluded that proceeding with the MTX-DF/BTX-DF swap would not be optimal – leaving the current arrangement as is (see Figure 1).

2.8 So, the intention of this RFSAP is to leave the band as it is today, i.e., no swap would happen going forward.

3 General

3.1 Technical characteristics of equipment used for Fixed, Mobile, Aeronautical Mobile, Maritime Mobile and Mobile-Satellite (Earth to Space) across miscellaneous sub-bands of this wider band as seen in Appendix A shall conform to all applicable South African standards, international standards, International Telecommunications Union (ITU) and its radio regulations as agreed to and adopted by South Africa

3.2 All installations must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.

3.3 The equipment used shall be certified under South African law and regulations.

3.4 The allocation of this frequency band and the information in this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) are subject to review.

3.5 Frequency bands sub-allocations will be as per the SADC sub-allocations/utilisations as shown in Appendix A (Tables 2 and 3).

3.6 The following documents may also be useful when considering the 156.8375 - 174 MHz band:

[7] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

3.6.1 ERC/REC 70-03, ERC Recommendation of 6 October 1997 on relating to the use of Short-Range Devices (SRD) editorial update on 11 February 2022. https://docdb.cept.org/document/845 .

3.6.2 ECC/DEC/ (05)02, ECC Decision of 18 March 2005 on the use of the frequency band 169.4-169.8125 MHz, Amended 5 July 2019. https://docdb.cept.org/document/385 .

3.6.3 ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680 .

3.6.4 ECC/DEC/ (19)03, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on the harmonised usage of the channels of the Radio Regulations Appendix 18 (transmitting frequencies in the VHF maritime mobile band), 8 March 2019. https://docdb.cept.org/document/9681.

3.6.5 T/R 25-08, Recommendation T/R of 30 May 2008 on Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz. Latest amended on 28 September 2018. https://docdb.cept.org/document/909 .

3.6.6 CEPT Report 059, Annual update of the technical annex of the Commission Decision on the technical harmonisation of radio spectrum for use by short range device Addendum to the report is also to be found here, 17 June 2016. https://docdb.cept.org/document/945 .

3.6.7 CEPT Report 044, In response to the EC Permanent Mandate on the" Annual update of the technical annex of the Commission Decision on the technical harmonisation of

radio spectrum for use by short range devices", 8 March 2013. https://docdb.cept.org/document/44 .

3.6.8 ECC Report 097 Cross Border Interference for Land Mobile Technologies, 20 February 2007. https://docdb.cept.org/document/205 .

3.6.9 ECC Report 055 Compatibility between existing and proposed SRDs and other radiocommunication applications in the 169.4-169.8 MHz frequency band, 25 Oct 2004. https://docdb.cept.org/document/165 .

3.6.10 Recommendation ITU-R M.2092-1 (02/2022): "Technical characteristics for a VHF data exchange system in the VHF maritime mobile band", https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.2092 .

3.6.11 Recommendation M.2135 (10/2019): "Technical characteristics of autonomous maritime radio devices operating in the frequency band 156-162.05 MHz", https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.2135/en.

3.6.12 Recommendation ITU-R M.1371-5 (02/2014): "Technical characteristics for an automatic identification system using time-division multiple access in the VHF maritime mobile band", https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1371.

3.6.13 Recommendation ITU-R M.1084-5 (03/2012): "Interim solutions for improved efficiency in the use of the band 156-174 MHz by stations in the maritime mobile service", https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1084.

3.6.14 Recommendation ITU-R M.1842-1 (06/2009): "Characteristics of VHF radio systems and equipment for the exchange of data and electronic mail in the maritime mobile service RR Appendix 18 channels", https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1842.

3.6.15 Report M.2010-1 (1997): "Improved efficiency in the use of the band 156-174 MHz by stations in the maritime mobile service", https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2010-1-1997.

3.6.16 Recommendation M.1312-0 (10/97): "A long-term solution for improved efficiency in the use of the band 156-174 MHz by stations in the maritime mobile service", https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1312/en.

3.6.17 Recommendation M.586-1 (07/86): Automated VHF/UHF maritime mobile telephone system, https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.586.

3.6.18 A complete list of ITU Maritime related recommendations is available at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-R/terrestrial/mars/Pages/References.aspx.

4 Channelling Plan

4.1 The frequency band 156.8375 to 174 MHz will be assigned in line with the frequency allocations (see Appendix A), with Figure 1 (minus the swap) illustrating the assignment. In other words, there is no change.

156.8375 -174 MHz

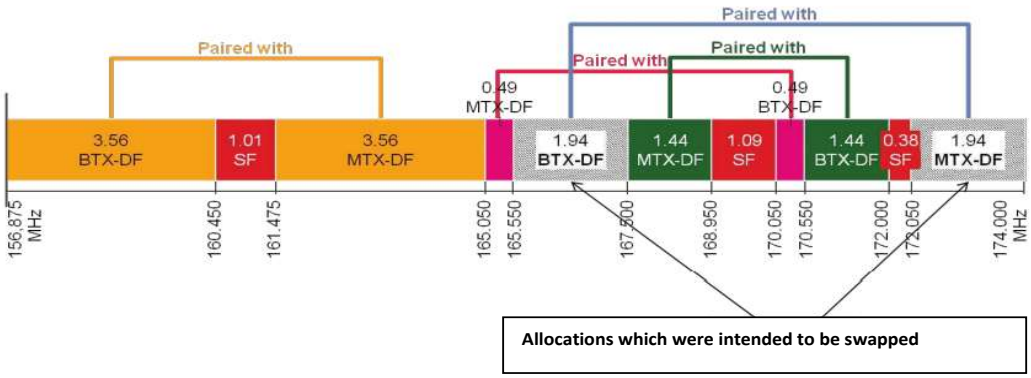


Figure 1: Illustration of channel arrangements for some of the allocations in the 156.8375 – 174 MHz band[8]

Sample detailed channel plans for the frequency allocation are provided on pages 159-161 of the Final Radio Frequency Plan 2019 [9] (pages 539-541 of the Gazette).

5 Requirements for usage of radio frequency spectrum

5.1 This chapter covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary to make the best use of the available frequencies.

5.2 The use of the band is limited for Fixed, Mobile, Aeronautical Mobile, Maritime Mobile and Mobile-Satellite (Earth to Space) services across miscellaneous sub-bands of this wider band as seen in Appendix A.

5.3 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.4 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP), and an extract of the NRFP is shown in Appendix A.

5.5 Maximum radiated powers are specified through the type approval process for the equipment used.

5.6 On a case-by-case basis, higher EIRP may be permitted. In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if major interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.7 The Technical Requirements for land mobile systems with channel bandwidth of 6.25 kHz, 12.5 kHz and 25 kHz, 50 kHz, 100 kHz, 150 kHz, and 200 kHz, as well as the technical requirements

[8] ICASA. 2019. Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019. Government Gazette, No. 42337, 29 March 2019

[9] Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019. https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/final-radio-frequency-migration-plan-2019.pdf

for land mobile systems operating with channel bandwidth between 6.25 kHz and 200 kHz are provided in ECC/DEC/ (19)02 [10]:

5.7.1 Adjacent and Alternate Channel Power

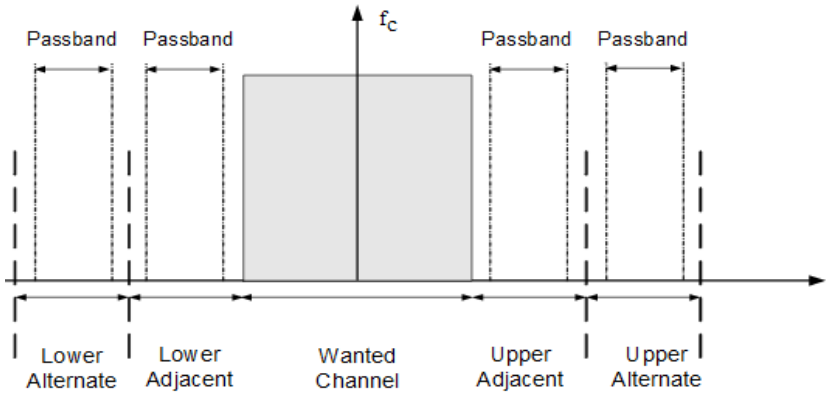


Figure 2: Wanted channel, adjacent and alternate adjacent channels

Within the wanted channel, the effective radiated power used shall comply with the authorisation conditions. Normal effective radiated power emissions within the wanted channel do normally not exceed 40 dBm for user equipment and 53 dBm for base station equipment.

5.7.2 Adjacent and Alternate Adjacent Channel Power

The power in the lower and upper adjacent channels, as well as in the lower and upper alternate adjacent channels, shall not exceed a value of 60 dBc below the transmitter output power without the need to be below -36 dBm ERP.

These limits are valid for all base stations, user equipment and repeaters.

5.7.3 Unwanted Emissions in The Spurious Domain

The unwanted emissions within the spurious domain during operation shall not exceed -36 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -30 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz. In standby mode, the unwanted emissions shall not exceed -57 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -47 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz.

5.7.4 Intermodulation Attenuation

This requirement applies only to transmitters to be used in base stations or repeaters.

[10] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. https://docdb.cept.org/download/1455

Intermodulation attenuation is a measure of the capability of a transmitter to inhibit the generation of signals in its non-linear elements caused by the presence of the transmitter power and an interfering signal entering the transmitter via its antenna.

In general, the intermodulation attenuation ratio shall be at least 40 dB for any intermodulation component.

Note that ICASA may require a more stringent intermodulation attenuation requirement for base station equipment to be used in special service conditions, e.g., at sites where more than one transmitter will be in service, this is recommended to be at least 70 dB for any intermodulation component.

5.7.5 Adjacent Channel Transient Power

Transient power is the power falling into adjacent spectrum due to switching the transmitter on and off. The transient power in the adjacent channels (e.g., caused by push-to-talk functionality) shall not exceed -60 dBc in the adjacent channels, or -50 dBc for equipment, without the need to be below -36 dBm.

5.7.6 Receiver Requirements

5.7.6.1 Adjacent channel selectivity

The adjacent channel selectivity is the measure of the capability of the receiver of the land mobile system to receive a wanted modulated signal at the nominal operating frequency without exceeding a given degradation due to the presence of another land mobile system in assumed 25 kHz channels adjacent to the channel bandwidth for which the equipment is intended. E.g., the centre of an adjacent channel relative to the centre of the nominal channel is at +/- 62.5 kHz for a land mobile system operating with a 100 kHz channel bandwidth.

Table 1: Adjacent channel selectivity

Channel bandwidth	Unwanted signal levels
Up to 200 kHz	-37 dBm

5.7.6.2 Receiver blocking

Blocking is the measure of the capability of the receiver to receive a wanted modulated signal without exceeding a given degradation due to the presence of an unwanted input signal at any frequencies outside the wanted channel and the lower and upper adjacent and alternate adjacent channels (see “Adjacent channel selectivity” above).

The blocking level shall not be less than -27 dBm.

6 Implementation

6.1 This RFSAP shall be effective on the date of issue.

6.2 No new assignment in the band 156.8375 – 174 MHz shall be approved unless they comply with the RFSAP.

7 Co-ordination Requirements

7.1 Coordination is performed by the Authority during the process of assignment using HCM or any other appropriate method.

7.2 In the event of any interference, the Authority will require affected parties to carry out coordination. In the event that the interference continues to be unresolved after 24 hours, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution. The Authority will decide the necessary modifications and schedule of modifications to resolve the dispute. The Authority will be guided by the interference resolution process as shown in Appendix B.

7.3 Assignment holders shall take full advantage of interference mitigation techniques such as antenna discrimination, tilt, polarisation, frequency discrimination, shielding / blocking (introduce diffraction loss), site selection, and/or power control to facilitate the coordination of systems.

7.4 Indicative coordination thresholds for analogue or digital land mobile systems are as follows [11].

The aim of a coordination threshold is to avoid harmful interference between stations located in neighbouring countries. To achieve this, an indicative coordination threshold is established which should not be exceeded without coordination between neighbouring countries.

The indicative coordination threshold for land mobile systems (co-channel, 50% locations, 10% time[12], 10 m receiving antenna height, within a reference bandwidth of 25 kHz, at the borderline) is: 12 dB (µV/m).

For systems using a channel spacing greater than 25 kHz, the following bandwidth conversion formula can be used provided that the spectral power distribution within this channel spacing is uniform within the channel:

$$\mathbf{BC = 10 \times \log_{10} (\text{channel spacing} / 25\ \text{kHz}),\ dB}$$

The value (BC) resulting from the formula should be added to the indicative coordination threshold as listed above.

For all other spectral power distributions, indicative coordination threshold levels should be applied within every 25 kHz bandwidth within the channel spacing.

---

[11] Recommendation T/R 25-08: "Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz", Approved 15 January 1990, Amended 28 September 2018, https://docdb.cept.org/document/909

[12] In certain situations, the 1%-time curves should be used for digital systems, e.g., to better protect analogue systems.

7.5 Some information on levels of interference and required separation distances from and to several traditional technologies (narrowband FM, TETRA, CDMA-PAMR, and Flash OFDM) may be found in ECC Report 097 [13].

7.6 Planning characteristics in border areas.

The location, the power, and the antenna heights of all stations in the network should be selected in such a way that their range is confined, as far as possible, to the zone to be covered by the intended service.

Excessive antenna heights and transmitter outputs should be avoided, by using several locations of reduced height wherever possible. In border areas directional antennas should be used to minimise the interference potential.

The effective radiated power and the height of the antenna should be as low as possible in relation to the area to be served.

8 Assignment

8.1 Standard Approach

The assignment of frequency will take place according to the Standard Application Procedures in the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015.

9 Amendments

9.1 Not applicable.

10 Frequency Migration

10.1 Specific Procedure

There is no specific technical procedure needed.

[13] ECC Report 097, Cross Border Interference for Land Mobile Technologies, 20 February 2007. https://docdb.cept.org/document/205 .

Appendix A National Radio Frequency Plan

Table 2 shows an extract from the National Frequency Plan for South Africa.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
156.8375-157.1875 MHz FIXED MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile 5.226	156.8375-157.1875 MHz FIXED MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile 5.226	Government Services 156.8375-157.45 MHz Maritime mobile communications (ship stations). Land mobile in areas remote from coast.	Paired with 161.5-162.0 MHz and single frequency applications; ITU RR Articles 31 and 52 and Appendix 18 apply
157.1875-157.3375 MHz FIXED MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite 5.208A 5.208B 5.228AB 5.228AC 5.226	157.1875-157.3375 MHz FIXED MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) (non-GSO) Maritime mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) (non-GSO) 5.228AB 5.228AC 5.208A 5.208B 5.226	Government Services	Resolution 739 (Rev.WRC-19) apply MSS and Maritime mobile-satellite shall protect RAS in line with 5.208A
157.3375-161.7875 MHz FIXED MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile	157.3375-161.7875 MHz FIXED MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile	Government Services (157.450-160.6 MHz) PMR and/or PAMR (160.600-160.975 MHz) Maritime mobile communications (Coast stations). Land mobile in areas remote from coast (160.975-161.475 MHz)	Single frequency applications Paired with 156.025-156.350 MHz; Paired with 156.9-157.4 MHz;

156.8375 -174 MHz

5.226	5.226	PMR and/or PAMR (161.475-162.050 MHz)	ITU RR Article 31 and Article 52 apply Appendix 18 apply.
161.7875-161.9375 MHz FIXED MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite 5.208A 5.208B 5.228AB 5.228AC 5.226	161.7875-161.9375 MHz FIXED MOBILE -except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) (non-GSO) 5.228A 5.228B 5.228AB 5.228AC Maritime mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) (non-GSO) 5.228A 5.228B 5.228AB 5.228AC 5.226	Government Services (161.475-162.050 MHz) Maritime mobile communications (Coast stations) Land mobile in areas remote from coast Automatic Identification System (AIS) at 161.975 MHz, 162.025 MHz and 162.050-174 MHz PMR and/or PAMR	ITU RR Article 31 and Article 52 Appendix 18 apply.
161.9375 - 161.9625 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA 5.226	161.9375 - 161.9625 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA 5.226	Sonobuoy (161.875 – 173.875) Transmission of meteorological bulletins and notice to navigators Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (160.45 – 161.475 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (156.8375 – 156.875 MHz) Private Maritime MTX (157.45 – 157.95 MHz)	See Section 7 for details Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz) Inland areas only Paired with 162.05 – 162.55 MHz

156.8375 -174 MHz

Page 14

161.9625-161.9875 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228F 5.226 5.228A 5.228B	161.9625-161.9875 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228F 5.226 5.228A 5.228B	Search and rescue (air to ground) Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz) Reception of AIS emissions from stations in the mms	Search and rescue operations and other safety-related communications (air to ground) Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz)
161.9875-162.0125 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA 5.226 5.229	161.9875-162.0125 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Maritime mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228AA 5.226	Transmission of meteorological bulletins and notice to navigators Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz)	See Section 7 for details Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz)
162.0125-162.0375 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228F 5.226 5.228A 5.228B 5.229	162.0125-162.0375 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4 Mobile-satellite (Earth-to-space) 5.228F 5.226 5.228A 5.228B	Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz) Reception of AIS emissions from stations in the mms. Search and rescue (air to ground)	Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz) Search and rescue operations and other safety-related communications (air to ground)
162.0375-174 MHz	162.0375-174 MHz		

156.8375 -174 MHz

Page 15

FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile NF4	Sonobuoy in maritime service Mobile 1 MTX-DF (161.475 – 165.0375 MHz) Mobile 2 MTX-DF (165.05 – 165.5375 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (168.95 – 170.05 MHz) Mobile 3 MTX-DF (165.55 – 167.4875 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (172 – 172.0375 MHz) Mobile 4 MTX-DF (167.5 – 168.9375 MHz) Meter Reading (169.4 – 169.475 MHz) Non-specific SRD's – Telecommand only (173.2125 – 173.2375 MHz) Non-specific SRDs (173.2375 – 173.2875 MHz) Wireless microphones and assistive listening devices (173.7 – 175.1 MHz)	Paired with Mobile 1 BTX-DF (156.875 – 160.4375 MHz) Paired with Mobile 2 BTX-DF (170.05 – 170.5375 MHz) Paired with Mobile 3 BTX-DF (172.05 – 173.9875 MHz) Paired with Mobile 4 BTX (170.55 – 171.9875 MHz) Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). .
5.226 5.229	5.226 NF5		

<u>Table 2</u>: National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa for 156.8375 to 174 MHz band

156.8375 -174 MHz

Page 16

Appendix B Process

Technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements for four (4) geographical sub-regions are defined by the African Union, which includes the Southern African sub-region of ten (10) countries. Cross-Border Frequency Coordination and interference resolution should follow the HIPSSA[14] and Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A)[15] or any appropriate methods applicable.

When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and the code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration affected. All of the following characteristics should be included:

a) carrier frequency (MHz);
b) name of transmitter station;
c) country of location of transmitter station;
d) geographical coordinates (latitude, longitude);
e) effective antenna height (m);
f) antenna polarisation;
g) antenna azimuth (degrees);
h) antenna gain (dBi);
i) effective radiated power (dBW);
j) expected coverage zone or radius (km);
k) date of entry into service (month, year);
l) code group number used; and
m) antenna tilt (degrees).

The Administration affected will evaluate the request for coordination and will, within thirty (30) days, notify the Administration requesting coordination the result of the evaluation. If, in the course of the coordination procedure, the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within (30) days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. Where the Administration fails to respond within thirty (30) days following communication of the reminder will be deemed to have given its consent, and the code coordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

The above-mentioned periods are subject to extension by common consent.

---

[14] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A), Agreement. HIPSSA - Harmonization of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa, ITU, 2013, 54pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

[15] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination Agreement Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A): On the coordination of frequencies between 29.7 MHz and 43.5 GHz For the fixed service and the land mobile service. Adopted on (01.01.2022). DRAFT, 25 pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/PRIDA/PublishingImages/Pages/default/HCM4A_2022_%20Main%20text_and%20annex%2012%20_EN_v.0.pdf

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

NO. 3763 **4 August 2023**

HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING THE FINAL RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT PLANS FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 335.4 MHz TO 380 MHz IN TERMS OF REGULATION 3 OF THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATIONS, 2015

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the Final **Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 335.4 MHz to 380 MHz** in terms of regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations, 2015, read with the Radio Frequency Migration Regulation 2013, the 2013 and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plans.

YOLISA KEDAMA
ACTING CHAIRPERSON

Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band
335.4 MHz to 380 MHz

Table of Contents

1 Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise:

"Act"	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005) as amended
"Administration"	means any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002).
"BTX"	means Base Transceiver
"B(F)WA"	means Broadband (Fixed) Wireless Access
"DMR"	Digital Mobile Radio
"FAP"	means Frequency Allocation Plan
"FWA"	means Fixed Wireless Access
"ITU"	means the International Telecommunication Union;
"ITU-R"	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
"MTX"	means Mobile Transceiver
"NRFP"	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 for South Africa
"PAMR"	means Private Access Mobile Radio
"PMR"	means Public Mobile Radio
"PPDR"	means Public Protection and Disaster Relief
"PTP/PTMP"	means Point to Point/Point to Multi Point
"RFSAP"	means Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
"SADC"	means Southern African Development Community
"SF"	means Single Frequency
"UAV"	means Unmanned Aerial Vehicle
"WRC-19"	means World Radiocommunications Conference 2019 held in Sharm el-Sheikh

2 Purpose

2.1 The RFSAP provides information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the NRFP. This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination, and details on required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment.

2.2 The RFSAP states the requirements for the utilisation of the frequency band between 335.4 - 380 MHz for co-primary Fixed and Mobile Services, and Mobile-Satellite (space-to-earth) services on a secondary basis.

2.3 This follows the feasibility study concerning the 335.4 - 380 MHz band[1], as mandated by the 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plan[2]. The 2019 RFM made two (2) key proposals for this band:

2.3.1 Firstly, migrating the existing over 1300 fixed links in this 335.4 - 380 MHz band to above 3 GHz as per SADC proposed common sub-allocation/utilisation. The current players have shown indications that they may relinquish these Fixed Links assignments spectrum due to spectrum fees imposed.

2.3.2 Secondly, that a feasibility study on the use of this band as per SADC Frequency Allocation Plan (FAP) sub-allocation/utilisation to assign BFWA and UAV Fixed and Mobile Services respectively in the band.

2.4 However, at the conclusion of the feasibility study into the band[3], the Authority has concluded that these proposals would result in a more inefficient use of this spectrum band, because the fixed links would be migrated out (faster) and yet no new BWA/UVA services are licensed in the band in the near future.

2.5 Therefore, the Authority has concluded that proceeding with an exclusive assignment just for BFWA (in the Fixed Service) and UAVs (in the Mobile Service) in this band is premature at this stage. Consequently, though the co-primary allocations for Fixed and Mobile Services (and Mobile-Satellite (space-to-earth) services on a secondary basis) will continue, the Authority will *not* continue with its intention to assign exclusively for just BFWA and UAV applications.

2.6 Therefore, the intention of this RFSAP is to assign this band for Fixed and Mobile Services (inclusive of *non-exclusive* BFWA and UAV services) with coordination amongst fixed and mobile services. This Authority decision is consistent with the ITU and SADC allocations for the 335.4 - 380 MHz band as shown in Appendix A. The proposed SADC common sub-allocations and the sub-bands proposed will be respected in this RFSAP (see Appendix A).

3 General

3.1 Technical characteristics of the equipment used in Fixed and Mobile Services' systems shall conform to all applicable South African standards, international standards, ITU and its radio regulations as agreed and adopted by South Africa.

3.2 All installations must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.

3.3 The equipment used shall be certified under South African law and regulations.

---

[1] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

[2] Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019. https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/final-radio-frequency-migration-plan-2019.pdf

[3] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

3.4 The allocation of this frequency band and the information in the RFSAP are subject to review.

3.5 Frequency bands sub-allocations will be as per the SADC sub-allocations/utilisations as shown in Appendix A:

3.5.1 335.4 - 336 MHz for PMR and/or PAMR

3.5.2 336 - 346 MHz for Fixed Wireless Access (PTP//PTMP rural system – paired with 356 - 366 MHz)

3.5.3 346.0 - 356.0 MHz for PMR and/or PAMR

3.5.4 356.0 - 366.0 MHz for Fixed Wireless Access (PTP//PTMP rural system – paired with 336 - 346 MHz)

3.5.5 366.0 - 386.0 MHz for PMR and/or PAMR

3.6 As seen in Appendix A, Footnote 5.254 [4] applies.

3.6.1 Footnote 5.254: The bands 235 - 322 MHz and 335.4 - 399.9 MHz may be used by the mobile satellite service, subject to agreement obtained under No. 9.21, on condition that stations in this service do not cause harmful interference to those of other services operating or planned to be operated in accordance with the Table of Frequency Allocations except for the additional allocation made in footnote No. 5.256A. (WRC-03)

3.7 The following documents may provide additional information for mobile-satellite service and UAV applications and typical characteristics and requirements for various systems operating in the band:

3.7.1 Recommendation M.1039-3 (03/06) Co-frequency sharing between stations in the mobile service below 1 GHz and mobile earth stations of non-geostationary mobile-satellite systems (Earth-space) using frequency division multiple access (FDMA). https://www.itu.int/dms_pubrec/itu-r/rec/m/R-REC-M.1039-3-200603-I!!PDF-E.pdf .

3.7.2 ERC Report 087 Sharing studies between MES and existing terrestrial services in the bands already allocated to the MSS below 1 GHz, 1 June 2000. https://docdb.cept.org/download/2177 .

3.7.3 Report ITU-R M.2204-0 (11/2010) Characteristics and spectrum considerations for sense and avoid systems use on Unmanned Aircraft Systems (UAS). https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2204 .

3.7.4 Recommendation ITU-R M.1808-1 (11/2019) Technical and operational characteristics of conventional and trunked land mobile systems operating in the mobile service allocations below 869 MHz to be used in sharing studies in bands below 960 MHz. https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1808/en .

3.7.5 Recommendation ITU-R SM.329-12 (09/2012) Unwanted emissions in the spurious domain. https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-SM.329

3.7.6 Recommendation T/R 25-08 Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz. Approved 15

[4] The Footnote is from the National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 (NRFP-21).

January 1990. Amended 28 September 2018. https://docdb.cept.org/document/909 . This document does not directly apply to the 335.4 – 380 MHz band (likely due to this band being devoted to defence in Europe) but may offer information useful for planning and coordination.

3.7.7 The documents Report ITU-R M.2014, ERC Report 104, ECC Report 97, ECC Report 42, ECC/DEC/(19)02, ECC Decision (04)06, ECC Report 173 do not directly apply to the 335.4 – 380 MHz band (likely due to this band being devoted to defence in Europe) but may offer a host of useful information, especially for PMR/PAMR.

4 Channelling Plan

4.1 The frequency band 335.4 - 380 MHz will be assigned according to the SADC proposed common sub-allocations as per Appendix A.

4.2 Fixed Services will operate in the 336.0 – 346.0 MHz band paired with 356.0 – 366.0 MHz.

4.3 Mobile Services will operate in the unpaired 335.4 – 336.0 MHz, 346.0 – 356.0 MHz and 366.0 - 380.0 MHz bands.

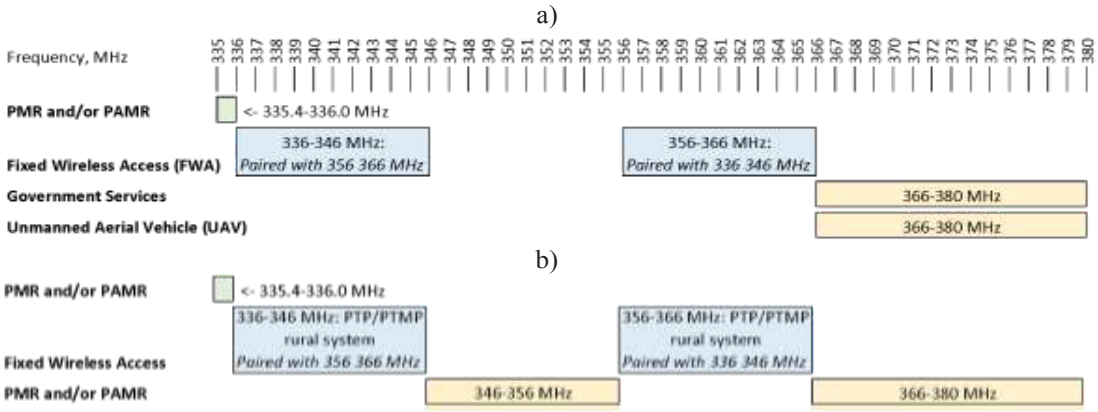


Figure 1: Channel arrangements for 335.4 – 380 MHz: a) current National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 sub-allocations, as per Table 1; b) proposed SADC sub-allocation, as per Table 2.

5 Requirements for usage of radio frequency spectrum

5.1 This chapter covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary in order to make the best use of the available frequencies.

5.2 The use of the band is limited to Fixed and Mobile services.

5.3 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.4 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP) and an extract of NRFP is shown in Appendix A.

5.5 Maximum radiated powers are specified through the type approval process for the equipment used.

5.5.1 Base Station transmissions should not exceed 46 dBm per channel and a maximum of 55 dBm total ERP per base station.

5.5.2 Mobile Station transmissions should not exceed 33 dBm EIRP.

5.6 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if major interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

6 Implementation

6.1 The RFSAP shall be effective on the date of issue.

6.2 No new assignment in the band 335.4 – 380 MHz shall be approved unless they comply with this RFSAP.

7 Co-ordination Requirements

7.1 Coordination is performed by the Authority during the process of assignment.

7.2 In the event of any interference, the Authority will require affected parties to carry out coordination. If the interference continues to be unresolved after 24 hours, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution. The Authority will decide the necessary modifications and schedule of modifications to resolve the dispute. The Authority will be guided by the interference resolution process as shown in Appendix B.

7.3 Assignment holders shall take full advantage of interference mitigation techniques such as antenna discrimination, tilt, polarization, frequency discrimination, shielding / blocking (introduce diffraction loss), site selection, and/or power control to facilitate the coordination of systems.

8 Assignment

8.1 Standard Approach

The assignment of frequency will take place according to the Standard Application Procedures in the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015.

9 Amendments

9.1 The Fixed Links Licences in the band will be amended after consultation and when this RFSAP comes into force.

9.2 Upon publication of this RFSAP, the provisions of Regulation 6 of the Radio Frequency Migration Regulations 2013 shall be implemented.

10 Frequency Migration

10.1 Specific Procedure

There is no specific technical procedure needed. The Authority believes appropriate and proportionate spectrum fees would encourage any migrations needed from the 335.4 – 380 MHz band to other bands.

Appendix A National Radio Frequency Plan

Table 1 shows an extract from the National Frequency Plan for South Africa for the band 335.4 - 380 MHz.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
335.4-387 MHz	335.4-387 MHz		
FIXED MOBILE	FIXED NF6	PTP/PTMP FWA (336 – 346 MHz) FWA (356 – 366 MHz) Government Services (366-380 MHz)	 Paired with 356 – 366 MHz Paired with 336 – 346 MHz
	MOBILE NF7 Mobile-satellite	Digital Trunking (Emergency) (380 – 387 MHz) (PPDR[5]) PMR and/or PAMR (335.4-336 MHz)	Paired with 390 – 397 MHz (Coordination is required with PTP/PTMP in the implementation of UAV)
5.254	5.254	Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV) (366.0-380.0 MHz)	Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan GG 41512 Notice 148 of 2018

<u>Table 1</u>: National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa for 335.4 - 380 MHz band[6]

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	SADC common allocation/s and relevant ITU footnotes	SADC proposed common sub-allocations / utilisation	Additional information
335.4-387 MHz FIXED MOBILE 5.254	335.4-387 MHz FIXED MOBILE 5.254	335.4-336 MHz PMR and/or PAMR	
		336-346 MHz Fixed Wireless Access	PTP/PTMP rural system; Paired with 356-366 MHz
		346.0-356.0 MHz PMR and/or PAMR	
		356.0-366.0 MHz Fixed Wireless Access	PTP/PTMP rural system; Paired with 336-346 MHz
		366.0-380.0 MHz PMR and/or PAMR	

[5] http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/12-03-2015_GUIDELINES%20ON%20FREQUENCIES%20FOR%20PPDR%202014.pdf

[6] National Radio Frequency Plan 2021, (NRFP-21) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz, Independent Communications Authority of South Africa. https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/National-Radio-Frequency-Plan-2021.pdf

		380.0-387.0 MHz PPDR	Paired with 390.0-397.0 MHz To be used mainly for digital systems.

Table 2: SADC Radio Frequency Spectrum Allocation Plan for the 335.4 - 380 MHz band [7]

[7] SADC Radio Frequency Spectrum Allocation Plan (SADC RFSAP) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz. Edition 2021. https://assets.website-files.com/5fb8ce4adbd6ad2ccc1423e7/612fe72be15121775ae6a121_2021%20SADC%20RADIO%20FREQUENCY%20SPECTRUM%20ALLOCATION%20PLAN.%20docx%5B1%5D.pdf

Appendix B Interference Resolution Process

Technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements for 4 geographical sub-regions are defined by the African Union, which includes the Southern African sub-region of 10 countries. Cross-Border Frequency Coordination and interference resolution should follow the Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa, (HIPSSA)[8] and (HCM4A),[9] or any appropriate methos applicable.

When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and the code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration affected. All of the following characteristics should be included:

a) carrier frequency (MHz);
b) name of transmitter station;
c) country of location of transmitter station;
d) geographical coordinates (latitude, longitude);
e) effective antenna height (m);
f) antenna polarisation;
g) antenna azimuth (degrees);
h) antenna gain (dBi);
i) effective radiated power (dBW);
j) expected coverage zone or radius (km);
k) date of entry into service (month, year);
l) code group number used;
m) antenna tilt (degrees).

The Administration affected will evaluate the request for coordination and will, within thirty (30) days, notify the Administration requesting coordination the result of the evaluation. If, in the course of the coordination procedure, the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within (30) days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. Where the Administration fails to respond within thirty (30) days following communication of the reminder will be deemed to have given its consent, and the code coordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

The above-mentioned periods are subject to extension by common consent.

[8] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A), Agreement. HIPSSA - Harmonization of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa, ITU, 2013, 54pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

[9] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination Agreement Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A): On the coordination of frequencies between 29.7 MHz and 43.5 GHz For the fixed service and the land mobile service. Adopted on (01.01.2022). DRAFT, 25 pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/PRIDA/PublishingImages/Pages/default/HCM4A_2022_%20Main%20text_and%20annex%2012%20_EN_v.0.pdf

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

NO. 3764 **4 August 2023**

HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT PLANS FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 380 MHz TO 399.9 MHz IN TERMS OF REGULATION 3 OF THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATIONS, 2015

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the Final **Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 380 MHz to 399.9 MHz** in terms of regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations, 2015, read with the Radio Frequency Migration Regulation 2013, the 2013 and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plans.

YOLISA KEDAMA
ACTING CHAIRPERSON

Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band
380-387 MHz and 387-390 MHz
and 390-399.9 MHz

Table of Contents

1 Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise:

"Act"	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005), as amended
"Administration"	means any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002).
"AGA"	means Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act (AGA Act No. 21 of 2007)
"ATU"	means African Telecommunications Union
"BTX"	means Base Transceiver
"CEPT"	means the European Conference of Postal and Telecommunications Administrations
"DF"	means Dual Frequency
"DMO"	means Direct Mode Operation
"ETSI"	means the European Telecommunications Standards Institute
"ITU"	means the International Telecommunication Union
"ITU-R"	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
"LTE"	means Long Term Evolution – the latest standards for cellular communications. LTE provides higher data rates than 2G and 3G cellular systems
"MTX"	means Mobile Transceiver
"NRFP"	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 for South Africa
"PABX"	means Private Automated Branch eXchange
"PPDR"	means Public Protection and Disaster Relief, as defined in ITU-R Report M.2377-1 (11/2017) [18]
"PSTN"	means Public Switched Telephone Network
"PMR"	means Public Mobile Radio

"RFSAP"	means Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
"SF"	means Single Frequency
"SAPS"	means the South African Police Service
"TCCA"	means TETRA and Critical Communications Association (see www.tandcca.com)
"TETRA"	means Terrestrial Trunked Radio
"TEDS"	means TETRA Enhanced Data Services (or TETRA 2)
"WRC-12"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2012
"WRC-15"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2015

2 Purpose

2.1 Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) provides information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP). This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination, and details on the required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment.

2.2 This RFSAP states the requirements for the utilization of the frequency bands 380 - 387 MHz, 387 - 390 MHz and 390 - 399.9 MHz for Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR), including digital Public Access Mobile Radio (PAMR) and Public Mobile Radio (PMR) services.

2.3 This follows the feasibility study concerning the 380 – 387 MHz, 387 – 390 MHz, and 390 - 399.9 MHz band[1], as mandated by the 2013[2] and 2019[3] Radio Frequency migration plans, in which the Authority has concluded that the most efficient use of this band is for PPDR services. PAMR and PMR may be allowed for digital public safety provided they can coexist with PPDR services. Therefore, the Authority confirms its proposal in the ICASA 2013 Radio Frequency Migration Plan, which proposed that all public safety services should be consolidated in the same radio frequency band (380 - 399.9 MHz). The proposal also recommended that public safety users adopt a common standard where possible.

2.4 The clear general intention of this RFSAP is to assign this band as a continuous block for public protection and disaster relief (PPDR) as well as public safety. This RFSAP recognises the importance of having a band dedicated to Public Safety and free of any other potential sources of interference. Users would include Metro Police, Fire-Fighting services, Ambulance Services, Border Control, National Security, and other Government Services. This will result in all other users being migrated, making this a dedicated band for public safety. Therefore, all other users will migrate out of the band.

---

[1] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

[2] Frequency Migration regulation and Radio Frequency Migration Plan March 2013, Government Gazette No 36334, 3 April 2013

[3] ICASA. 2019. Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019. Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019

2.5 Public Protection and Disaster Relief, defined in ITU-R Report M.2377-1 (11/2017) [18], takes into account the individual definitions of public protection and disaster relief as stated below:

Public protection (PP) *radiocommunication*: Radiocommunications used by responsible agencies and organisations dealing with maintenance of law and order, protection of life and property, and emergency situations.

Disaster relief (DR) *radiocommunication*: Radiocommunications used by agencies and organisations dealing with a serious disruption of the functioning of society, posing a significant, widespread threat to human life, health, property, or the environment, whether caused by accident, nature, or human activity, and whether developing suddenly or as a result of complex, long-term processes.

Public mobile radio (PMR) *Public Mobile Radio* is radio apparatus used for short-range two-way voice communications.

2.6 Historically the 380 - 399.9 MHz band is divided into three sub-bands, i.e., 380 – 387 MHz, 387 – 390 MHz, and 390 - 399.9 MHz, for digital PPDR (including Digital PMR) services. However, in this RFSAP the Authority proposes to consider these as one band.

2.7 To conclude, the specific intention of this RFSAP is to assign the 380 – 387 MHz & 387 – 390 MHz & 390 - 399.9 MHz bands to digital PPDR (incl. Digital PMR) services. Digital PPDR services include Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA), the predominant standard for this band in Europe[4], P25 in North America or a still-emerging LTE PPDR/LTE 380 (not yet a 3GPP standard). There is ongoing strategic work by key stakeholders in the LTE ecosystem (e.g., the 450 MHz Alliance[5]) to identify LTE spectrum allocation in the 380 MHz band. TETRA narrowband (voice) spectrum usage is typically 5 MHz (380 - 385 MHz uplink and 390 - 395 MHz downlink) dedicated exclusively to public service agencies. The inherent data capabilities of TETRA are low. So, this is partly bridged by the wideband data standard - TETRA Enhanced Data Services ('TEDS'), also known as 'TETRA 2', which increases data throughput tenfold from the existing TETRA standard[6]. Broadband PPDR typically requests to require 2 x 10 MHz of spectrum, e.g., see TEDS spectrum requirement[7] from the TCCA. LTE 380 would likely require 2 x 5 / 2 x 10 MHz, too, for Broadband PPDR.

2.8 Considering all noted in the aforementioned 2.7, this RFSAP intends to

2.8.1 Reserve the overall band for digital public safety. All non-digital and non-PPDR users will be migrated out of this band.

2.8.2 Assign the 380 – 389.9 MHz band paired with 390 – 399.9 MHz for digital PPDR (including Digital PMR) services.

---

[4] ETSI EN 300 392-2 (V3.4.1) (08-2010): "Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA); Voice plus Data (V+D); Part 2: Air Interface (AI)".

[5] 450 Alliance, https://450alliance.org/ & https://450alliance.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/10/450Alliance-Annual-Global-Update-Public-version-FINAL-B.pdf

[6] http://www.tetra-applications.com/item.html&objID=15195

[7] Submission 4 - Attachment7 - Australasian TETRA Forum - Public Safety Mobile Broadband - Commissioned study (pc.gov.au) and https://tcca.info/documents/january-2019-tcca-spectrum-position.pdf/

3. General

3.1 Technical characteristics of the equipment used for digital PPDR systems shall conform to all applicable South African standards, international standards, International Telecommunications Union (ITU) and its radio regulations as agreed and adopted by South Africa.

3.1.1 There are however a few minor differences between the national, ITU and European allocations, as mentioned below. The frequency arrangements for narrowband PPDR provided in section 2-1.3 of ITU Rec. M.2015 [8] show the band starting at 380.0125 MHz (and also offset by 12.5 kHz for the inner intra-band boundaries), and not at exactly 380 MHz. The M.2015 also shows the band ending at 399.9875 MHz (and not 399.9 MHz).

3.1.2 In section 2-1.4 of the same M.2015, the harmonized frequency arrangements within the frequency range 380 - 470 MHz in accordance with the ATU harmonization measures for narrowband and/or wideband PPDR are shown to start at 380 MHz, offer 5 MHz and 4.99 MHz wide subdivision and end at 399.99 MHz rather than 399.9 MHz.

3.1.3 In contrast, the ECC T/R 25-08 [9] provides a band plan with channels starting exactly at 380 MHz, matching the outer borders of the allocation. The end of the band is also stated as 399.99 MHz (not 399.9 MHz).

3.1.4 Comparing the data presented in 3.1.1-3.1.3 against the South African allocation shown in Appendix A and the "Channelling Plan" provided in chapter 4 of this RFSAP advises of a slight mismatch. In South Africa, the national allocation takes priority.

3.2 All installations must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.

3.3 The equipment used shall be certified under South African law and regulations.

3.4 The allocation of this frequency band and the information in this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) are subject to review.

3.4.1 Frequency bands assigned for digital PPDR include bands 380.0 - 389.9 MHz paired with 390.0 - 399.9 MHz.

3.4.2 Likely use of this band will be for public safety by the South African Police Service (SAPS), Department of Defence and the Army.

3.5 TETRA, its data-driven enhancement standard TEDS [10] and the evolving LTE380 are applicable for the provision of the system and service. The typical technical and operational characteristics identified as appropriate by the ITU are described in the documents listed in section 3.6 below.

3.5.1 TETRA is applicable for the provision of PPDR services in this band. TETRA is a digital radio standard for critical communications. The development of the standards

---

[8] Recommendation ITU-R M.2015-2 (01/2018): Frequency arrangements for public protection and disaster relief radiocommunication systems in accordance with Resolution 646 (Rev.WRC-15) https://www.itu.int/dms_pubrec/itu-r/rec/m/R-REC-M.2015-2-201801-I!!PDF-E.pdf

[9] ECC Recommendation T/R 25-08 Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz. Approved 15 January 1990. Amended 28 September 2018. Available online at https://docdb.cept.org/download/2544 .

[10] ETSI TR 102 491 V1.2.1 (2006-05): Technical Report: Electromagnetic compatibility and Radio spectrum Matters (ERM); TETRA Enhanced Data Service (TEDS); System reference document. Available online at https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_tr/102400_102499/102491/01.02.01_60/tr_102491v010201p.pdf

for the TETRA system has been carried out by the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI).

Some services that TETRA offers:

- Wide area fast call set-up "all informed net" group calls;
- Direct Mode Operation (DMO)[11] allowing "back-to-back" communications between radio terminals independent of the network;
- High level voice encryption to meet the security needs of public safety organisations;
- An Emergency Call facility that gets through even if the system is busy; and
- Full duplex voice for PABX and PSTN telephony communications.

3.5.2 **TEDS** is a new TETRA High Speed Data (HSD) service using different RF channel bandwidths and data rates for flexible use of Digital PMR frequency bands. TEDS is fully compatible with TETRA Release 1 and allows for ease of migration. It has been optimised for efficient use of PMR frequency bands and designed for all TETRA market segment applications. The RF channel bandwidths supported in TEDS are 25 kHz, 50 kHz, 100 kHz, and 150 kHz.

Some added services that TEDS offers[12]:

- "With adaptive selection of modulation schemes, RF channel bandwidths and coding according to propagation conditions, user bit rates in the region of 10 to 500 kbits/s can be expected.
- For ease of evolution and migration from TETRA Release 1 reuse of the TETRA protocol stack and TDMA structure have been maximised.
- TEDS also allows up to 8 multimedia applications and QoS negotiation for real-time class data applications, such as voice and video and telemetry, with the QoS attributes negotiated being; throughput, delay, priority, and reliability.
- Support for sectored cells is also provided enabling the use of existing TETRA Release 1 Base Sites for TEDS without the need for additional sites.
- Even though TEDS is capable of providing High Speed Data in 150 kHz RF channels, the current limitation caused by insufficient RF spectrum to support the growth of TETRA will probably limit early deployments to 50 kHz RF channel assignments only."

It may be noted that, as per ECC Report 99 [13], "Usage of TEDS in 380 - 385/390 - 395 MHz band is possible within Europe, with a guard band at the edges to protect adjacent AGA services. This guard band depends on the TEDS bandwidth and goes up to 300 kHz for TEDS-150 kHz". Additional spectrum

[11] Direct Mode Operation (DMO) - TCCA

[12] TETRA Release 2 - TCCA - https://tcca.info/tetra/for-tetra-specialist/tetra-release-2/

[13] ECC Report 99 "TETRA Enhanced Data Services (TEDS): Compatibility Studies with Existing PMR/PAMR and Air Ground Air (Aga) Systems in the 400 MHz Band", Bern, February 2007, Budapest, September 2007. Available online at https://docdb.cept.org/download/432

requirements for Europe may be explored from ETSI TR 102 628 [14]. More in-depth information is also available from ETSI standards, e.g., EN 302 561 [15], TR 102 580 [16].

3.5.3 **LTE380**: There are some LTE 380 trials and consultations ongoing in other parts of the world in the 380 – 400 MHz band, including in Colombia and Uganda[17]. The process is, however, still early with respect to standards. They are likely to happen within the next several years.

3.6 Further details of relevant bands and applicable technologies are specified in the following ITU and CEPT/ECC documents:

- Report ITU-R M.2377-1 (11/2017): Radiocommunication objectives and requirements for Public Protection and Disaster Relief [18]
- Report ITU-R M.2014-3 (11/2016): Digital land mobile systems for dispatch traffic [19];
- Report ITU-R M.2415-0 (11/2017): Spectrum needs for Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) [20];
- Recommendation ITU-R M.2015-2 (01/2018): Frequency arrangements for public protection and disaster relief radiocommunication systems in accordance with Resolution 646 (Rev.WRC-15) [21];
- Report ITU-R M.2291-2 (12/2021): The use of International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) for broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) applications [22].

---

[14] ETSI TR 102 628 v1.2.1 (2014-09) Electromagnetic compatibility and Radio spectrum Matters (ERM); System Reference document (SRdoc); Land Mobile Service; Additional spectrum requirements for future Public Safety and Security (PSS) wireless communication systems in the UHF frequency range.

[15] ETSI EN 302 561 V2.1.1 (2016-03) Land Mobile Service; Radio equipment using constant or non-constant envelope modulation operating in a channel bandwidth of 25 kHz, 50 kHz, 100 kHz or 150 kHz; Harmonised Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.2 of the Directive 2014/53/EU.

[16] ETSI TR 102 580 V1.1.1 (2007-10) Technical Report Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA); Release 2; Designer's Guide; TETRA High-Speed Data (HSD); TETRA Enhanced Data Service (TEDS). Available online at https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_tr/102500_102599/102580/01.01.01_60/tr_102580v010101p.pdf .

[17] https://450alliance.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/10/450Alliance-annual-device-update-P-rev-Final.pdf

[18] ITU-R Report M.2377-1 (11/2017): Radiocommunication objectives and requirements for Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR). Available online at https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2377 .

[19] ITU-R Report M.2014-3 (11/2016): Digital land mobile systems for dispatch traffic. Available online at https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2014 .

[20] ITU-R M.2415-0 (11/2017): Spectrum needs for Public Protection and Disaster Relief. Available online at https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2415/en .

[21] ITU-R Recommendation M.2015-2 (01/2018): Frequency arrangements for public protection and disaster relief radiocommunication systems in accordance with Resolution 646 (Rev.WRC-15). Available online at https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.2015/en .

[22] Report ITU-R M.2291-2 (12/2021): The use of International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) for broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) applications. Available online at https://www.itu.int/dms_pub/itu-r/opb/rep/R-REP-M.2291-2-2021-PDF-E.pdf

- Recommendation ITU-R M.2009-2 (01/2019): Radio interface standards for use by public protection and disaster relief operations in accordance with Resolution 646 (Rev.WRC-15) [23];
- Recommendation ITU-R M.1808-1 (11/2019): Technical and operational characteristics of conventional and trunked land mobile systems operating in the mobile service allocations below 869 MHz to be used in sharing studies in bands below 960 MHz [24].
- ECC Decision (08)05 "The harmonisation of frequency bands for the implementation of digital Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) narrow band and wide band radio applications in bands within the 380-470 MHz range", Approved 27 June 2008, Amended 8 March 2019 [25] ;
- ECC Recommendation T/R 25-08 "Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7 - 470 MHz", Approved 15 January 1990, Amended 28 September 2018 [9].
- ECC Report 276 "Thresholds for the coordination of CDMA and LTE broadband systems in the 400 MHz band", 27 April 2018[26].
- ECC Report 99: "TETRA Enhanced Data Services (TEDS): Impact on existing PMR/PAMR and Air Ground Air (AGA) systems in the 400 MHz band" [13].

Additional useful references on the subject may be found in Annex 1 of ITU-R Report M.2377-1 [18], and Annex 2 of ECC/DEC/ (08)/05 [27]. In particular, Annex 2 of ECC/DEC/ (08)05 provides a list of digital land mobile systems and related sharing and compatibility reports, and so does the Annex of ECC/DEC (04)06[28]. ECC Decision (16)02 [29] offers an extensive set of references for considering implementation of Broadband PPDR (BB-PPDR).

4. Channelling Plan

4.1 The frequency band 380-400 MHz provides a total bandwidth of close to 2 × 10 MHz or 20 MHz for the Digital PPDR/PMR services.

---

[23] Recommendation ITU-R M.2009-2 (01/2019): Radio interface standards for use by public protection and disaster relief operations in accordance with Resolution 646 (Rev.WRC-15). https://www.itu.int/dms_pubrec/itu-r/rec/m/R-REC-M.2009-2-201901-I!!PDF-E.pdf

[24] Recommendation ITU-R M.1808-1 (11/2019): Technical and operational characteristics of conventional and trunked land mobile systems operating in the mobile service allocations below 869 MHz to be used in sharing studies in bands below 960 MHz. Available online at https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1808

[25] ECC Decision (08)05: "The harmonisation of frequency bands for the implementation of digital Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) radio applications in bands within the 380-470 MHz range", Approved 27 June 2008, Amended 8 March 2019, https://docdb.cept.org/document/416

[26] ECC Report 276 Thresholds for the coordination of CDMA and LTE broadband systems in the 400 MHz band, 27 April 2018. Available online at https://docdb.cept.org/download/1324

[27] The harmonisation of frequency bands for the implementation of digital Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) narrow band and wide band radio applications in bands within the 380 – 470 MHz range https://docdb.cept.org/download/1574

[28] The availability of frequency bands for the introduction of Wide Band Digital Land Mobile PMR/PAMR in the 400 MHz and 800/900 MHz bands https://docdb.cept.org/download/1690

[29] ECC Decision (16)02 Harmonised technical conditions and frequency bands for the implementation of Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (BB-PPDR) systems. Approved 17 June 2016. Amended 8 March 2019. Available online at https://docdb.cept.org/download/1486

4.2 The band plan would therefore be 380 – 389.9 MHz band paired with 390 – 399.9 MHz for digital PPDR services

4.2.1 Channel arrangements for the 380 – 400 MHz band are shown in Figure 1.

a) Old channel arrangement:

b) New channel arrangement:

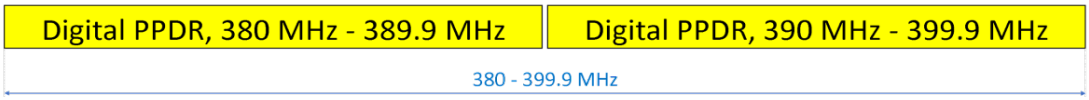


Figure 1: Channel arrangements for 380 - 400 MHz: a) old and b) new channel arrangements.

5. Requirements for usage of radio frequency spectrum

5.1 This chapter covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary in order to make the best use of the available frequencies.

5.2 The use of the band is limited to Digital PPDR (including Digital PMR) services.

5.3 Only systems using digital technologies that promote spectral efficiency will be issued with an assignment. Capacity enhancing digital techniques are being rapidly developed, and such techniques that promote efficient use of spectrum, without reducing the quality of service are encouraged.

5.4 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.5 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP) and an extract of NRFP is shown in Appendix A.

5.6 Maximum radiated power:

5.6.1 Base Station transmissions should not exceed 46 dBm per channel and a maximum of 55 dBm total ERP per base station.

5.6.2 Mobile Station transmissions should not exceed 33 dBm EIRP.

5.6.3 On a case-to-case basis, higher EIRP may be permitted if acceptable technical justification is provided.

5.6.4 Where appropriate, subscriber terminal stations should comply with the technical specification outlined under EN 300 394-1 [30] and TS 100 392-2 [31].

5.7 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if major interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

---

[30] ETSI EN 300 394-1 V3.3.1 (2015-04) Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA); Conformance testing specification; Part 1: Radio (available online at https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_en/300300_300399/30039401/03.03.01_60/en_30039401v030301p.pdf) or later.

[31] ETSI TS 100 392-2 V3.9.1 (2019-01) Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA); Voice plus Data (V+D); Part 2: Air Interface (AI) (available online at https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_ts/100300_100399/10039202/03.09.01_60/ts_10039202v030901p.pdf) or later.

6. Implementation

6.1 The implementation of the Migration of the Government Services from the 406 - 410/416 - 420 MHz and 413 - 416/423 - 426 MHz bands into the 380 - 400 MHz band began in 2010.

6.2 This RFSAP shall be effective on the date of publication of this RFSAP.

6.3 No new assignment for Digital PPDR, PAMR or PMR in the band 380 – 400 MHz shall be approved unless they comply with this RFSAP.

7. Co-ordination Requirements

7.1 Use of these frequency bands shall require coordination with the neighbouring countries within the coordination zones of 50 kilometres [32] (specific to coordination between TETRA systems) from the neighbouring country. The coordination distance is continuously being reviewed and may be updated from time to time.

7.1.1 The following field strength thresholds have to be assured. Based on studies (ECC-Rep 97 [32]), a level of -114.7 dBm (=14.3 dBµV/m/25 kHz) is proposed as the threshold above which coordination between TETRA systems is required. The value is measured in a 25 kHz bandwidth and refers to a measuring height of 3 metres for duplex bands.

7.1.2 Operator-to-operator coordination may be necessary to avoid interference.

7.2 General indicative coordination thresholds for analogue or digital land mobile systems:

7.2.1 The aim of coordination thresholds is to avoid harmful interference between stations located in neighbouring countries. In order to achieve this, indicative coordination thresholds are established which should not be exceeded without coordination between neighbouring countries.

7.2.2 Indicative coordination threshold for land mobile systems (co-channel, 50% locations, 10% time [33], 10 m receiving antenna height, within a reference bandwidth of 25 kHz, at the borderline) is 18 dB (µV/m) for frequencies between 380 and 400 MHz;

7.2.3 For all other spectral power distributions, indicative coordination threshold levels should be applied within every 25 kHz bandwidth within the channel spacing.

7.3 For coordination thresholds for other systems and combinations of the systems, the following references may be considered:

7.3.1 ECC Report 97 provides coordination thresholds for several combinations of narrowband FM, TETRA, CDMA-PAMR, and Flash OFDM;

7.3.2 Annex 2 of ECC/DEC/ (08)/05 provides a list of related sharing and compatibility reports.

7.3.3 In case of coordination between LTE systems, Annex 5 of T/R 25-08 [9] may be considered, unless newer LTE 380 studies become available.

---

[32] ECC Report 097 "Cross Border Interference for Land Mobile Technologies", Bern, February 2007 https://docdb.cept.org/download/428

[33] In certain situations, the 1% time curves should be used for digital systems, e.g. to better protect analogue systems.

7.3.4 As per ECC Report 276 [34], "For historical reasons the Recommendation T/R 25-08 defines the trigger value at 10 m height. However, typically 3 m heights are considered for coordination of land mobile systems since the coverage is usually assumed for mobile user equipment. Furthermore, the definition of the trigger value at 3 m height is also easy applicable for drive tests (antenna at a vehicle's roof). Recalculation of the derived thresholds from 3 m to 10 m height increases the coordination threshold by 15.6 dB".

7.3.4.1. For systems using a channel spacing greater than 25 kHz, the following bandwidth conversion formula can be used provided that the spectral power distribution within this channel spacing is uniform within the channel. BC = 10 x log10 (channel spacing / 25 kHz), dB

7.3.4.2. The value (BC) resulting from the formula should be added to the indicative coordination threshold as listed above.

To obtain the power level in wideband channel bandwidth, the BC resulting from the formula above should be added to the calculated threshold level (at 3 m or 10 m height) as calculated in 25 kHz bandwidth for the applicable preferential channel distance.

7.4 In the event of any interference, the Authority will require affected parties to carry out coordination. In the event that the interference continues to be unresolved after 24 hours, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution. The Authority will decide the necessary modifications and schedule of modifications to resolve the dispute. The Authority will be guided by the interference resolution process as shown in Appendix B.

7.5 Assignment holders shall take full advantage of interference mitigation techniques such as antenna discrimination, tilt, polarisation, frequency discrimination, shielding/blocking (introduce diffraction loss), site selection, and/or power control to facilitate the coordination of systems.

8. Assignment

8.1 Standard Approach

The assignment of frequency will take place according to the Standard Application Procedures in the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015.

9. Amendments

9.1 In the previous 2018 Radio Frequency Assignment Plan for this band[35] the Authority decided that existing licences for the use of the band will be revoked by 31st of March 2019 if they are NOT for PPDR/PMR.

9.2 Upon publication of this RFSAP, the provisions of Regulation 6 of the Radio Frequency Migration Regulations 2013 shall be implemented.

---

[34] ECC Report 276 Thresholds for the coordination of CDMA and LTE broadband systems in the 400 MHz band, 27 April 2018. Available online at https://docdb.cept.org/download/1324 .

[35] ICASA. 2018. Radio Frequency Assignment Plan 2018. Government Gazette No 41512, 23 March 2018

10. Frequency Migration

10.1 Specific Procedure

This band will be assigned as a contiguous block for public protection and disaster relief (PPDR) as well as public safety with users including SAPS, SANDF, the ambulance service, metro police and Fire-fighting services. All other users will migrate out of this band.

The band is exclusively reserved for digital public safety PPDR, PAMR and PMR and all relevant non-digital usage/users (e.g., SAPS etc.) will migrate into this band.

Appendix A National Radio Frequency Plan

Table 1 shows an extract from the National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
335.4-387 MHz FIXED MOBILE 5.254	335.4-387 MHz FIXED NF6 MOBILE NF7 Mobile satellite 5.254	PTP/PTMP FWA (336 – 346 MHz) FWA (356 – 366 MHz) Government Services (366-380 MHz) Digital Trunking (Emergency) (380 – 387 MHz) (PPDR[36]) PMR and/or PAMR (335.4-336 MHz) Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV) (366.0 - 380.0 MHz)	Paired with 356 – 366 MHz Paired with 336 – 346 MHz Paired with 390 – 397 MHz (Coordination is required with PTP/PTMP in the implement of UAV) Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan GG 41512 Notice 148 of 2018
387-390 MHz FIXED MOBILE Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.254 5.255	387-390 MHz FIXED MOBILE NF7 Mobile-satellite (space-to-Earth) 5.208A 5.208B 5.254 5.255	Digital Trunking (387 – 390 MHz) (Govt.) PMR and/or PAMR	Paired with 397 – 399.9 MHz (To be used mainly for digital systems.) Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan GG 41512 Notice 148 of 2018 Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (GG No. 42337 Notice 36 of 2019)
390-399.9 MHz	390-399.9 MHz		

[36] http://www.crasa.org/common_up/crasa-setup/12-03-2015_GUIDELINES%20ON%20FREQUENCIES%20FOR%20PPDR%202014.pdf

FIXED MOBILE 5.254	FIXED MOBILE NF7 Mobile-satellite 5.254	Digital Trunking Emergency) (390 – 397 MHz) (PPDR) Government Services Digital Trunking (397 – 399.9 MHz) (Govt.) PMR and/or PAMR	Paired with 380 – 387 MHz Paired with 387 – 390 MHz In accordance with Resolution 646 and Recommendation ITU-R M.2015-2 latest version. Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan GG 41512 Notice 148 of 2018 Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (GG No. 42337 Notice 36 of 2019)

Table 1: National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa for 335.4 – 399.9 MHz band[37]

[37] National Radio Frequency Plan 2021, (NRFP-21) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz, Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Appendix B Interference Resolution Process

Technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements for 4 geographical sub-regions are defined by the African Union, which includes the Southern African sub-region of 10 countries. Cross-Border Frequency Coordination and interference resolution should follow the Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A)[38],[39] or any appropriate methods applicable.

When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and the code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration affected. All of the following characteristics should be included:

a) carrier frequency (MHz)
b) name of transmitter station
c) country of location of transmitter station
d) geographical coordinates (latitude, longitude)
e) effective antenna height (m)
f) antenna polarisation
g) antenna azimuth (degrees)
h) antenna gain (dBi)
i) effective radiated power (dBW)
j) expected coverage zone or radius (km)
k) date of entry into service (month, year).
l) code group number used
m) antenna tilt (degrees)

The Administration affected will evaluate the request for coordination and will, within thirty (30) days, notify the Administration requesting coordination the result of the evaluation. If, in the course of the coordination procedure, the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within (30) days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. Where the Administration fails to respond within thirty (30) days following communication of the reminder will be deemed to have given its consent, and the code coordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

The above-mentioned periods are subject to extension by common consent.

---

[38] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A), Agreement. HIPSSA - Harmonization of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa, ITU, 2013, 54pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

[39] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination Agreement Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A): On the coordination of frequencies between 29.7 MHz and 43.5 GHz For the fixed service and the land mobile service. Adopted on (01.01.2022). DRAFT, 25pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/PRIDA/PublishingImages/Pages/default/HCM4A_2022_%20Main%20text_and%20annex%2012%20_EN_v.0.pdf

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

NO. 3765 **4 August 2023**

HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING THE FINAL RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT PLANS FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 406.1 MHz TO 410 MHz IN TERMS OF REGULATION 3 OF THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATIONS, 2015

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the Final **Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 406.1 MHz to 410 MHz** in terms of regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations, 2015, read with the Radio Frequency Migration Regulation 2013, the 2013 and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plans.

YOLISA KEDAMA
ACTING CHAIRPERSON

Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band
406.1 MHz to 410 MHz

Table of Contents

1 Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise:

"Act"	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005) as amended
"Administration"	means any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002).
"BTX"	means Base Transceiver
"DMR"	means Digital Mobile Radio
"EIRP"	means Effective Isotropic Radiated Power
"ERP"	means Effective/equivalent radiated power
"ITU"	means the International Telecommunication Union
"ITU-R"	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
"MTX"	means Mobile Transceiver
"NRFP"	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2013 for South Africa
"PPDR"	means Public Protection and Disaster Relief
"P(A)MR"	means Public Mobile Radio/Private Access Mobile Radio
"RFSAP"	means Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
"SKA"	means the Square Kilometre Array (Radio Astronomy sites)
"WRC-19"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference 2019 held in Sharm el-Sheikh

2 Purpose

2.1 A Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) provides information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP). This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination, and details on the required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment.

2.2 This Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan states the requirements for the utilisation of the frequency band 406.1 - 410 MHz as for Digital Mobile Radio (DMR) and Fixed Services along with the Radio Astronomy Service.

2.3 This follows the feasibility study concerning the 406.1 - 410 MHz band[1], as mandated by the 2013[2] and 2019[3] Radio Frequency migration plans, in which the Authority has concluded that the most efficient use of this band is for these aforementioned (in 2.2) services.

2.4 This Authority's decision is consistent with both the ITU and South African allocations for the 406.1 - 410 MHz band, as shown in Appendix 1.

2.5 Therefore, the intention of this RFSAP is to assign this band for DMR, Fixed and Radio Astronomy Services.

2.5.1 This will result in all other users being migrated, making this a *dedicated band for public safety*

2.5.2 *Therefore, all other uses (e.g., all existing analogue PMR or analogue mobile) will migrate out of the band.*

2.6 Radio Astronomy is a unique radio service which operates in this band. Therefore, exclusion/quiet zones will need to be maintained around the Radio Astronomy sites, e.g., the Square Kilometre Array in South Africa.

3 General

3.1 Technical characteristics of the equipment used for Digital Mobile Radio, Radio Astronomy and Fixed systems shall conform to all applicable South African standards, international standards, International Telecommunications Union (ITU) and its radio regulations as agreed and adopted by South Africa

3.2 All installations must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.

3.3 The equipment used shall be certified under South African law and regulations.

3.4 The allocation of this frequency band and the information in this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) are subject to review.

3.4.1 Likely use of this band apart from Radio Astronomy within its exclusion/quiet zones will be for Digital Private (Professional) Mobile Radio and Public Access Mobile Radio (PMR) in the Mobile Services. In addition, Fixed Links in the Fixed Services would operate in the band. Likely users would include Government use for public safety, including both Fixed and Mobile usage. All Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) use in this band is encouraged to move to 380 - 400 MHz.

3.5 The Frequency range assigned for Radio Astronomy within its exclusion/quiet zones will span 406.1 – 410 MHz. The frequency range assigned for both Fixed and Mobile Services will span 406.1 – 410 MHz, therefore requiring coordination amongst these two services for everyone outside the radio astronomy exclusion areas.

3.5.1 Further details of applicable technologies are specified in the following documents:

---

[1] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

[2] Frequency Migration regulation and Radio Frequency Migration Plan March 2013, Government Gazette No 36334, 3 April 2013

[3] ICASA. 2019. Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019. Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019

- Report ITU-R M.2017 (1998) Spectrum efficient digital land mobile systems for dispatch traffic. https://fdocuments.net/download/m2014-spectrum-efficient-digital-land-mobile-viewspectrum-efficient-digital .
- Report ITU-R M.2014-3 (11/2016): Digital land mobile systems for dispatch traffic. https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2014.
- Report ITU-R M.2377-1 (11/2017): Radiocommunication objectives and requirements for Public Protection and Disaster Relief. https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2377.
- Report ITU-R M.2415-0 (11/2017): Spectrum needs for Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR). https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2415/en.
- Recommendation ITU-R M.2015-2 (01/2018): Frequency arrangements for public protection and disaster relief radiocommunication systems in accordance with Resolution 646 (Rev.WRC-15). https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.2015/en .
- Recommendation ITU-R M.2009-2 (01/2019): Radio interface standards for use by public protection and disaster relief operations in accordance with Resolution 646 (Rev.WRC-15). https://www.itu.int/dms_pubrec/itu-r/rec/m/R-REC-M.2009-2-201901-I!!PDF-E.pdf .
- Recommendation ITU-R M.1808-1 (11/2019): Technical and operational characteristics of conventional and trunked land mobile systems operating in the mobile service allocations below 869 MHz to be used in sharing studies in bands below 960 MHz. https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1808 .
- ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680 .
- ECC Decision (08)05 "The harmonisation of frequency bands for the implementation of digital Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) narrow band and wide band radio applications in bands within the 380-470 MHz range", Approved 27 June 2008, Amended 8 March 2019. https://docdb.cept.org/document/416 .
- T/R 25-08 Recommendation T/R of 30 May 2008 on Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz. Latest amended on 28 September 2018. 28 September 2018. https://docdb.cept.org/document/909 .
- ECC Report 099 TETRA Enhanced Data Services (TEDS): Impact on existing PMR/PAMR and Air Ground Air (AGA) systems in the 400 MHz band. 20 September 2007. https://docdb.cept.org/document/207 .
- ECC Report 097 Cross Border Interference for Land Mobile Technologies. 20 February 2007. https://docdb.cept.org/document/205 .
- ECC Report 102 Public protection and disaster relief spectrum requirements. 6 February 2007. https://docdb.cept.org/document/210 .
- ERC Report 075 Narrowband return path two-way paging compatibility studies in the 406.1 - 410 MHz, 440 - 470 MHz and 862 - 871 MHz bands. 1 May 1999. https://docdb.cept.org/document/643 .

Additional useful references on the subject may be found in Annex 1 of ITU-R Report M.2377-1[4], and Annex 2 of ECC/DEC/ (08)/05[5]. In particular, Section A1.3 of Rep. ITU-R BT.2377-1 offers a list of public safety recommendations and reports, and Annex 2 of ECC/DEC/ (08)05 provides a list of digital land mobile systems and related sharing and compatibility reports.

4 Channelling Plan

4.1 The frequency band 406.1 MHz - 410 MHz will be assigned in a coordinated fashion for Fixed and Digital Mobile Services outside the Radio Astronomy exclusion zones.

4.2 Fixed Services will operate within the 406.1 – 410 MHz band paired with the 416.1 – 420 MHz. Mobile Transmit (MTx) Services operating in the 406.1 – 410 MHz band will be paired with Base Transmit (BTx) in 416.1 – 420 MHz, too.

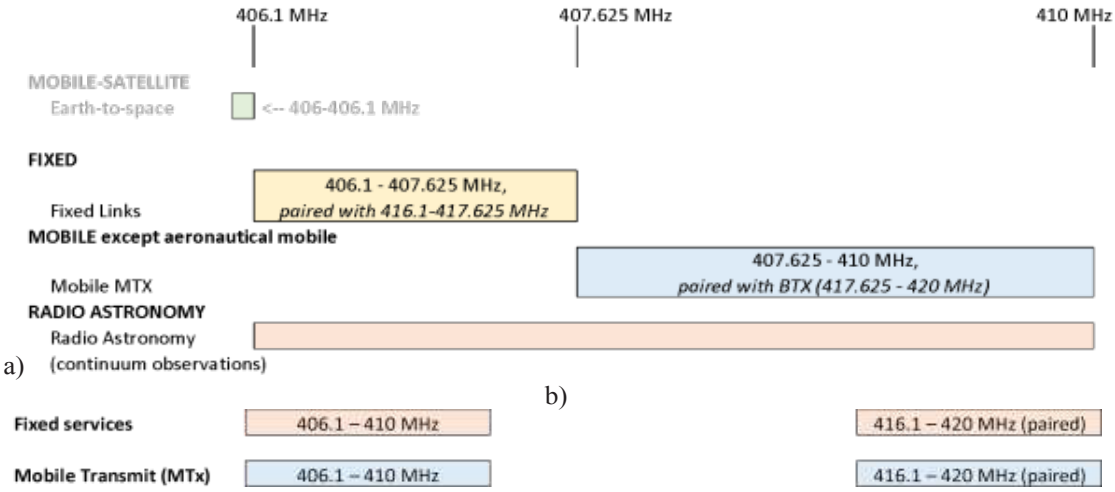


Figure 1: a) Current channel arrangements for 406.1 - 410 MHz, also highlighting the adjacent Earth-to-space allocation (406 – 406.1 MHz); and b) Proposed band pairing.

5 Requirements for usage of radio frequency spectrum

5.1 This chapter covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary in order to make the best use of the available frequencies.

5.2 The use of the band is limited to Fixed, Mobile and Radio Astronomy services.

5.3 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

---

[4] Report ITU-R M.2377-1 (11/2017): Radiocommunication objectives and requirements for Public Protection and Disaster Relief. https://www.itu.int/pub/R-REP-M.2377

[5] The harmonisation of frequency bands for the implementation of digital Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) narrow band and wide band radio applications in bands within the 380 – 470 MHz range https://docdb.cept.org/download/1574

5.4 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP), and an extract of NRFP is shown in Appendix A.

5.5 The Technical Requirements for *land mobile systems* with channel bandwidth of 6.25 kHz, 12.5 kHz and 25 kHz, 50 kHz, 100 kHz, 150 kHz, and 200 kHz, as well as the technical requirements for land mobile systems operating with channel bandwidth between 6.25 kHz and 200 kHz are provided in ECC/DEC/ (19)02 [6]. A summary follows:

5.5.1 Adjacent and Alternate Channel Power

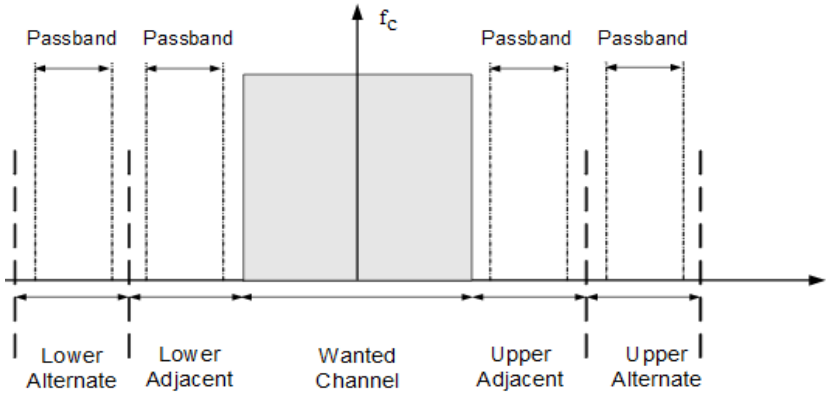


Figure 2: Wanted channel, adjacent and alternate adjacent channels

Within the wanted channel, the effective radiated power used shall comply with the authorisation conditions. Normal effective radiated power (ERP) emissions within the wanted *channel* do normally not exceed 40 dBm for user equipment and 53 dBm for base station equipment.

5.5.2 Adjacent and Alternate Adjacent Channel Power

The power in the lower and upper adjacent channels, as well as in the lower and upper alternate adjacent channels, shall not exceed a value of 60 dBc below the transmitter output power without the need to be below -36 dBm ERP.

These limits are valid for all base stations, user equipment and repeaters.

5.5.3 Unwanted Emissions in The Spurious Domain

The unwanted emissions within the spurious domain during operation shall not exceed -36 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -30 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz. In standby mode, the unwanted emissions shall not exceed -57 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -47 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz.

5.5.4 Intermodulation Attenuation

This requirement applies only to transmitters to be used in base stations or repeaters.

---

[6] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. https://docdb.cept.org/download/1455 .

Intermodulation attenuation is a measure of the capability of a transmitter to inhibit the generation of signals in its non-linear elements caused by the presence of the transmitter power and an interfering signal entering the transmitter via its antenna.

In general, the intermodulation attenuation ratio shall be at least 40 dB for any intermodulation component.

Note that ICASA may require a more stringent intermodulation attenuation requirement for base station equipment to be used in special service conditions, e.g., at sites where more than one transmitter will be in service, this is recommended to be at least 70 dB for any intermodulation component.

5.5.5 Adjacent Channel Transient Power

Transient power is the power falling into adjacent spectrum due to switching the transmitter on and off. The transient power in the adjacent channels (e.g., caused by push-to-talk functionality) shall not exceed -60 dBc in the adjacent channels, or -50 dBc for equipment, without the need to be below -36 dBm.

5.5.6 Receiver Requirements

5.5.6.1 Adjacent channel selectivity

The adjacent channel selectivity is the measure of the capability of the receiver of the land mobile system to receive a wanted modulated signal at the nominal operating frequency without exceeding a given degradation due to the presence of another land mobile system in assumed 25 kHz channels adjacent to the channel bandwidth for which the equipment is intended. E.g., the centre of an adjacent channel relative to the centre of the nominal channel is at +/- 62.5 kHz for a land mobile system operating with a 100 kHz channel bandwidth.

Channel bandwidth	Unwanted signal levels
Up to 200 kHz	-37 dBm

Table 1: **Adjacent channel selectivity**

5.5.6.2 Receiver blocking

Blocking is the measure of the capability of the receiver to receive a wanted modulated signal without exceeding a given degradation due to the presence of an unwanted input signal at any frequencies outside of the wanted channel and the lower and upper adjacent and alternate adjacent channels (see "Adjacent channel selectivity" above).

The blocking level shall not be less than -27 dBm.

5.6 Maximum radiated power:

5.6.1 Base Station transmissions should not exceed total ERP of 53 dBm per BS[7].

User equipment transmissions should not exceed total ERP of 40 dBm.

[7] ECC Decision (19)02, Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz Approved 8 March 2019

CONTINUES ON PAGE 130 OF BOOK 2

Printed by and obtainable from the Government Printer, Bosman Street, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001
Contact Centre Tel: 012-748 6200. eMail: info.egazette@gpw.gov.za
Publications: Tel: (012) 748 6053, 748 6061, 748 6065

Government Gazette
Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 698 4 August Augustus 2023 No. 49079

PART 2 OF 3

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5845

5.6.2 On a case-by-case basis, higher EIRP may be permitted if acceptable technical justification is provided.

5.6.3 Where appropriate subscriber terminal station should comply with the technical specification outlined under EN 300 394-1 [8] (for TETRA), or EN 300 392-2 [9] / TS 100 392-2 [10] (for TEDS), whichever is appropriate.

5.7 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if major interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

6 Implementation

6.1 This RFSAP shall be effective on the date of publication.

6.2 No new assignment in the band 406.1 – 410 MHz shall be approved unless they comply with this RFSAP.

6.3 The Authority is fully mindful of these constraints as part of the implementation of this RFSAP.

6.3.1 The ITU Radio Regulations' 5.265 Footnote on protecting the adjacent 406 - 406.1 MHz band is shown in Table 1. This will be achieved via prior coordination in the assignment process.

Frequency Band (MHz)	WRC	Res. / Rec.	Footnote	Resolution/ Footnote
406.1-410 MHz	15	205	5.265	17. Protection of the systems operating in the mobile satellite service in the frequency band 406-406.1 MHz

Table 2: Current constraints in this band[11]

6.3.2 Footnote 5.149 of the Radio Regulations urges administrations to take all practicable steps to protect the radio astronomy service from harmful interference. This will be implemented via quiet/exclusion zones for the SKA Astronomy Installations.

6.3.3 The WRC 15 Resolution 205 footnote 5.265 requires protection of the systems operating in the mobile satellite service needed in the frequency band.

---

[8] ETSI EN 300 394-1 V3.3.1 (2015-04) Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA); Conformance testing specification; Part 1: Radio (available online at https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_en/300300_300399/30039401/03.03.01_60/en_30039401v030301p.pdf) or later.

[9] ETSI EN 300 392-2 V3.8.1 (2016-08) Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA); Voice plus Data (V+D); Part 2: Air Interface (AI). (Latest version applies).

[10] ETSI TS 100 392-2 V3.9.1 (2019-01) Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA); Voice plus Data (V+D); Part 2: Air Interface (AI) (available online at https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_ts/100300_100399/10039202/03.09.01_60/ts_10039202v030901p.pdf) or later.

[11] ICASA. 2019. Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019

7 Co-ordination Requirements

7.1 Generic indicative coordination threshold for analogue or digital land mobile systems is as follows, based on T/R 25-08 [12].

The aim of a coordination threshold is to avoid harmful interference between stations located in neighbouring countries. In order to achieve this, an indicative coordination threshold is established, which should not be exceeded without coordination between neighbouring countries.

The indicative coordination threshold for land mobile systems (co-channel, 50% locations, 10% time[13], 10 m receiving antenna height, within a reference bandwidth of 25 kHz, at the border-line) is: 20 dB(µV/m).

For systems using a channel spacing greater than 25 kHz, the following bandwidth conversion formula can be used provided that the spectral power distribution within this channel spacing is uniform within the channel:

$$BC = 10 \times \log_{10} (\text{channel spacing} / 25 \text{ kHz}), \text{dB}$$

The value (BC) resulting from the formula should be added to the indicative coordination threshold as listed above.

For all other spectral power distributions, indicative coordination threshold levels should be applied within every 25 kHz bandwidth within the channel spacing.

7.2 Some information on levels of interference and required separation distances from and to several traditional technologies (narrowband FM, TETRA, CDMA-PAMR, and Flash OFDM) may be found in ECC Report 097 [14].

7.2.1 Use of the frequency bands for TETRA [15] shall require coordination with the neighbouring countries within the coordination zones of 50 kilometres from the neighbouring country. The coordination distance is continuously being reviewed and may be updated from time to time.

7.2.1.1 The following field strength thresholds have to be assured. Based on studies (ECC Report 97), the results and observations from these, a single level of -114.7 dBm (= 14.3 dBµV/m /25 kHz) is proposed as the threshold above

[12] Recommendation T/R 25-08: "Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz", Approved 15 January 1990, Amended 28 September 2018, https://docdb.cept.org/document/909

[13] In certain situations, the 1%-time curves should be used for digital systems, e.g., to better protect analogue systems.

[14] ECC Report 097, Cross Border Interference for Land Mobile Technologies, 20 February 2007. https://docdb.cept.org/document/205 .

[15] Terrestrial Trunked Radio (TETRA) overview may be found in ETSI documents, such as ETSI EN 300 392, ETSI ETR 300 and TR 102 300, ETSI EN 300 394-1, ETSI EN 300 395, ETSI EN 300 396.

which co-ordination is required. The value is measured in a 25 kHz bandwidth and refers to a measuring height of 3 metres for duplex bands.

7.2.1.2 Operator-to-operator coordination may be necessary to avoid interference

7.2.2 Annex 2 of ECC/DEC/ (08)/05 [16] provides a list of related sharing and compatibility reports.

7.2.2.1 This includes ECC Report 99 [17] , which provides information on the impact of TEDS on existing PMR/PAMR systems in the frequency range 380 - 470 MHz.

7.2.2.2 ERC Report 75 [18] provides protection distances required between a Two-way pager operating in the 406.1 - 410 MHz Band and a Radio Astronomy site.

7.3 As per ECC Report 276 [19], "For historical reasons the Recommendation T/R 25-08 defines the trigger value at 10 m height. However, typically 3 m heights are considered for coordination of land mobile systems since the coverage is usually assumed for mobile user equipment. Furthermore, the definition of the trigger value at 3 m height is also easy applicable for drive tests (antenna at a vehicle's roof). Recalculation of the derived thresholds from 3 m to 10 m height increases the coordination threshold by 15.6 dB".

7.4 Planning characteristics in border areas.

The location, the power, and the antenna heights of all stations in the network should be selected in such a way that their range is confined, as far as possible, to the zone to be covered by the intended service.

Excessive antenna heights and transmitter outputs should be avoided, by using several locations of reduced height wherever possible. In border areas directional antennas should be used in order to minimise the interference potential.

The effective radiated power and the height of the antenna should be as low as possible in relation to the area to be served.

7.5 In the event of any interference, the Authority will require affected parties to carry out coordination. If the interference continues to be unresolved after 24 hours, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution. The Authority will decide the necessary modifications and schedule of modifications to resolve the dispute. The Authority will be guided by the interference resolution process as shown in Appendix B.

---

[16] The harmonisation of frequency bands for the implementation of digital Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR) narrow band and wide band radio applications in bands within the 380 – 470 MHz range. https://docdb.cept.org/download/1574.

[17] ECC Report 99, TETRA Enhanced Data Services (TEDS): Impact on existing PMR/PAMR and Air Ground Air (AGA) systems in the 400 MHz band, 20 September 2007. https://docdb.cept.org/document/207.

[18] Narrowband Return Path Two Way Paging Compatibility Studies in the 406.1 - 410 MHz, 440 - 470 MHz and 862 - 871 MHz Bands, May 1999. https://docdb.cept.org/download/2155.

[19] ECC Report 276 Thresholds for the coordination of CDMA and LTE broadband systems in the 400 MHz band, 27 April 2018. Available online at https://docdb.cept.org/download/1324.

7.6 Assignment holders shall take full advantage of interference mitigation techniques such as antenna discrimination, tilt, polarisation, frequency discrimination, shielding/blocking (introduce diffraction loss), site selection, and/or power control to facilitate the coordination of systems.

8 Assignment

8.1 Standard Approach

The assignment of frequency will take place according to the Standard Application Procedures in the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015.

9 Revocation

9.1 Existing analogue Fixed and Mobile licences for the use of the band will be revoked by the 31st of March 2023 in favour of digital fixed and mobile uses.

10 Frequency Migration

10.1 Specific Procedure

N/A

Appendix A National Radio Frequency Plan

Table 2 shows an extract for the 406.1 - 410 MHz band from the National Frequency Plan for South Africa.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
406.1-410 MHz	406.1-410 MHz		
FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	Fixed Links (406.1 – 407.625 MHz) Mobile MTX (407.625 – 410 MHz) Government uses for public safety PMR and/or PAMR PPDR	Paired with 416.1 – 417.625 MHz Paired with BTX (417.625 – 420 MHz) The use of this band for PPDR to be studied.
RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.265	RADIO ASTRONOMY 5.149 5.265	Radio Astronomy (continuum observations)	See section 5 for coordination with radio astronomy.

Table 3: National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa for 406.1 MHz to 410 MHz band[20]

[20] National Radio Frequency Plan 2021, (NRFP-21) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz, Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Appendix B Interference Resolution Process

Technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements for 4 geographical sub-regions are defined by the African Union, which includes the Southern African sub-region of 10 countries. Cross-Border Frequency Coordination and interference resolution should follow the Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HIPPSA)[21] and (HCM4A)[22] or any appropriate methods applicable.

When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and the code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration affected. All of the following characteristics should be included:

a) carrier frequency (MHz)
b) name of transmitter station
c) country of location of transmitter station
d) geographical coordinates (latitude, longitude)
e) effective antenna height (m)
f) antenna polarisation
g) antenna azimuth (degrees)
h) antenna gain (dBi)
i) effective radiated power (dBW)
j) expected coverage zone or radius (km)
k) date of entry into service (month, year).
l) code group number used
m) antenna tilt (degrees)

The Administration affected shall evaluate the request for coordination and shall within 30 days notify the result of the evaluation to the Administration requesting coordination. If in the course of the coordination procedure the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If in the course of the coordination procedure, an Administration may request additional information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within 30 days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. An Administration not having responded within 30 days following communication of the reminder shall be deemed to have given its consent and the code co-ordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

The periods mentioned above may be extended by common consent.

---

[21] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A), Agreement. HIPSSA - Harmonization of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa, ITU, 2013, 54pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

[22] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination Agreement Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A): On the coordination of frequencies between 29.7 MHz and 43.5 GHz For the fixed service and the land mobile service. Adopted on 01.01.2022. DRAFT, 25pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/PRIDA/PublishingImages/Pages/default/HCM4A_2022_%20Main%20text_and%20annex%2012%20_EN_v.0.pdf

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

NO. 3766 **4 August 2023**

HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT PLANS FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 410 MHz TO 430 MHz IN TERMS REGULATION 3 OF THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATIONS, 2015

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the Final **Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 410 MHz to 430 MHz** in terms of regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations, 2015, read with the Radio Frequency Migration Regulation 2013, the 2013 and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plans.

YOLISA KEDAMA
ACTING CHAIRPERSON

Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band
410 MHz to 430 MHz

Table of Contents

1 Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise:

"3GPP"	means 3rd Generation Partnership Project
"5G"	means Fifth Generation (of mobile networks)
"Act"	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005) as amended
"Administration"	means any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002)
"APT"	means the Asia-Pacific Telecommunity
"BB-"	means Broadband (e.g., BB-PPDR)
"BS"	means Base Station
"BTX"	means Base Transceiver
"CEPT"	means the European Conference of Postal and Telecommunications Administrations
"CDMA"	means Code Division Multiple Access
"Days"	means working days unless otherwise specified
"dBc"	means decibels relative to carrier
"DF"	means Dual Frequency
"DM RS"	means Demodulation Reference Signal
"DSS"	means Dynamic Spectrum Sharing
"ECC"	means the Electronic Communications Committee (ECC) within the European Conference of Postal and Telecommunications Administrations (CEPT)
"ECC/DEC"	means ECC Decision
"ECC/REC"	means ECC Recommendation
"EIRP"	means Effective Isotropic Radiated Power
"ERP"	means Effective Radiated Power

"ETSI"	means the European Telecommunications Standards Institute
"FDD"	means Frequency Division Duplexing
"GSM"	means the Global System for Mobile Communications (GSM), the second generation (2G) of mobile networks
"HCM"	means Harmonised Calculation Method
"HIPSSA"	means the Sub-Saharan Africa Assessment Report on Harmonisation of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa
"ICNIRP"	means the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP)
"IMT"	means the International Mobile Telecommunications
"IoT"	means the Internet of Things
"ITU"	means the International Telecommunication Union;
"ITU-R"	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
"LPWAN"	means Low Power Wide Area Network
"LRTC"	means the Least Restrictive Technical Conditions
"LTE"	means the Long-Term Evolution, which is a standard for wireless communication of high-speed data for mobile phones and data terminals
"M2M"	means Machine to Machine communications
"MTX"	means Mobile Transceiver
"NB-IoT"	means Narrow Band IoT
"NR"	means New Radio
"NRFP"	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 for South Africa
"OOBE"	means Out Of Block Emissions
"PAMR"	means Public Access Mobile Radio
"PCI"	means Physical-Layer Cell Identities
"PN"	means Pseudo-Noise
"RFMP"	means the Radio Frequency Migration Plan
"RFSAP"	means the Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
"PRACH"	means Physical Random Access Channel

"PMR"	means Private (Professional) Mobile Radio
"PN"	means Pseudo-Noise
"PPDR"	means Public Protection and Disaster Relief
"PUCCH"	means Physical Uplink Control Channel
"SF"	means Single Frequency
"TDD"	means Time Division Duplexing
"TEDS"	means TETRA Enhanced Data Service
"TETRA"	means a European standard for a trunked radio system, is a professional mobile radio and two-way transceiver specification; formerly known as Trans-European Trunked Radio
"UE"	means User Equipment (user terminal)
"WRC-12"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2012
"WRC-15"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2015
"WRC-19"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Sharm el-Sheikh in 2019

2 Purpose

2.1 This Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) provides information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP). This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination, and details on required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment.

2.2 The Authority proposed in the RFMP 2013[1] and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plan[2] exclusive allocation for trunking services. However, in light of emerging trends in this band, the Authority proposed in the feasibility study concerning this band[3] to make this band available for other potential emerging applications such as broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (PPDR), Public Access Mobile Radio (PAMR), Public Mobile Radio (PMR) and Internet of Things (IoT), in addition to digital public trunking. The Authority also proposed that all other services migrate out of the band.

2.3 This RFSAP states the requirements for the utilization of the frequency band between 410 MHz and 430 MHz for potential emerging applications such as broadband PPDR and IoT, in addition to digital public trunking services.

2.4 The Authority's decision is consistent with the ITU allocations for the 410 MHz to 430 MHz band. The 410 MHz to 420 MHz band is allocated to FIXED, MOBILE (except aeronautical mobile) and SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-space) services. The 420 MHz to 430 MHz band is allocated to FIXED and MOBILE (except aeronautical mobile) services on a primary basis within Region 1. In addition, footnote 5.268 in the National Frequency Plan for South Africa notes that the use of the frequency band 410 – 420 MHz by the space research service is limited to space-to-space communication links with an orbiting, manned space vehicle. In this frequency band, stations of the space research service (space-to-space) shall not claim protection from, nor constrain the use and development of, stations of the fixed and mobile services. **The Authority has concluded that this band will be made available for other potential emerging applications such as broadband PPDR (BB-PPDR), PAMR, PMR and IoT, in addition to digital public trunking**.

3 General

3.1 Technical characteristics of the equipment used in potential emerging applications such as broadband PPDR and IoT and digital public trunking systems shall conform to all applicable South African standards, international standards, International Telecommunications Union (ITU) and its radio regulations as agreed and adopted by South Africa.

3.2 All installations must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.

3.3 The equipment used shall be certified under South African law and regulations.

3.4 The allocation of this frequency band and the information in this RFSAP are subject to review.

3.5 Use of this band will be for potential emerging applications such as broadband PPDR, PAMR, PMR and IoT, in addition to digital public trunking services.

---

[1] Frequency Migration regulation and Radio Frequency Migration Plan March 2013, Government Gazette No 36334, 3 April 2013

[2] Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019. https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/final-radio-frequency-migration-plan-2019.pdf

[3] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

3.6 The 2021 Implementation document[4] discusses LTE and associated technologies in the context of PPDR and IoT. The LTE can be equally expanded on the next, fifth generation (5G) of the mobile networks, including New Radio (NR).

3.7 In line with the development of land mobile PMR/PAMR, the need for high-speed data and other additional services increases. Already now, there is an expressed requirement for services that cannot be delivered over traditional narrowband technology. In response, industry has already developed a number of systems, including for example TETRA TEDS using 25 kHz, 50 kHz, 100 kHz and 150 kHz bandwidth, systems using 200 kHz channel bandwidth based on GSM technology, M2M/IoT based on NB-IoT and LPWAN (Low Power Wide Area Network) technologies, CDMA-PAMR using 1.25 MHz channel bandwidth or LTE (Long-Term Evolution) based technologies using 200 kHz, 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz channel bandwidth.

3.8 As highlighted by "Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap" 100, 3GPP has standardised two FDD band plans (see Figure 1) for the 410 – 430 MHz band [5], namely bands 87 for PMR in APT (410 – 415 MHz for uplink and 420 – 425 MHz for downlink) and 88 for PMR in EU (412 – 417 MHz for uplink and 422 – 427 MHz for downlink). In particular, the band 88 matches ITU Region 1, where South Africa belongs.

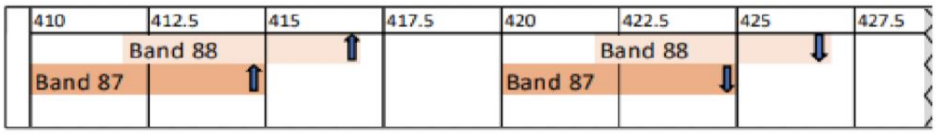


Figure 1: Two 3GPP band plans (87 and 88) for 410 MHz to 430 MHz band [100].

3.9 ECC/DEC/ (19)02[6] suggests the following options for the land mobile systems with channel bandwidth of 1.25 MHz, 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz:

3.9.1 410-415 MHz (uplink) / 420-425 MHz (downlink), similar to 3GPP's LTE band 87;

3.9.2 411-416 MHz (uplink) / 421-426 MHz (downlink); and

3.9.3 412-417 MHz (uplink) / 422-427 MHz (downlink), similar to 3GPP's LTE band 88.

3.9.4 Considering the mismatch to the 3GPP's for option 3.9.2, it is likely that only the other two options will receive industry support. For this reason, option 3.9.2 is not included in the proposed Channelling Plan shown in section 34.

3.10 Public Protection Disaster Relief (PPDR)

---

[4] https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/202112/45690gen739.pdf

[5] 450 Alliance, https://450alliance.org/

[6] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)

3.10.1 Resolution 646 (Rev. WRC-15) [7] defines the purpose of a PPDR radio system. Such a system includes two different uses. The first one is for Public Protection (PP) which covers radiocommunications used by responsible agencies and organisations dealing with maintenance of law and order, protection of life and property, and emergency situations. The second one is for Disaster Relief (DR) which covers radiocommunications used by agencies and organisations dealing with a serious disruption of the functioning of society, posing a significant, widespread threat to human life, health, property or the environment, whether caused by accident, nature or human activity, and whether developing suddenly or as a result of complex, long-term processes {the precise definitions are also included and explained in ECC Report 102 (5)}.

3.10.2 BB-PPDR services can be provided by means of three infrastructure models; through mobile broadband networks dedicated to providing service to BB-PPDR users to meet their specific requirements, through commercial mobile networks providing both PPDR and commercial service or through hybrid solutions with partly dedicated and partly commercial network infrastructure.

3.10.3 As per ECC/DEC/ (16)02 [8], the 400 MHz range does not provide enough available spectrum to provide a stand-alone solution for broadband PPDR as calculated in ECC Report 199 [9], even though it can offer national flexibility, e.g., in the context of additional spectrum beside the 700 MHz range. In addition, the 400 MHz range has the advantage of very good propagation characteristics, potentially reducing the number of base station sites needed to provide the necessary coverage (rural areas).

As per ECC/DEC/ (16)02[10], introduction of additional spectrum for BB-PPDR in parts of the 400 MHz range shall apply the Least Restrictive Technical Conditions (LRTC) for BB-PPDR (intended to ensure coexistence with other services), with channelling arrangements 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, or 5 MHz within the following paired frequency ranges:

3.10.3.1 410.0-415.0 MHz (uplink) / 420.0-425.0 MHz (downlink);

3.10.3.2 411.0-416.0 MHz (uplink) / 421.0-426.0 MHz (downlink); or

3.10.3.3 412.0-417.0 MHz (uplink) / 422.0-427.0 MHz (downlink).

3.11 The following documents may also be useful when considering the 410 – 430 MHz band:

---

[7] Resolution 646 (Rev. WRC-15): "Public Protection and Disaster Relief" recommends to use regionally harmonised bands for BB-PPDR radio systems to the maximum extent possible, taking into account the national and regional requirements and also having regard to any needed consultation and cooperation with other concerned countries/regions.

[8] ECC/DEC/ (16)02, ECC Decision of 17 June 2016 on harmonised technical conditions and frequency bands for the implementation of Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (BB-PPDR) systems. Amended on 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/941)

[9] ECC Report 199, User requirements and spectrum needs for future European broadband PPDR systems (Wide Area Networks), 30 May 2013. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/306)

[10] ECC/DEC/ (16)02, ECC Decision of 17 June 2016 on harmonised technical conditions and frequency bands for the implementation of Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (BB-PPDR) systems. Amended on 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/941)

3.11.1 ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)

3.11.2 ECC/DEC/ (16)02, ECC Decision of 17 June 2016 on harmonised technical conditions and frequency bands for the implementation of Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (BB-PPDR) systems. Amended on 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/941)

3.11.3 ECC Report 292, Current Use, Future Opportunities and Guidance to Administrations for the 400 MHz PMR/PAMR frequencies, 8 February 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9556)

3.11.4 T/R 25-08, Recommendation T/R of 30 May 2008 on Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz. Latest amended on 28 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/909)

3.11.5 ECC Report 283, Compatibility and sharing studies related to the introduction of broadband and narrowband systems in the bands 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz, 14 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/6033)

3.11.6 ECC Report 276, Thresholds for the coordination of CDMA and LTE broadband systems in the 400 MHz band, 27 April 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/2014)

3.11.7 Decision (EU) 2017/1483, Commission Implementing Decision (EU) 2017/1483 of 8 August 2017 amending Decision 2006/771/EC on harmonisation of the radio spectrum for use by short-range devices and repealing Decision 2006/804/EC, 8 August 2017. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/1004)

3.11.8 ECC Report 218, Harmonised conditions and spectrum bands for the implementation of future European Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (BB-PPDR) systems, 2 October 2015. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/325)

3.11.9 ECC Report 240, Compatibility studies regarding Broadband PPDR and other radio applications in 410-430 and 450-470 MHz and adjacent bands, 30 September 2015. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/346)

3.11.10 ECC Report 199, User requirements and spectrum needs for future European broadband PPDR systems (Wide Area Networks), 30 May 2013. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/306)

3.11.11 ECC Report 108, Border Code Coordination between CDMA-PAMR Systems, 16 October 2007. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/216)

3.11.12 ECC Report 099, TETRA Enhanced Data Services (TEDS): Impact on existing PMR/PAMR and Air Ground Air (AGA) systems in the 400 MHz band, 20 September 2007. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/207)

3.11.13 ECC Report 097, Cross Border Interference for Land Mobile Technologies, 20 February 2007. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/205)

3.11.14 ECC Report 102, Public protection and disaster relief spectrum requirements, 6 February 2007. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/210)

3.11.15 CEPT Report 011, Report from CEPT to the European Commission in response to the Mandate on: EFIS (ECO Frequency Information System), 27 September 2006. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/11)

3.11.16 ECC Report 039, The technical impact of introducing CDMA-PAMR on 12.5 / 25 kHz PMR/PAMR technologies in the 410-430 and 450-470 MHz bands, 23 February 2004. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/149)

3.11.17 ECC Report 042, Spectrum efficiency of CDMA-PAMR and other wideband systems for PMR/PAMR, 20 February 2004. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/152)

3.11.18 ECC Report 025, Strategies for the European use of frequency spectrum for PMR/PAMR applications, 12 June 2003. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/135)

3.11.19 ECC Report 022, The technical impact of introducing TAPS on 12.5 / 25 kHz PMR/PAMR technologies in the 380-400, 410-430 and 450-470 MHz bands, 22 May 2003. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/132)

3.11.20 ERC Report 104, Adjacent band compatibility of 400 MHz TETRA and analogue FM PMR - an analysis completed using a Monte Carlo based simulation tool, 1 June 2000. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/671)

4 Channelling Plan

4.1 The frequency band 410 MHz – 430 MHz provides a total bandwidth of 20 MHz.

4.2 Tables with current channel plans for the band 410 – 430 MHz are available in subsection 1.7 of Appendix G (i.e., on pages 171/293 – 178/293) in the Final Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019 [11]. The tables cover the following applications:

1) SAPS (193 x 12.5 kHz channels, SAPS):

BTX 417.5875 – 419.9875 MHz (in terms of the centres of the channels), paired with

MTX 407.5875 – 409.9875 MHz

2) **DIGITAL TRUNKING (200 x 25 kHz channels, TETRA):**

BTX 420 – 424.975 MHz, paired with

MTX 410 – 414.975 MHz

3) **MOBILE DATA (61 X 12.5 kHz channels, WBS):**

BTX 423 – 423.75 MHz, paired with

MTX 413 – 413.75 MHz.

4.3 The channel arrangements for the band are based on Appendix A and shown in Figure 2 and Figure 3

[11] Final Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019, Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019 (https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/final-radio-frequency-migration-plan-2019.pdf).

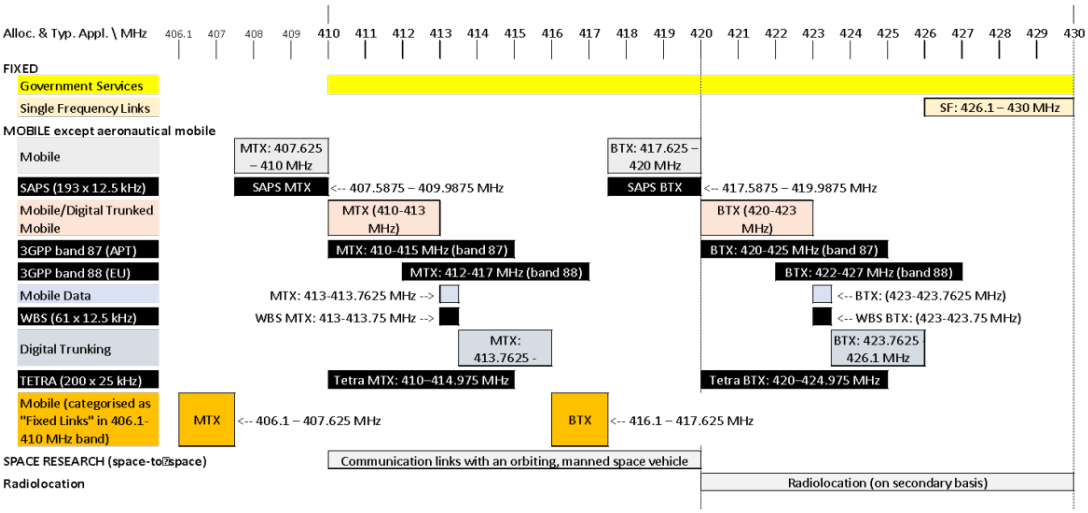


Figure 2: Current Frequency arrangements in 410 MHz – 430 MHz band in South Africa (information from Appendix A is shown with black font, and information from the 2021 Implementation document[12] is shown with white font on black background). Except for SF Links, the other bands are paired.

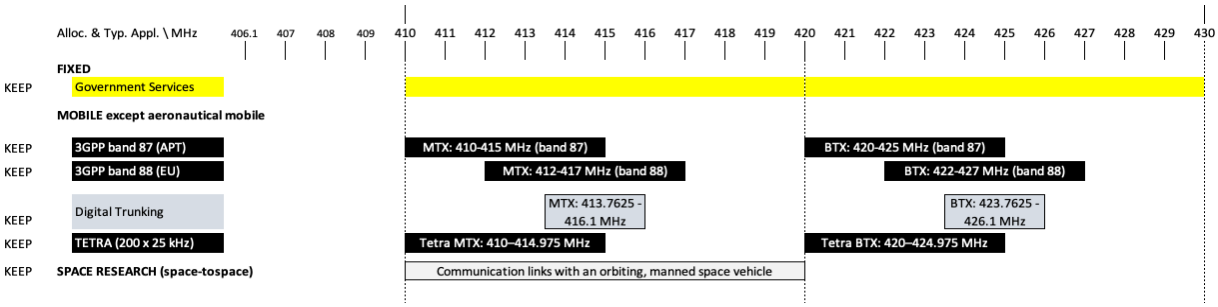


Figure 3: Proposed Frequency arrangements in 410 MHz – 430 MHz band in South Africa

4.4 Channelling for non-3GPP analogue and digital land mobile systems

4.4.1 Channelling for analogue and digital land mobile systems with channel spacing of up to 25 kHz, of 50 kHz, 100 kHz, or 150 kHz, abiding by T/R 25-08 [13].

The channel centre frequencies (hereinafter called *centre frequencies*) use the following *preferred formula*. This preferred formula should be used whenever possible, but at least in new and re-farmed bands:

---

[12] https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/202112/45690gen739.pdf

[13] Recommendation T/R 25-08, Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz, Approved 15 January 1990. Amended 28 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/909, https://docdb.cept.org/download/2544)

$$F_{CH} = Band\ Edge - (\text{Channel Spacing}/2) + n \times \text{Channel Spacing}$$

Where:

F_{CH} = channel centre frequency

n = 1, 2, 3, … - channel number;

Band Edge is the lower edge of the allocated frequency band, i.e., 410 MHz.

For systems using a channel spacing of 200 kHz, the centre frequencies should be selected according to the preferred formula with an option to offset these centre frequencies by 100 kHz.

4.4.2 Duplex or two-frequency simplex channel separation, location of sub-bands and guard bands [14]:

A sub-band can be simplex or duplex. The lower and upper parts of a duplex sub-band should be in the same allocated band.

The frequencies of emissions of base or repeater stations should be placed in the upper band and those of mobile stations in the lower band. The same positions of upper and lower bands should be selected for bordering/adjacent countries.

The channel centre frequency of a digital land mobile system using a channel spacing greater than 25 kHz may be selected in a way that the channel pertaining to the centre frequency with its nominal channel spacing falls entirely into a sub-band and does not overlap the guard band necessary around the edges of simplex sub-bands and the edges of the lower parts and upper parts of duplex sub-bands.

4.5 Non-exhaustive spectrum arrangement options for the band 410-430 MHz

ECC Report 292 [15], "based on the overall considerations," recommends three options for broadband technologies in the band, illustrated in Figure 4.

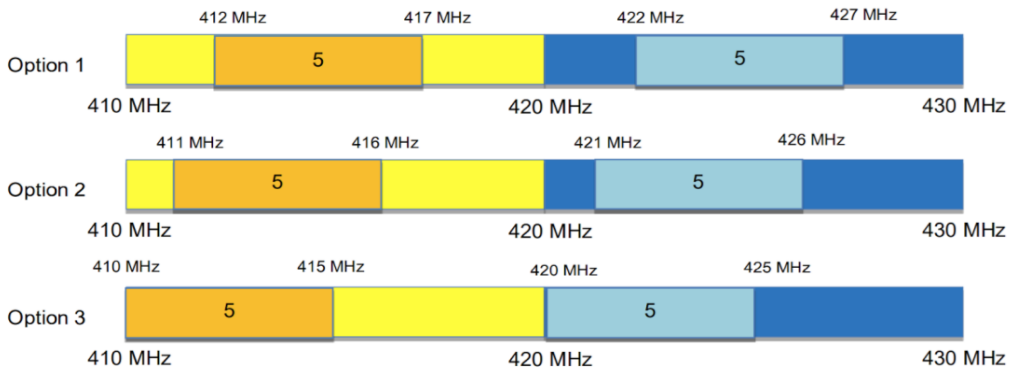


Figure 4: Non-exhaustive spectrum arrangement options for the band 410-430 MHz [112]

[14] ECC Recommendation T/R 25-08, Planning criteria and coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz. http://spectrum.welter.fr/international/cept/erc-recommendations/erc-recommendation-25-08-public-land-mobile-29-MHz-470-MHz.pdf

[15] ECC Report 292, Current Use, Future Opportunities and Guidance to Administrations for the 400 MHz PMR/PAMR frequencies, 8 February 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9556)

4.6 Channelling for land mobile systems with channel bandwidths of 1.25 MHz, 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz

ECC/DEC/ (19)02[16], supported by ECC Report 283[17], advises on the technical requirements for land mobile systems with the channel bandwidth of 1.25 MHz, 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz (for 410-430 MHz)

4.6.1 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz and 5 MHz LTE FDD channelling arrangements could be implemented in the paired frequency arrangements in 410.0 - 415.0 MHz / 420.0 - 425.0 MHz, 411.0 - 416.0 MHz / 421.0 - 426.0 MHz, and 412.0 - 417.0 MHz / 422.0 - 427.0 MHz.

4.7 Technical conditions for land mobile systems based on NB-IoT and LPWAN technologies in the 410-430 MHz frequency range, based on ECC/DEC/ (19)02[18]:

The following technical conditions shall be applied as an essential component necessary to ensure coexistence between neighbouring networks. Operators may agree, on a bilateral or multilateral basis, different technical parameters providing that they continue to comply with the technical conditions applicable for the protection of other services, applications, or networks and with their cross-border obligations.

The technical requirements are derived from ECC Report 283[19].

4.7.1 LTE NB-IOT (STANDALONE)

ECC/DEC/ (19)02[20] advises on the channel bandwidth and frequency offset for NB-IoT standalone operation for a standalone NB-Io**T**, as summarised in Table 1 and Table 2.

NB-IoT	Standalone
Channel bandwidth (BW)	200 kHz
UE maximum EIRP	23 dBm

Table 1. Transmission parameters

[16] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)

[17] ECC Report 283, Compatibility and sharing studies related to the introduction of broadband and narrowband systems in the bands 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz, 14 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/6033)

[18] *Ibid.*

[19] ECC Report 283, Compatibility and sharing studies related to the introduction of broadband and narrowband systems in the bands 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz, 14 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/6033

[20] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)

Lowest or Highest Carrier	F_{offset}
Standalone NB-IoT	200 kHz

Table 2. Frequency offset for NB-IoT standalone operation

.

4.7.2 LPWAN

ECC/DEC/ (19)02}[21] advises on the baseline channel bandwidth of 125 kHz to 250 kHz.

4.8 BB-PPDR Channelling

4.8.1 Introduction

The 410-420 MHz / 420-430 MHz frequency range does not allow for enough available spectrum to provide for a stand-alone solution requiring 2 x 10 MHz for BB-PPDR as calculated in ECC Report 199 [107].

The range can offer national flexibility, e.g., in the context of additional spectrum beside the 700 MHz range. The 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz and 5 MHz LTE FDD channelling arrangements could be implemented in the paired frequency arrangements in 410.0-415.0 MHz / 420.0-425.0 MHz, 411.0-416.0 MHz / 421.0-426.0 MHz and 412.0-417.0 MHz / 422.0-427.0 MHz.

The least restrictive technical conditions (LRTC) set out in this document are derived from ECC Report 283 [22].

4.8.2 BB-PPDR channel bandwidths considered by ECC/DEC/ (16)02[23]: 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz.

5 Requirements for usage of radio frequency spectrum

5.1 This section covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary to make the best use of the available frequencies.

5.2 The use of the band is limited to potential emerging applications such as broadband PPDR and IoT, in addition to digital public trunking services.

5.3 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.4 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the NRFP. An extract of the NRFP is shown in Appendix A.

5.5 The technical conditions listed in Sections 35.6 - 35.8 shall be applied as an essential component necessary to ensure coexistence between neighbouring networks. Operators may agree, on a

---

[21] *Ibid*

[22] ECC Report 283, Compatibility and sharing studies related to the introduction of broadband and narrowband systems in the bands 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz, 14 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/6033)

[23] ECC/DEC/ (16)02, ECC Decision of 17 June 2016 on harmonised technical conditions and frequency bands for the implementation of Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (BB-PPDR) systems. Amended on 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/941)

bilateral or multilateral basis, different technical parameters providing that they continue to comply with the technical conditions applicable for the protection of other services, applications, or networks and with their cross-border obligations.

5.6 Non-3GPP Land mobile systems with channel bandwidths of 6.25 kHz, 12.5 kHz and 25 kHz, 50 kHz, 100 kHz, 150 kHz, and 200 kHz

5.7 The land mobile systems with channel bandwidths of 6.25 kHz, 12.5 kHz and 25 kHz, 50 kHz, 100 kHz, 150 kHz, and 200 kHz (the same requirements apply for channel bandwidth between 6.25 kHz and 200 kHz) should comply with requirements listed in ECC/DEC/ (19)02[24]

5.8 Transmitter Masks, Unwanted Emissions and Receiver Requirements for land mobile systems with channel bandwidth of 1.25 MHz, 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz

ECC/DEC/ (19)02[25], supported by ECC Report 283[26], advises on the technical requirements for land mobile systems with channel bandwidth of 1.25 MHz, 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz (for 410 – 430 MHz):

5.8.1 Transmitter Masks

A) Base station (BS) transmitter mask

Parameter		Value (dBm/cell)
Maximum in-block EIRP		56

Table 4. BS in-block EIRP (dBm/cell, 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz channel width)

Channel width	Delta F_c (MHz) from centre frequency	Out-of-band emissions (transmitter output power)	Measurement bandwidth
1.4 MHz	0.7 to 2.1	-1 dBm -10/1.4 * (Delta F_c – 0.7) dB	100 kHz
	2.1 to 3.5	-11 dBm	100 kHz
	3.5 to 9.95	-16 dBm	100 kHz
3 MHz	1.5 to 4.5	-5 dBm -10/3* (Delta F_c – 1.5) dB	100 kHz
	4.5 to 7.5	-15 dBm	100 kHz
	7.5 to 9.995	-16 dBm	100 kHz
5 MHz	2.5 to 7.5	-7 dBm -7/5* (Delta F_c – 2.5) dB	100 kHz
	7.5 to 9.95	-14 dBm	100 kHz
Note 1: for the maximum mean out-of-block EIRP. the antenna gain and cable losses of the land mobile system have to be considered.			

[24] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)

[25] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)

[26] ECC Report 283, Compatibility and sharing studies related to the introduction of broadband and narrowband systems in the bands 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz, 14 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/6033)

Channel width	Delta F_c (MHz) from centre frequency	Out-of-band emissions (transmitter output power)	Measurement bandwidth
Note 2: additional out-of-band emission reduction may be necessary for the protection of other land mobile systems in the adjacent bands (see ECC Report 283). For the protection of the uplink frequencies of land mobile systems within 410-420 MHz, a maximum mean out-of-block EIRP. of -43 dBm/100 kHz may be needed. Note 3: additional 40 dB of out-of-block emission reduction may be needed for the protection of radiolocation services)			

Table 5. BS frequency range of out-of-block emissions (OOBE) (1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz channel width)

Frequency offset from centre frequency (MHz)	Channel width 1.25 MHz	Measurement bandwidth
±0.885-1.98	-17 dBm	30 kHz
±1.98-4	-22 dBm	30 kHz

Table 6. BS frequency range of out-of-block emissions (1.25 MHz channel width)

B) User Equipment (UE)

Parameter	Value
Channel bandwidth	1.25, 1.4, 3 or 5 MHz
Maximum mean in-block power	23 dBm (Note)
Note: administrations may use higher UE maximum mean in-block power up to 31 dBm for special deployment scenarios provided that protection of other services, networks and applications is not compromised. Vice-versa, the maximum mean in-block power of UE for the protection of other services may be limited on a cell-by-cell basis.	

Table 7. UE transmitter characteristics

Frequency offset from channel edge (MHz)	Channel width			Measurement bandwidth
	1.4 MHz	3 MHz	5 MHz	
± 0-1	-10 dBm	-13 dBm	-15 dBm	30 kHz
± 1-2.5	-10 dBm	-10 dBm	-10 dBm	1 MHz
± 2.5-2.8	-25 dBm	-10 dBm	-10 dBm	1 MHz
± 2.8-5		-10 dBm	-10 dBm	1 MHz
± 5-6		-25 dBm	-13 dBm	1 MHz
± 6-10			-25 dBm	1 MHz

Table 8. UE maximum unwanted emission levels (1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz channel width)

Frequency offset from centre frequency (MHz)	Channel width 1.25 MHz	Measurement bandwidth
±0.885-1.98	-24 dBm	30 kHz
±1.98-4	-44 dBm	30 kHz

Table 9. UE maximum unwanted emission levels (1.25 MHz channel bandwidth)

5.8.2 Unwanted Emissions

5.8.2.1 Unwanted emissions in the spurious Domain

The unwanted emissions within the spurious domain during operation shall not exceed -36 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -30 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz. In standby mode, the unwanted emissions shall not exceed -57 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -47 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz.

5.8.2.2 Intermodulation Attenuation

This requirement applies only to transmitters to be used in base stations or repeaters.

Intermodulation attenuation is a measure of the capability of a transmitter to inhibit the generation of signals in its non-linear elements caused by the presence of the transmitter power and an interfering signal entering the transmitter via its antenna.

In general, the intermodulation attenuation ratio shall be at least 40 dB for any intermodulation component.

Note that national administrations may require a more stringent intermodulation attenuation requirement for base station equipment to be used in special service conditions, e.g., at sites where more than one transmitter will be in service, this is recommended to be at least 70 dB for any intermodulation component.

5.8.2.3 Adjacent channel transient power

Transient power is the power falling into adjacent spectrum due to switching the transmitter on and off. The transient power in the adjacent channels (e.g., caused by push-to-talk functionality) shall not exceed -60 dBc in the adjacent channels, or -50 dBc for equipment, without the need to be below -36 dBm.

5.8.3 Receiver requirements

The baseline performance for receiver blocking for 1.25 MHz systems is:

a) BS: -43 dBm at 900 kHz offset from the centre frequency;

b) UE: -44.5 dBm at 900 kHz offset from the centre frequency.

The baseline performance for receiver selectivity and blocking performance for 1.4 MHz, 3 MHz, and 5 MHz systems applicable for the 410-430 MHz is identical to those specification set out in ETSI TS 136 104 for the BS and ETSI TS 136 101 for UE for the 3GPP band 31 and 72.

5.9 NB-IoT and LPWAN: Technical conditions for land mobile systems based on NB-IoT and LPWAN technologies

Annex 4 of ECC/DEC/ (19)02[27], supported by ECC Report 283 [28], provides a description and technical conditions for land mobile systems based on NB-IoT and LPWAN technologies in the 410 - 430 MHz band, incl.:

5.9.1 LTE NB-IoT (Inband)

In an inband deployment, the NB-IoT technology will use some of the resources of an existing wideband carrier. This corresponds to a change of transmission mode on some subcarriers of a wideband carrier. This is very similar to what happens when a specific modulation is selected by the BS to serve a specific terminal.

Embedding an NB-IoT in an LTE carrier does not change the power or the spectrum emission mask, either on the BS (base station) or the UE (user equipment) side. In particular, it is not possible to go closer to block edge than a current LTE UE could go.

5.9.2 LTE NB-IoT (Guard band)

A guard band NB-IoT deployment corresponds to the case where a narrowband transmission is added on the side of an existing wideband carrier. This is made possible by the fact that wideband transmission technologies typically transmit a signal narrower than the channel bandwidth, i.e., they implement implicit guard bands within their transmission channel. The IoT can leverage these implicit guard bands as operating spectrum. The limits in the Tables in section 35.8.3 apply for operation of a NB-IoT carrier adjacent to the BS radio frequency bandwidth edge.

5.9.3 LTE NB-IoT (Standalone)

In a standalone deployment, the IoT carrier is deployed independently, in its own narrow band spectrum. This is exactly the same deployment mode as GSM.

ECC/DEC/ (19)02 advises on the UE maximum EIRP, out-of-band emissions and other parameters, provided below.

NB-IoT	Standalone
Channel bandwidth (BW)	200 kHz
UE maximum EIRP	23 dBm

Table 10. Transmission parameters for NB-IoT

Lowest or Highest Carrier	F_{offset}
Standalone NB-IoT	200 kHz

Table 11. Frequency offset for NB-IoT standalone operation

[27] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)

[28] ECC Report 283, Compatibility and sharing studies related to the introduction of broadband and narrowband systems in the bands 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz, 14 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/6033)

Frequency offset of measurement filter -3 dB point, Δf	Frequency offset of measurement filter centre frequency, f_{offset}	Minimum requirement (Notes 1 and 2) NB-IoT BS unwanted emission (transmitter output power)	Measurement bandwidth
0 MHz ≤ Δf < 0.05 MHz	0.015 MHz ≤ f_{offset} < 0.065 MHz	$Max(5dBm - 60 \cdot \left(\frac{f_{offset}}{MHz} - 0.015\right)dB + XdB, -14dBm)$	30 kHz
0.05 MHz ≤ Δf < 0.15 MHz	0.065 MHz ≤ f_{offset} < 0.165 MHz	$Max(2dBm - 160 \cdot \left(\frac{f_{offset}}{MHz} - 0.065\right)dB + XdB, -14dBm)$	30 kHz
0.15 MHz ≤ Δf < 0.2 MHz	0.165 MHz ≤ f_{offset} < 0.215 MHz	-14 dBm	30 kHz
0.2 MHz ≤ Δf < 1 MHz	0.215 MHz ≤ f_{offset} < 1.015 MHz	$-14dBm - 15 \cdot \left(\frac{f\_offset}{MHz} - 0.215\right)dB$	30 kHz
Note 1: In case the carrier adjacent to the radio frequency bandwidth edge is a NB-IoT carrier, the value of X = $P_{NB\text{-}IoT}$ carrier – 43, where $P_{NB\text{-}IoT}$ carrier is the power level of the NB-IoT carrier adjacent to the RF bandwidth edge. In other cases, X = 0. Note 2: For the maximum mean out-of-block EIRP. the antenna gain and cable losses of the land mobile system have to be considered. Additional out-of-band emission reduction may be necessary for the protection of other land mobile systems in the adjacent bands (see ECC Report 283).			

Table 12. Standalone NB-IoT BS out-of-band emissions (OOBE)

Band 31 and Band 72 have been specified in ETSI TS 136 104 and ETSI TS 136 101 also for use with NB-IoT carriers. The same technical baseline as well as receiver parameters can be assumed for operations inside the 410-430 MHz band.

ECC Report 283 assumed for the in-band BS emissions a maximum of 54 dBm/200 kHz EIRP.

5.9.4 LPWAN

ECC/DEC/ (19)02[29] advises on the UE and BS maximum EIRP, out-of-band emissions and other parameters, provided below.

[29] ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)

LPWAN parameters	Baseline value
Channel bandwidth	125 kHz to 250 kHz
BS maximum EIRP.	33.6 dBm
UE maximum EIRP.	23 dBm

Table 13. LPWAN system parameters

LPWAN BS frequency offset from centre frequency	BS unwanted emissions (EIRP)
at LPWAN channel edge	-55.4 dBm/1 kHz
at channel edge +/- 125 kHz	-65.4 dBm/1 kHz
at channel edge +/- 250 kHz	-62.4 dBm/100 kHz

Table 14. LPWAN BS unwanted emissions (EIRP)

LPWAN UE frequency offset from centre frequency	UE unwanted emissions (EIRP)
at LPWAN channel edge	-31 dBm/1 kHz
at channel edge +/- 125 kHz	-41 dBm/1 kHz
at channel edge +/- 250 kHz	-36 dBm/100 kHz

Table 15. LPWAN UE unwanted emissions (EIRP)

LPWAN Receiver parameter	Baseline
Receiver selectivity	The adjacent channel rejection at 200 kHz offset from centre frequency is -75 dBm, at 400 kHz is -62 dBm. If LTE is used in the adjacent spectrum, the BS receiver adjacent channel rejection is to be improved by 30 dB.
Receiver blocking	-55 dBm at 1 MHz offset from centre frequency -45 dBm at 2 MHz offset from centre frequency

Table 16. LPWAN Receiver considerations

Note: the precise parameters may depend on the spreading factor used in an LPWAN system.

5.9.5 Common technical conditions on Unwanted Emissions for land mobile systems based on NB-IoT and LPWAN technologies

5.9.5.1 Unwanted emissions in the spurious Domain

The unwanted emissions within the spurious domain during operation shall not exceed -36 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -30 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz. In standby mode, the unwanted emissions shall not exceed -57 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -47 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz.

5.9.5.2 Intermodulation Attenuation

This requirement applies only to transmitters to be used in base stations or repeaters.

Intermodulation attenuation is a measure of the capability of a transmitter to inhibit the generation of signals in its non-linear elements caused by the

presence of the transmitter power and an interfering signal entering the transmitter via its antenna.

In general, the intermodulation attenuation ratio shall be at least 40 dB for any intermodulation component.

Note that national administrations may require a more stringent intermodulation attenuation requirement for base station equipment to be used in special service conditions, e.g., at sites where more than one transmitter will be in service, this is recommended to be at least 70 dB for any intermodulation component.

5.9.5.3 Adjacent channel transient power

Transient power is the power falling into adjacent spectrum due to switching the transmitter on and off. The transient power in the adjacent channels shall not exceed -60 dBc in the adjacent channels, or -50 dBc for equipment, without the need to be below -36 dBm.

5.10 BB-PPDR

Least restrictive technical conditions (LRTC) for BB-PPDR in the paired frequency arrangement 410-420 MHZ / 420-430 MHZ, based on ECC/DEC/ (16)02[30], are shown in the tables in BB-PPDR user equipment and base station sections, respectively.

5.10.1 BB-PPDR User Equipment (UE)

Parameter	Value
Channel bandwidth	1.4, 3 or 5 MHz
Maximum mean in-block power	23 dBm (see Note)
Note: Administrations may use higher UE maximum mean in-block power up to 31 dBm for special deployment scenarios, provided that protection of other services, networks and applications is not compromised. Vice-versa, the maximum mean in-block power of PPDR-UE for the protection of other services may be limited on a cell-by-cell basis.	

Table 17. BB-PPDR UE transmitter characteristics

Frequency offset from channel edge (MHz)	Channel width			Measurement bandwidth
	1.4 MHz	3 MHz	5 MHz	
± 0-1	-10 dBm	-13 dBm	-15 dBm	30 kHz
± 1-2.5	-10 dBm	-10 dBm	-10 dBm	1 MHz
± 2.5-2.8	-25 dBm	-10 dBm	-10 dBm	1 MHz
± 2.8-5		-10 dBm	-10 dBm	1 MHz
± 5-6		-25 dBm	-13 dBm	1 MHz
± 6-10			-25 dBm	1 MHz

Table 18. BB-PPDR UE maximum unwanted emission levels

[30] ECC/DEC/ (16)02, ECC Decision of 17 June 2016 on harmonised technical conditions and frequency bands for the implementation of Broadband Public Protection and Disaster Relief (BB-PPDR) systems. Amended on 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/941)

5.10.2 BB-PPDR Base Station (BS)

Channel width	Delta F_c (MHz) from centre frequency	Out-of-band emissions (transmitter output power)	Measurement bandwidth
1.4 MHz	0.7 to 2.1	-1 dBm -10/1.4 * (Delta F_c – 0.7) dB	100 kHz
	2.1 to 3.5	-11 dBm	100 kHz
	3.5 to 9.95	-16 dBm	100 kHz
3 MHz	1.5 to 4.5	-5 dBm -10/3* (Delta F_c – 1.5) dB	100 kHz
	4.5 to 7.5	-15 dBm	100 kHz
	7.5 to 9.995	-16 dBm	100 kHz
5 MHz	2.5 to 7.5	-7 dBm -7/5* (Delta F_c – 2.5) dB	100 kHz
	7.5 to 9.95	-14 dBm	100 kHz
Note 1: for the maximum mean out-of-block EIRP. the antenna gain and cable losses of the land mobile system have to be considered. Note 2: additional out-of-band emission reduction may be necessary for the protection of other land mobile systems in the adjacent bands (see ECC Report 283). For the protection of the uplink frequencies of land mobile systems within 410-420 MHz, a maximum mean out-of-block EIRP. of -43 dBm/100 kHz may be needed. Note 3: additional 40 dB of out-of-block emission reduction may be needed for the protection of radiolocation services.			

Table 19. PPDR BS unwanted emission levels

5.11 Space research

5.11.1 As per ITU Radio Regulations footnote 5.268, "Use of the frequency band 410 – 420 MHz by the space research service is limited to space-to-space communication links with an orbiting, manned space vehicle. The power flux-density at the surface of the Earth produced by emissions from transmitting stations of the space research service (space-to-space) in the frequency band 410 – 420 MHz shall not exceed −153 dB(W/m2) for $0° \leq \delta \leq 5°$, $-153 + 0.077\ (d - 5)$ dB(W/m2) for $5° \leq \delta \leq 70°$ and −148 dB(W/m2) for $70° \leq \delta \leq 90°$, where δ is the angle of arrival of the radio-frequency wave and the reference bandwidth is 4 kHz. In this frequency band, stations of the space research service (space-to-space) shall not claim protection from, nor constrain the use and development of, stations of the fixed and mobile services. No. 4.10 does not apply. (WRC-15)[31]"

5.12 On a case-by-case basis, higher EIRP may be permitted if acceptable technical justification is provided;

5.13 ICNIRP Guideline compliance is required, where applicable; and

5.14 Criteria and guidelines for interference mitigation are described in Appendix D.

[31] R15-WRC15-C-2015!!MSW-E (itu.int)

5.15 The mobile network operators are encouraged to share the spectrum, e.g., using the Dynamic Spectrum Sharing (DSS) technologies available in LTE and 5G/NR.

6 Implementation

6.1 This RFSAP shall be effective on the date of issue.

6.2 No new assignments in the band 410 MHz to 430 MHz will be approved unless they comply with this RFSAP.

7 Coordination Requirements

7.1 Coordination is performed by the Authority during the process of assignment.

7.2 As per section 11.4 of Annex 11 of "Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap" [32], radiolocation systems in the frequency range 420 – 430 MHz which are deployed and protected, may require protection zones, if the frequency range 410 – 430 MHz is used by broadband land mobile systems.

7.3 Planning characteristics in border areas:

The location, the power, and the antenna heights of all stations in the network should be selected in such a way that their range is confined, as far as possible, to the zone to be covered by the intended service.

Excessive antenna heights and transmitter outputs should be avoided, by using several locations of reduced height wherever possible. In border areas, directional antennas should be used to minimise the interference potential.

The effective radiated power and the height of the antenna should be as low as possible in relation to the area to be served.

7.4 In the event of any interference, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution.

7.5 In the event of any interference, the Authority will require affected parties to carry out coordination. If the interference continues to be unresolved after 24 hours, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution.

7.6 The Authority will decide the necessary modifications and schedule of modifications to resolve the dispute.

7.7 The Authority will be guided by the interference resolution process as shown in Appendix B.

7.8 Assignment holders shall take full advantage of interference mitigation techniques such as antenna discrimination, tilt, polarisation, frequency discrimination, shielding/blocking (introduce diffraction loss), site selection, and/or power control to facilitate the coordination of systems.

7.9 Indicative coordination thresholds for analogue or digital land mobile systems, as per T/R 25-08[33]

---

[32] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No 45690, 24 December 2021.

[33] T/R 25-08, Recommendation T/R of 30 May 2008 on Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7 470 MHz. Latest amended on 28 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/909)

7.9.1 The aim of coordination thresholds is to avoid harmful interference between stations located in neighbouring countries. To achieve this, indicative coordination thresholds are established which should not be exceeded without coordination between neighbouring countries.

7.9.2 Indicative coordination thresholds for land mobile systems (co-channel, 50% locations, 10% time [34], 10 m receiving antenna height, within a reference bandwidth of 25 kHz, at the border-line) is 20 dB(µV/m).

7.9.3 For systems using a channel spacing greater than 25 kHz, the following bandwidth conversion formula can be used provided that the spectral power distribution within this channel spacing is uniform within the channel.

$BC = 10 \times \log_{10}$ (channel spacing / 25 kHz), dB

The value **BC** resulting from the formula should be added to the indicative coordination threshold as listed above.

7.9.4 For all other spectral power distributions, indicative coordination threshold levels should be applied within every 25 kHz bandwidth within the channel spacing.

7.10 Field strength levels for cross-border coordination between FDD land mobile systems using preferential channels up to 25 kHz and systems using a channel greater than 1 MHz within the 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz frequency bands

T/R 25-08 [35] considers the coordination between preferential channels of land mobile systems up to 25 kHz on one side and land mobile systems with a channel greater than 1 MHz on the other side of the border, for operation within the 400 MHz frequency bands.

---

[34] In certain situations, the 1%-time curves should be used for digital systems, e.g., to better protect analogue systems.

[35] T/R 25-08, Recommendation T/R of 30 May 2008 on Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7 470 MHz. Latest amended on 28 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/909)

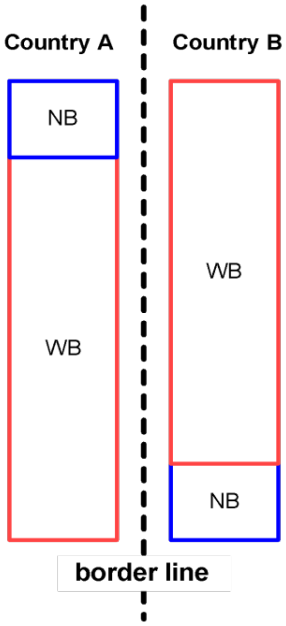


Figure 5: Overlapping narrower channel and wider channel land mobile systems across the border

The following should be considered:

- ECC Report 276 [36] provides a technical background for cross-border coordination of systems with a channel greater than 1 MHz in the 400 MHz band (410 – 430 MHz and 450 – 470 MHz) and proposes a method which can be applied in bilateral or multilateral agreements that allow for higher cross-border coordination thresholds for wideband systems in the 400 MHz band in situations where no or some overlap of narrowband and wideband allocations across the border occurs. In consequence, it means that land mobile systems up to 25 kHz keep their existing preferential rights and may extend them to all non-preferential channels in the overlapping range, if preferential rights of other administrations involved are not affected;
- The overlap is typically as small as a few hundred kilohertz. ECC Report 276 does not cover the case of full overlap between land mobile systems up to 25 kHz on one side and land mobile systems with a channel greater than 1 MHz on the other side of the border;
- In the situation where land mobile systems up to 25 kHz use preferential rights not to the full extent, i.e., they do not generate the maximum allowed field strength at a distance of 40 or 50 km in the territory of the neighbouring administration, solutions should be found between administrations or operators. One possible solution would be to increase the radiated power of the preferential system to the extent possible under preferential rights conditions. If not possible, a reduction of the radiated power of the system with a channel bandwidth > 1 MHz within the preferential frequency of the system with channel bandwidth up to 25 kHz may be considered;
- The two (2) most common preferential regimes for narrowband systems were considered, both defined as the field strength threshold of 20 dB µV/m at 10 m height in 25 kHz at a distance inside the neighbouring country: Preferential Regime a) at 40 km distance and Preferential

[36] ECC Report 276, Thresholds for the coordination of CDMA and LTE broadband systems in the 400 MHz band, 27 April 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/2014)

Regime b) at 50 km distance. The proposed coordination thresholds for a partial overlap of land mobile systems up to 25 kHz on one side and land mobile systems with a channel greater than 1 MHz on the other side of the border are given in Table 20:

	Field strength at 10 m height	
	Regime a)	Regime b)
System up to 25 kHz using preferential frequency	20 dBµV/m/25 kHz @ 40 km beyond the borderline	20 dBµV/m/25 kHz @ 50 km beyond the borderline
System up to 25 kHz using NON-preferential frequency	20 dBµV/m/25 kHz @ 0 km (on the borderline)	20 dBµV/m/25 kHz @ 0 km (on the borderline)
System with a channel greater than 1 MHz	41 dBµV/m/25 kHz @ 0 km (on the borderline)	48 dBµV/m/25 kHz @ 0 km (on the borderline)
Note 1: Predictions for calculations: 50% location probability, 10%-time probability Note 2: If a channel bandwidth other than 25 kHz is used, then a bandwidth conversion factor of 10 x $\log_{10}$ (channel bandwidth/25 kHz) should be added to the field strength values. Note 3: For narrowband land mobile systems using preferential frequencies and bandwidth greater than 25 kHz (e.g., 50 kHz, 100 kHz, 150 kHz, or 200 kHz), indicative coordination threshold levels should be applied within every 25 kHz bandwidth within the channel spacing.		

Table 20: Trigger values for partial overlap between narrowband system and wideband systems at a height of 10 m above ground

Note: @ stands for "at a distance inside the neighbouring country."

For practical purposes, an antenna height correction factor of 10 dB from 10 m to 3 m height may be used. Other examples are the Okumura-Hatta model [37] that provides 15.6 dB, the ITU-R Recommendation P.1546 [38] that provides 10.3 dB or HCM that provides 9 dB.

7.11 Field strength levels for cross-border coordination between FDD land mobile systems with channels greater than 1 MHZ

T/R 25-08 [3] considers the coordination between land mobile systems with channel bandwidths greater than 1 MHz on both sides of the border, for operation within the 400 MHz ranges. ECC

[37] ERC Report 68 – Monte-Carlo Radio Simulation Methodology for the use in sharing and compatibility studies between different radio services or systems, February 2000, revised May 2001, and June 2002.

[38] ITU-R Recommendation P.1546: Method for point-to-area predictions for terrestrial services in the frequency range 30 MHz to 3 000 MHz.

Report 276 [4] provides technical background information. The deployment mode considered is FDD in the frequency bands 410-420 MHz (duplex with 420-430 MHz) and 450-460 MHz (duplex with 460-470 MHz).

7.11.1 Field strength trigger values for LTE vs LTE and CDMA vs. CDMA systems

Case A

Base stations using the same technologies on both sides of the border line with centre frequencies not aligned, or using preferential PCIs or PN (Pseudo-Noise) codes given in Appendix C with centre frequencies aligned may be used without coordination between neighbouring countries if the mean field strength produced by the cell (all transmitters within the sector) does not exceed the value of 55 dBµV/m/5 MHz at a height of 3 m above ground at the border line between neighbouring countries and does not exceed a value of 37 dB□V/m/5 MHz at a height of 3 m above ground at a distance of 10 km inside the neighbouring country.

Case B

Base stations using the same technologies on both sides of the border line with centre frequencies aligned and using non-preferential PN codes or PCIs given in Appendix C may be used without coordination between neighbouring countries if the mean field strength produced by the cell (all transmitters within the sector) does not exceed the value of 37 dBµV/m/5 MHz at a height of 3 m above ground at the border line between neighbouring countries.

7.11.2 Field strength trigger values between LTE and CDMA

Case A

In the case of different technologies used on either side of the border line, with centre frequencies aligned or not aligned, base stations may be used without coordination with a neighbouring country if the mean field strength produced by the cell (all transmitters within the sector) does not exceed the value of 55 dBµV/m/5 MHz at a height of 3 m above ground at the borderline between neighbouring countries and does not exceed a value of 37 dBµV/m/5 MHz at a height of 3 m above ground at a distance of 10 km inside the neighbouring country.

7.11.3 Overview of the trigger values

For land mobile systems with channel bandwidth greater than 1 MHz, an overview of the trigger values of the field strength and the relevant paragraphs of this RFSAP is given in Table 21.

	Non-Preferential frequency usage		
	Centre frequencies aligned		Centre frequencies not aligned
	Preferential codes	Non-preferential codes	All codes

	Non-Preferential frequency usage		
LTE vs. LTE or CDMA vs. CDMA	55 dBµV/m/5 MHz @ 0 km and 37 dBµV/m/5 MH z@ 10 km Case A	37 dBµV/m/5 MHz @ 0km Case B	55 dBµV/m/5 MHz @ 0 km and 37 dBµV/m/5 MHz @ 10 km Case A
LTE vs. CDMA	55 dBµV/m/5 MHz @ 0 km and 37 dBµV/m/5 MHz @ 10 km Case A		
Note 1: Predictions for calculations: 50% location probability, 10% time probability Note 2: If a channel bandwidth other than 5 MHz is used, then a bandwidth conversion factor applies: 10 x $\log_{10}$ (channel bandwidth /5 MHz)			

Table 21: Field strength triggers for FDD LTE/CDMA systems at a height of 3 m above ground

Note: @ stands for "at a distance inside the neighbouring country."

7.11.4 Preferential frequencies for LTE/CDMA

Administrations may agree in bilateral or multilateral agreements/arrangements on preferential usage of frequencies, while ensuring fair treatment of different operators.

7.12 ECC Report 276 "Thresholds for the coordination of CDMA and LTE broadband systems in the 400 MHz band"[39] considers a possible improvement of the spectrum utilisation in border areas and proposes coordination levels for broadband technologies addressing the following two cases:

7.12.1 Mutual coordination of wideband systems using the same frequency band;

7.12.2 A Preferential Regime used for systems with channels up to 25 kHz bandwidth on the one side of the border and wideband systems on the other side of the border.

7.13 Compatibility between different systems (as per ECC Report 283 [40], ECC Report 292 112, ECC Report 99 [41], and ECC Report 97 [42])

7.13.1 Information is available on the following combinations of the systems

- LTE impact on PMR/PAMR systems with channel bandwidth up to 25 kHz (including paging and analogue PMR)
- LTE impact on narrowband fixed links

[39] ECC Report 276, Thresholds for the coordination of CDMA and LTE broadband systems in the 400 MHz band, 27 April 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/2014)

[40] ECC Report 283, Compatibility and sharing studies related to the introduction of broadband and narrowband systems in the bands 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz, 14 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/6033)

[41] https://docdb.cept.org/download/432

[42] https://docdb.cept.org/download/428

- LTE impact on radiolocation systems
- LTE impact on the radio astronomy service
- LTE impact on PMR links in audio-visual production
- LPWAN compatibility with TETRA
- LPWAN compatibility with the radiolocation service
- LPWAN compatibility with RAS (Radioastronomy)
- LPWAN compatibility with LTE
- LPWAN BS impact on LTE BS
- LTE BS impact on LPWAN BS
- LTE BS Impact on LPWAN End Device (ED)
- TEDS impact on PMR (Analogue FM, TETRA, TETRAPOL, CDMA-PAMR)
- PMR impact on TEDS
- Interference from and into Narrowband FM, TETRA, CDMA-PAMR, Flash OFDM

For example:

7.13.2 LPWAN and Radar: "For the co-channel cases in the 410-430 MHz frequency range, there is no possibility for compatibility between LPWAN system and airborne radar or LPWAN system and ground radar."

7.13.3 TETRA Base Station and LPWAN: "A guard band of 200 kHz is necessary between the TETRA base station (BS) and the LPWAN end device (ED). In the case of co-channel situation between TETRA and LPWAN systems, the minimum separation distance between base stations is more than 100 km."

7.13.4 LTE and Radioastronomy "Given the limited number of radio astronomy, it is expected a need of coordination for the deployment of LTE stations at distances lower that 250 km from a RAS station located in a neighbouring country".

8 Assignment

8.1 Standard Approach

8.1.1 The assignment of frequency will take place according to the Standard Application Procedures in the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015[43].

9 Amendments

9.1 The Authority will amend licences issued to all other services apart from digital public trunking services and other intended services listed in Section 3.5 above.

9.2 Upon publication of this RFSAP, the provisions of Regulation 6 of the Radio Frequency Migration Regulations 2013 shall be implemented.

[43] Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015, Government Gazette No. 38641, 30 March 2015. Available online at https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/Radio-Frequency-Spectrum-Regulations-2015.pdf .

10 Radio Frequency Migration.

10.1 The Authority will migrate all other services apart from digital public trunking services out of the band.

Appendix A National Radio Frequency Plan.

Table 22 shows an extract from the National Frequency Plan for South Africa.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
410-420 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-space) 5.268	410-420 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile SPACE RESEARCH (space-to-space) 5.268	Government Services Mobile MTX (410 – 413 MHz) Mobile Data MTX (413-413.7625 MHz) Digital Trunking MTX (413.7625 – 416.1 MHz) Mobile BTX (416.1 – 417.625 MHz) PMR and/or PAMR PPDR Communication links with an orbiting, manned space vehicle	Paired with BTX (420 – 423 MHz) (Government Services) Paired with BTX (423-423.7625 MHz) Paired with 423.7625 – 426.1 MHz Paired with MTX (406.1 – 407.625 MHz) The use of this band for PPDR to be studied. Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (GG No. 42337 Notice 36 of 2019)
420-430 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation	420-430 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation	Single Frequency Links (426.1 – 430 MHz) Digital Trunked Mobile BTX (420 – 423 MHz) Mobile Data BTX (423 – 423.7625 MHz) Digital Trunking BTX (423.7625 – 426.1 MHz) PMR and/or PAMR PPDR	Frequencies will only be assigned for SF links where migration above 1 GHz would be impractical Paired with 410 - 413 MHz (Government use) Paired with MTX (413 – 413.7625 MHz) Paired with MTX (413.7626 – 416.1 MHz) The use of this band for PPDR to be studied. Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (GG No. 42337 Notice 36 of 2019)

5.269 5.270 5.271			

Table 22: National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa for 410 - 430 MHz band[44]

[44] National Radio Frequency Plan 2021, (NRFP-21) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz, Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, Government Gazette No 46088, 25 March 2022 (https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/National-Radio-Frequency-Plan-2021.pdf)

Appendix B Interference Resolution Process

Technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements for the 4 geographical sub-regions are defined by the African Union, which includes the Southern African sub-region of 10 countries. Cross-Border Frequency Coordination and interference resolution should follow the Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A) [45] .

When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and the code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration affected. All of the following characteristics should be included:

a) carrier frequency (MHz);
b) name of transmitter station;
c) country of location of transmitter station;
d) geographical coordinates (latitude, longitude);
e) effective antenna height (m);
f) antenna polarisation;
g) antenna azimuth (degrees);
h) antenna gain (dBi);
i) effective radiated power (dBW);
j) expected coverage zone or radius (km);
k) date of entry into service (month, year);
l) code group number used; and
m) antenna tilt (degrees)

The Administration affected will evaluate the request for coordination and will, within thirty (30) days, notify the Administration requesting coordination the result of the evaluation. If, in the course of the coordination procedure, the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within (30) days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. Where the Administration fails to respond within thirty (30) days following communication of the reminder will be deemed to have given its consent, and the code coordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

The above-mentioned periods are subject to extension by common consent.

[45] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A) https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

Appendix C Coordination for LTE- and CDMA- Systems

PREFERENTIAL PHYSICAL-LAYER CELL IDENTITIES (PCI) FOR LTE[46] AND CODES FOR CDMA

The following is extracted from ECC/REC (11)05 and T/R 25-08 as an operational example and can be adapted for the SADC countries for LTE. A respective extract from ECC/REC (15)01 may be considered for expanding the same onto NR.

1. PCI coordination for LTE

PCI coordination is only needed when channel centre frequencies are aligned independently of the channel bandwidth.

3GPP TS 36.211[47] defines 168 "unique physical-layer cell-identity groups" in §6.11, numbered 0...167, hereafter called "PCI groups" for LTE. Within each PCI group, there are three separate PCIs giving 504 PCIs in total.

Administrations should agree on a repartition of these 504 PCIs on an equitable basis when channel centre frequencies are aligned, as shown in the table below. It has to be noted that dividing the PCI groups or PCIs is equivalent. Each country should only use their own preferential PCIs close to the border and can use all PCIs away from the border. This transition distance between "close to the border" and "away from the border" should be agreed between neighbouring countries.

Administrations may wish to define different field strength levels (than those provided in the main text referring to this Appendix) for non-preferential PCIs.

As shown in the table below, the PCIs should be divided into 6 sub-sets containing each one sixth of the available PCIs. Each country is allocated three sets (half of the PCIs) in a bilateral case and two sets (one third of the PCIs) in a trilateral case.

Four types of countries are defined in a way such that no country will use the same code set as any one of its neighbours. The following lists describe a sample distribution for African countries:

Country type 1: Botswana, Cameroon, Comoros, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Ghana, Guinea-Bissau, Kenya, Liberia, Malawi, Mauritius, Niger, Republic of the Sudan, Swaziland;

Country type 2: Algeria, Angola, Benin, Cape Verde, Chad, Cote d'Ivoire, Egypt, Ethiopia, Madagascar, Senegal, United Republic of Tanzania, Zimbabwe;

Country type 3: Burkina Faso, Congo, Djibouti, Equatorial Guinea, Guinea, Mauritania, Nigeria, Rwanda, Sao Tome and Principe, Seychelles, South Africa, South Sudan, Tunisia, Zambia;

---

[46] ECC/REC (11)05

[47] 3GPP TS 36.211 "Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access (E-UTRA); Physical channels and modulation". (https://portal.3gpp.org/desktopmodules/Specifications/SpecificationDetails.aspx?specificationId=2425, also provided in ETSI TS 136 211). In comparison, 3GPP 38.211 (and ETSI TS 138 211) define NR Physical channels and modulation, in NR 2-step identification using PSS/SSS detection of the Physical Cell ID (same as LTE), the number of different cell IDs has been increased from 504 in LTE to 1008 for NR. Thus, for the deployment of LTE systems only the PCIs between 0 to 503 should be used and for NR systems PCIs between 0 to 1007 may be used.

Country type 4: Burundi, Central African Republic, Eritrea, Gabon, Gambia, Lesotho, Libyan Arab Jamahiriya, Mali, Morocco, Mozambique, Namibia, Sierra Leone, Somalia, Togo, Uganda.

(Note: A sample country type map can be found in the figure below).

For each type of country, the following tables and figure describe the sharing of the PCIs with its neighbouring countries, with the following conventions of writing:

■	Preferential PCI
	Non-preferential PCI

The 504 physical-layer cell-identities should be divided into the following 6 sub-sets when the carrier frequencies are aligned in border areas:

								PCI	Set A	Set B	Set C	Set D	Set E	Set F
Country 1	0..83	84..167	168..251	252..335	336..419	420..503		Country 2	0..83	84..167	168..251	252..335	336..419	420..503
Border 1-2	■	■				■		Border 2-1			■	■	■	
Zone 1-2-3	■	■						Zone 2-3-1			■	■		
Border 1-3	■	■	■					Border 2-3		■	■	■		
Zone 1-2-4	■					■		Zone 2-1-4			■	■		
Border 1-4	■		■			■		Border 2-4			■	■		■
Zone 1-3-4	■		■					Zone 2-3-4			■	■		
PCI	Set A	Set B	Set C	Set D	Set E	Set F		PCI	Set A	Set B	Set C	Set D	Set E	Set F
Country 3	0..83	84..167	168..251	252..335	336..419	420..503		Country 4	0..83	84..167	168..251	252..335	336..419	420..503

Border 3-2							Border 4-1					
Zone 3-1-2							Zone 4-1-2					
Border 3-1							Border 4-2					
Zone 3-1-4							Zone 4-2-3					
Border 3-4							Border 4-3					
Zone 3-2-4							Zone 4-3-1					

Table 23: Sharing of PCIs between Countries

Notes

1) All PCIs are available in areas away from the border.

2) In certain specific cases (e.g., if Angola and Botswana happened to have the same Country type/PCI code) where the distance between two countries of the same type number is very small (below a few tens of kilometres), it may be necessary to address the situation in bilateral /multilateral coordination agreements as necessary and may include further subdivision of the allocated codes in certain areas.

3) The country type map is given in section 3.

2. Code coordination for CDMA

For code coordination each base station shall use a unique time offset of the pilot pseudo-noise (PN) sequence to identify a Forward CDMA Channel. Time offsets may be reused within a CDMA cellular system. Distinct pilot channels shall be identified by an offset index (0 through 511 inclusive). This offset index specifies the offset time from the zero-offset pilot PN sequence in multiples of 64 chips. The same pilot PN sequence offset shall be used on all CDMA frequency assignments for a given base station. To distinct signals with PN sequence offsets all base stations should be time synchronised, but such synchronisation is mandatory requirement for CDMA2000 standard.

Administrations should agree on a repartition of these offset indexes on an equitable basis. Each country should only use its own codes close to the border.

In border areas, codes will be divided into 6 "index sets" containing each one sixth of the available offset indexes. Each country is allocated three index sets (half of the indexes) in a bilateral case, and two index sets (one third of the indexes) in a trilateral case.

Four types of countries are defined in such a way that no country will use the same index set as any one of its neighbours. The following lists describe a sample distribution for African countries:

Country type 1: Botswana, Cameroon, Comoros, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Ghana, Guinea-Bissau, Kenya, Liberia, Malawi, Mauritius, Niger, Republic of the Sudan, Swaziland;

Country type 2: Algeria, Angola, Benin, Cape Verde, Chad, Cote d'Ivoire, Egypt, Ethiopia, Madagascar, Senegal, United Republic of Tanzania, Zimbabwe;

Country type 3: Burkina Faso, Congo, Djibouti, Equatorial Guinea, Guinea, Mauritania, Nigeria, Rwanda, Sao Tome and Principe, Seychelles, South Africa, South Sudan, Tunisia, Zambia;

Country type 4: Burundi, Central African Republic, Eritrea, Gabon, Gambia, Lesotho, Libyan Arab Jamahiriya, Mali, Morocco, Mozambique, Namibia, Sierra Leone, Somalia, Togo, Uganda.

For each type of country, the following tables and figure describe the sharing of the indexes with its neighbouring countries, with the following conventions of writing:

	■	Preferential index
		non-preferential index

	Set A	Set B	Set C	Set D	Set E	Set F			Set A	Set B	Set C	Set D	Set E	Set F
Country 1	2..83	88..168	173..253	258..338	343..423	428..509		Country 2	2..83	88..168	173..253	258..338	343..423	428..509
Border 1-2	■	■				■		Border 2-1			■	■	■	
Zone 1-2-3	■	■						Zone 2-3-1			■	■		
Border 1-3	■	■	■					Border 2-3		■	■	■		
Zone 1-2-4	■					■		Zone 2-1-4			■	■		
Border 1-4	■		■			■		Border 2-4			■	■		■
Zone 1-3-4	■		■					Zone 2-3-4			■	■		

	Set A	Set B	Set C	Set D	Set E	Set F			Set A	Set B	Set C	Set D	Set E	Set F
Country 3	2..83	88..168	173..253	258..338	343..423	428..509		Country 4	2..83	88..168	173..253	258..338	343..423	428..509
Border 3-2	■				■	■		Border 4-1		■		■	■	
Zone 3-1-2					■			Zone 4-1-2		■			■	
Border 3-1				■	■	■		Border 4-2	■	■			■	

Zone 3-1-4							Zone 4-2-3					
Border 3-4							Border 4-3					
Zone 3-2-4							Zone 4-3-1					

Table 24: Sharing of the indexes

Because of the time shifting mechanism for code generation, the situation can appear that propagation delay may lead to the synchronisation of two different base stations signals occurring in some parts of the service area. The average diameter of such correlation areas could be up to 245 meters (one chip duration multiplied on light speed). To prevent such situations in border areas it is recommended not to use some codes and to introduce 4 exclusion codes between neighbouring index sets what gives 78.125 km propagation path before a possible correlation area appears. This precludes any real synchronisation and will not affect network planning, causing a reduction of code space less than on 5% only in border areas.

Code sharing between two countries should be applied or used by base stations that exceed the relevant trigger level of only one neighbouring country. Code sharing between three countries should be applied or used by base stations that exceed the relevant trigger level of two neighbouring countries.

Notes

1) In certain specific cases (e.g., Angola / Botswana) where the distance between two countries of the same type number is very small (below few tens km), it may be necessary to address the situation in bilateral or multilateral coordination agreements as necessary and may include further subdivision of the allocated codes in certain areas.
2) The country type map is given in section 3.

3. Country type map (see below)

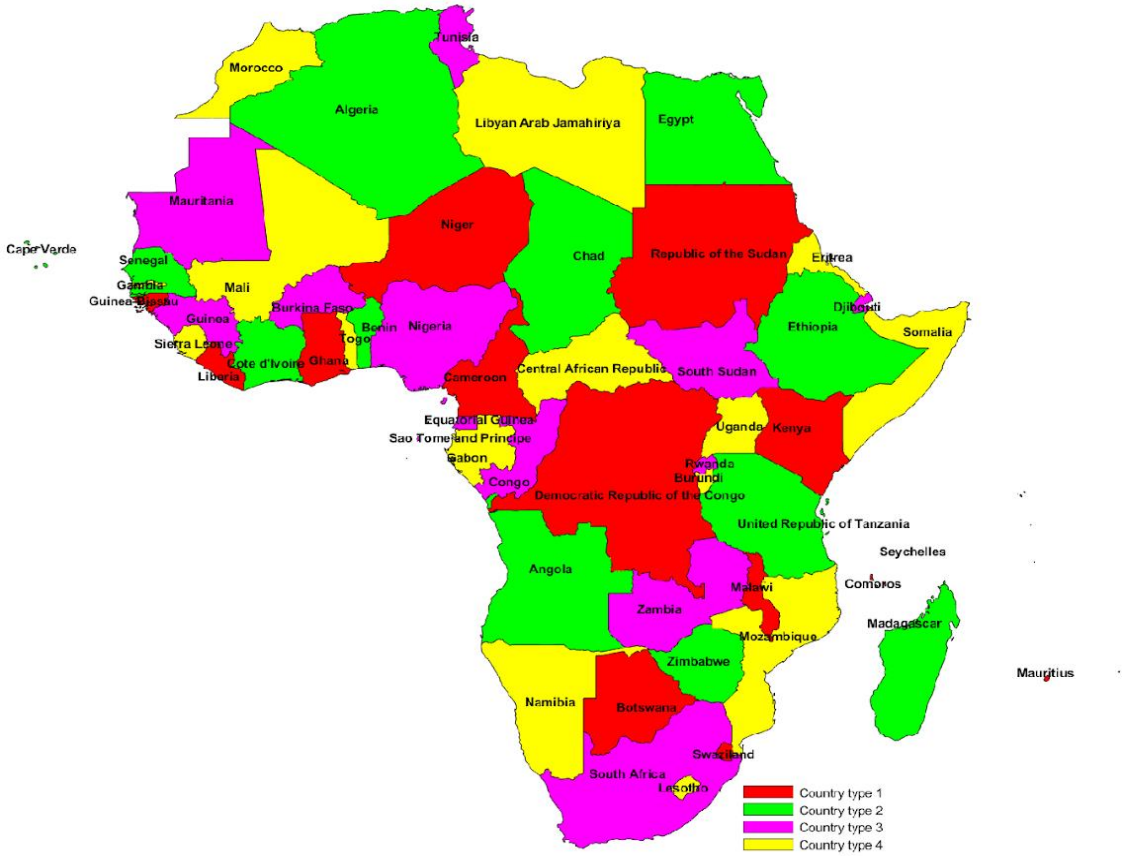


Figure 6: Country type map/PCI distribution map

4. GUIDANCE ON THE CONSIDERATION OF LTE RADIO PARAMETERS FOR USE IN BILATERAL AND MULTI LATERAL AGREEMENTS

4.1 This section is provided for guidance purposes for use in bi-lateral and multilateral discussions. For LTE, it may be beneficial to coordinate other radio parameters besides PCI in order to minimise deteriorating effects of uplink interference.

4.2 The parameters described in this section are usually optimised during LTE radio network planning of an operator's network. The idea of optimisation is to plan the parameters taking into account specific correlation properties of the uplink control signals, which enable more stable and predictable operation of the network. In the cross-border scenario the optimisation of parameters among neighbouring operators could provide better control of uplink interference. However, because of the difference between intra-network and inter-network interference and due to limited experience in the LTE cross-border deployment, it is difficult to assess the benefits of such optimisation. The following guidance provides the basis for operators to consider in border areas in case of high levels of uplink interference.

4.3 Demodulation Reference Signal (DM RS) coordination

4.3.1 Demodulation reference signals (DM RS) are transmitted in the uplink and used for channel estimation. There is a risk of intercell interference between neighbouring cells even in case of no frame synchronisation. That is why special measures for DM RS allocation between networks in neighbouring countries occupying the same channel may need to be applied.

4.3.2 The case of partial channel overlap has not been studied but due to DM RS occupying resource blocks of separate users, there is a risk of DM RS collisions between neighbouring networks when the subcarriers' positions coincide (the frequency offset between central carriers of neighbouring networks is multiple of 300 kHz). Some minor benefits from DM RS coordination in these particular cases could be expected.

4.3.3 There are a number of possible approaches to the coordination of DM RS:

- In the basic planning procedure, only 30 DM RS sequence groups with favourable correlation characteristics are available: {0…29}. In this case, each cell could be assigned one of the 30 DM RS sequence groups providing a cluster size of 30.
- It is possible to extend each DM RS sequence group to generate up to 12-time shifted sequence groups by applying the cyclic shift parameter stated in 3GPP TS 36.211 for LTE. For example, each tri-sector site could be assigned one DM RS sequence group with each co-sited cell having its own cyclic shift of $2\pi/3$, which provides cluster size 30 only with 10 DM RS sequence groups. The latter case corresponds well to the case of DM RS sequence groups repartition between neighbouring countries when only limited number of groups is available for network planning. The drawback of DM RS sequence group cyclic shift is a loss of orthogonally of DM RS due to fading channels which has been found during first trials of LTE and caused throughput loss as well as time alignment problems.
- Another approach for DM RS coordination is to implement dynamic DM RS sequence group allocation, also called pseudo-random group hopping. In this method, nearby cells are grouped into clusters up to 30 cells, and within each cell cluster, the same hopping-pattern is used. At the border of two clusters, inter-cell interference is averaged since two different hopping patterns are utilised. There are 17 defined hopping patterns, numbered {0…16}, which leads to some minor unfairness in case of apportioning these patterns between neighbouring countries. Even in a trilateral case each operator will have at least 5 hopping patterns available near the border, which should be enough for planning purposes. It should be noted the pseudo-random group hopping option could be absent in the first generations of LTE equipment.

The decision of which of these methods to use in cross-border coordination should be agreed upon by the interested parties. Specific DM RS sequence groups or hopping patterns repartition is not provided in this text but could be deduced in a similar manner to the PCI repartition.

5. Physical Random Access Channel (PRACH) coordination

Another radio network parameter that is considered during radio network planning is PRACH configuration which is needed to distinguish random access requests addressed to different cells. PRACH resources are allocated by specifying the PRACH Resource Blocks time positions within the uplink frame, their frequency position within the LTE channel bandwidth and by apportioning cell-

specific root sequences. During radio network planning, these parameters are usually used in the following way:

- time positions for PRACH resource allocations are usually used to create time collision of PRACH resources of co-sited/frame synchronised cells because PRACH-to-PRACH interference is usually less severe than PUSCH-to-PRACH interference;
- frequency positions within the LTE channel bandwidth are usually the same for all cells, again because PRACH-to-PRACH interference case is a more favourable one.
- cell-specific root sequences are used to distinguish between PRACH requests addressed to different cells.

For cross-border coordination, it is proposed to use frequency position offsets to exclude the possibility of so-called "ghost" PRACH requests caused by neighbouring networks. The PRACH is configured in LTE to use only 6 Resource Blocks or 1.08 MHz of the LTE channel bandwidth except in regions used by PUCCH. In case of overlapping or partially overlapping channel bandwidths of neighbouring networks, it is enough to establish non-overlapping PRACH frequency blocks to perform coordination. Because it is difficult to establish an implementation dependent procedure for such allocation, it will be the responsibility of operators to manage such frequency separation during coordination discussions.

In an early implementation, it is possible that a very limited number of frequency positions could be supported by LTE equipment which will not be enough to coordinate in the trilateral case. In such cases, root-sequence repartition could be used. There are 838 root sequences in total to be distributed between cells, numbered {0..837}. There are two numbering schemes for PRACH root sequences (physical and logical) and that only logical root sequences numbering needs to be used for coordination. Unfortunately, the process of root sequences planning doesn't involve direct mapping of root sequences between cells because the number of root sequences needed for one cell is dependent on the cell range. The table showing such interdependency is presented below:

PRACH Configuration	Number of root seq. per cell	Cell Range (km)
1	1	0.7
2	2	1
3	2	1.4
4	2	2
5	2	2.5
6	3	3.4
7	3	4.3
8	4	5.4
9	5	7.3
10	6	9.7
11	8	12.1
12	10	15.8
13	13	22.7
14	22	38.7
15	32	58.7
0	64	118.8

Table 25: PRACH – Range Interdependency

Thus, in the case of root sequence reparation, it will be the responsibility of radio network planners to assign the correct number of root sequences in order to not overlap with the root sequence ranges of other operators. It also should be noted that different root sequences have different cubic metrics and correlation properties, which affect PRACH coverage performance and planning of so-called high-speed cells. For simplicity of cross-border coordination, it is proposed to ignore these properties.

In summary, it should be stipulated that frequency separation of PRACH resources should be used as the main coordination method. PRACH root sequences repartition should be avoided and used only in exceptional cases. Specific PRACH root sequences repartition is not provided in this text but could be deduced in a similar manner to the PCI repartition.

Additional guidance for cross-border coordination of synchronised and unsynchronised LTE and 5G/NR TDD systems may be found in ECC/REC/ (15)01 [(48)] and ECC Report 296 [(49)].

Additional guidance on border code coordination between CDMA systems and additional information on coordination thresholds may be found in ECC Report 108 [50].

---

[48] ECC Recommendation (15)01 "Cross-border coordination for Mobile/Fixed Communications Networks (MFCN) in the frequency bands: 694-790 MHz, 1427-1518 MHz, and 3400-3800 MHz". Amended on 14 February 2020.

[49] ECC Report 296: "National synchronisation regulatory framework options in 3400-3800 MHz: a toolbox for coexistence of MFCNs in synchronised, unsynchronised, and semi-synchronised operation in 3400-3800 MHz", March 2019.

[50] https://docdb.cept.org/download/457

Appendix D - Guidelines To Ensure Co-Existence Between Land Mobile, non-3GPP Land Mobile, NB-IoT, and LPWAN

This section is based on ECC/DEC/ (19)02.

The technical requirements set out in sections 3 and 5 alone may not guarantee interference-free adjacent spectrum use in all cases.

The impact of LTE-based systems in the 400 MHz frequency ranges on narrowband PMR, DTT above 470 MHz, on radars, on the radio astronomy, on the fixed service, on PMR links in audio-visual production, on paging and SRD systems is described in ECC Report 283[51]. In this Report, the interference probability calculations have been performed for downlink capacity/traffic limited systems; results may differ for uplink capacity/traffic limited systems, which may tolerate a noise rise in UE receivers up to a level of the DL/UL imbalance.

One interference effect to be considered is the potential impact of Intermodulation Distortion in PMR receivers caused by neighbouring broadband signals. This is dependent on frequency offset of the LTE carrier from the victim PMR receiver, the received power, and the intermodulation performance of the victim PMR receiver at that frequency offset. No conclusion on the intermodulation effect from broadband interferers into narrow band victims could be reached in ECC Report 283 and additional investigations will be conducted within ECC.

ECC Report 283 considers that compatibility between LTE systems in the 410-430 MHz band and the Radio astronomy service below 410 MHz is possible provided that minimum frequency separation and separation distances are implemented.

LPWAN:

ECC Report 283[52] considered a guard-band of 200 kHz between the TETRA base station (BS) and the LPWAN end device. This guard band is needed to minimise the interference from TETRA BS transmitter to LPWAN end device receiver.

ECC Report 283 considered the compatibility between a LPWAN system and airborne radars in the 410-430 MHz range is possible with a minimum guard band of 0.5 MHz from operating frequency edges.

ECC Report 283 considers the compatibility between LPWAN system in the band 410-430 MHz and the radio astronomy service below 410 MHz is possible under the condition of minimum frequency separation and separation distances are implemented.

LPWAN gateways (base stations) can operate with duty cycle limitations, if needed for compatibility reasons with adjacent services.

ECC Report 283 identified, based on measurements that compatibility with adjacent LTE is ensured with an improvement of the LPWAN receiver adjacent channel selectivity by 30 dB.

---

[51] ECC Report 283, Compatibility and sharing studies related to the introduction of broadband and narrowband systems in the bands 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz, 14 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/6033)

[52] *Ibid*.

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

NO. 3767 **4 August 2023**

HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING THE FINAL RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT PLANS FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 440 MHz TO 450 MHz IN TERMS OF REGULATION 3 OF THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATIONS, 2015

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the **Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 440 MHz to 450 MHz** in terms of regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations, 2015, read with the Radio Frequency Migration Regulation 2013, the 2013 and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plans.

YOLISA KEDAMA
ACTING CHAIRPERSON

Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band
440 MHz to 450 MHz

Table of Contents

1 Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise:

"Act"	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005) as amended
"Administration"	means any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002).
"DF"	means Dual Frequency
"DMR"	means Digital Mobile Radio
"EIRP"	means Effective Isotropic Radiated Power
"ERP"	means Effective Radiated Power
"FAP"	means Frequency Allocation Plan
"ITU"	means the International Telecommunication Union
"ITU-R"	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
"NRFP"	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 for South Africa
"PAMR"	means Private Access Mobile Radio
"PMR"	means Public Mobile Radio
"PPDR"	means Public Protection and Disaster Recovery
"RFSAP"	means Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
"SADC"	means Southern African Development Community

2 Purpose

2.1 The Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) provides information on the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other information in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP). This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency

channelling, coordination, and details on required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment.

2.2 This RFSAP states the requirements for the utilization of the frequency band 440 MHz - 450 MHz. The latest National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 aligns the allocation of this frequency band with the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) table with primary allocations to Fixed and Mobile. In this latest plan, too, there is an additional primary allocation for SPACE OPERATION (Earth-to-space) and SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) in South Africa.

2.3 The Authority resolved the following in the Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019[1]

2.3.1 A feasibility study into the possibility to use the band 440 MHz – 450 MHz for Public Protection and Disaster Recovery (PPDR) is to be performed.

2.3.2 A Radio Frequency Assignment Plan is to be developed.

2.3.3 The proposed allocations for this band are Short Range Business Radio and Public Mobile Radio (PMR[2]) services *only*. The band should be cleared of all other users. Communal repeaters can be allocated in this band.

2.4 Therefore, a feasibility study was carried out concerning the 440-450 MHz band[3] as mandated by the 2019[4] Radio Frequency migration plan.

2.5 However, at the conclusion of the feasibility study into this band[5], the Authority has concluded the following:

2.5.1 The Authority concludes that its thinking on this band at this stage is that there is a high risk of leading to more inefficient use of this spectrum band if it proceeds with a PPDR allocation and subsequent PPDR-based RFSAP. This is because the Authority has seen little to no evidence of a PPDR ecosystem emerging in this band as for other bands like 410-430 MHz and 450-470 MHz as was envisaged five years to a decade ago, and there is a strong case for maintaining the status quo and taking a longer-term outlook watching brief (i.e., > 3 years) for the band.

2.5.2 The Authority will also closely watch the activities happening in 446-446.2 MHz on Analogue and Digital PMR[6] to make any further decisions given developments in Europe.

---

[1] ICASA. 2019. Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019. Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019.

[2] Some key technical parameters for 446-446.1 MHz band short range devices (SRD) are listed in: Regulations in Respect of Licence Exemptions, Government Gazette No 31290 (Notice 926 of 2008), 29 July 2008.

[3] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

[4] ICASA. 2019. Radio Frequency Migration Plan 2019. Government Gazette No 42337, 29 March 2019.

[5] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

[6] EN 303 405 Analogue and Digital PMR446 Equipment.

2.6 So, the intention of this RFSAP is to leave the band as it is today. The most recent ITU and Southern African Development Community (SADC) allocations are shown in Tables 1 and 2 for completeness.

Region 1	Region 2	Region 3
440–450	FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation 5.269 5.270 5.271 5.284 5.285 5.286	

Table 1: ITU frequency allocations for the 440-450 MHz band.

440-450 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile Radiolocation 5.269 5.270 5.271 5.284 5.285 5.286	**440-450 MHz** FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile 5.286	PMR and/or PAMR PPDR PMR446 (446-446.1 MHz) FIXED (telemetry, dual frequency alarm systems)	The use of this band for PPDR to be studied. PMR446-ERC/DEC/(98)25

Table 2: SADC Radio Frequency Spectrum Allocation Plan[7] for the 440-450 MHz band

3 General

3.1 Technical characteristics of the equipment used for Fixed, Mobile, SPACE OPERATION (Earth-to-space) and SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) shall conform to all applicable South African standards, international standards, ITU and its radio regulations as agreed and adopted by South Africa

3.2 All installations must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.

3.3 The equipment used shall be certified under South African law and regulations.

3.4 The allocation of this frequency band and the information in this RFSAP are subject to review.

3.5 Frequency band's sub-allocations will be as per South Africa's National Radio Frequency Plan for the 440-450 MHz band, as shown in Appendix A (Table 4).

3.6 The following documents may also be useful when considering the 440-450 MHz band:

- Decision (EU) 2019/1345, Commission Implementing Decision (EU) 2019/1345 of 2 August 2019 amending Decision 2006/771/EC updating harmonised technical conditions in the area of radio spectrum use for short-range devices (notified under document C (2019) 5660) (Text with EEA relevance.), 2 August 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/12983)

[7] SADC Radio Frequency Spectrum Allocation Plan (SADC RFSAP) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz, Edition 2021, https://assets.website-files.com/5fb8ce4adbd6ad2ccc1423e7/612fe72be15121775ae6a121_2021%20SADC%20RADIO%20FREQUENCY%20SPECTRUM%20ALLOCATION%20PLAN.%20docx%5B1%5D.pdf

- ECC/DEC/ (19)02, ECC Decision of 8 March 2019 on Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz, and 450-470 MHz, 8 March 2019. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9680)
- T/R 25-08, Recommendation T/R of 30 May 2008 on Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz. Latest amended on 28 September 2018.
- ECC/DEC/ (15)05, ECC Decision of 3 July 2015 on the harmonised frequency range 446.0-446.2 MHz, technical characteristics, exemption from individual licensing and free carriage and use of analogue and digital PMR 446 applications. Amended on 2 March 2018.
- Decision (EU) 2017/1483, Commission Implementing Decision (EU) 2017/1483 of 8 August 2017 amending Decision 2006/771/EC on harmonisation of the radio spectrum for use by short-range devices and repealing Decision 2006/804/EC, 8 August 2017.
- CEPT Report 059, Annual update of the technical annex of the Commission Decision on the technical harmonisation of radio spectrum for use by short range device Addendum to the report is also to be found here, 17 June 2016.
- ECC Report 199, User requirements and spectrum needs for future European broadband PPDR systems (Wide Area Networks), 30 May 2013.
- ECC Report 099, TETRA Enhanced Data Services (TEDS): Impact on existing PMR/PAMR and Air Ground Air (AGA) systems in the 400 MHz band, 20 September 2007.
- ECC Report 097, Cross Border Interference for Land Mobile Technologies, 20 February 2007.
- ECC Report 102, Public protection and disaster relief spectrum requirements, 6 February 2007.
- CEPT Report 011, Report from CEPT to the European Commission in response to the Mandate on: EFIS (ECO Frequency Information System), 27 September 2006.
- ERC Report 075, Narrowband return path two way paging compatibility studies in the 406.1 - 410 MHz, 440 - 470 MHz and 862 - 871 MHz bands, 1999-05-01
- ETSI EN 303 405 V1.1.1 (2017-05) Land Mobile Service; Analogue and Digital PMR446 Equipment; Harmonised Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.2 of Directive 2014/53/EU[8].

4 Channelling Plan

4.1 The frequency band 440 - 450 MHz will be assigned according to Figure 1.

[8] https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_en/303400_303499/303405/01.01.01_60/en_303405v010101p.pdf

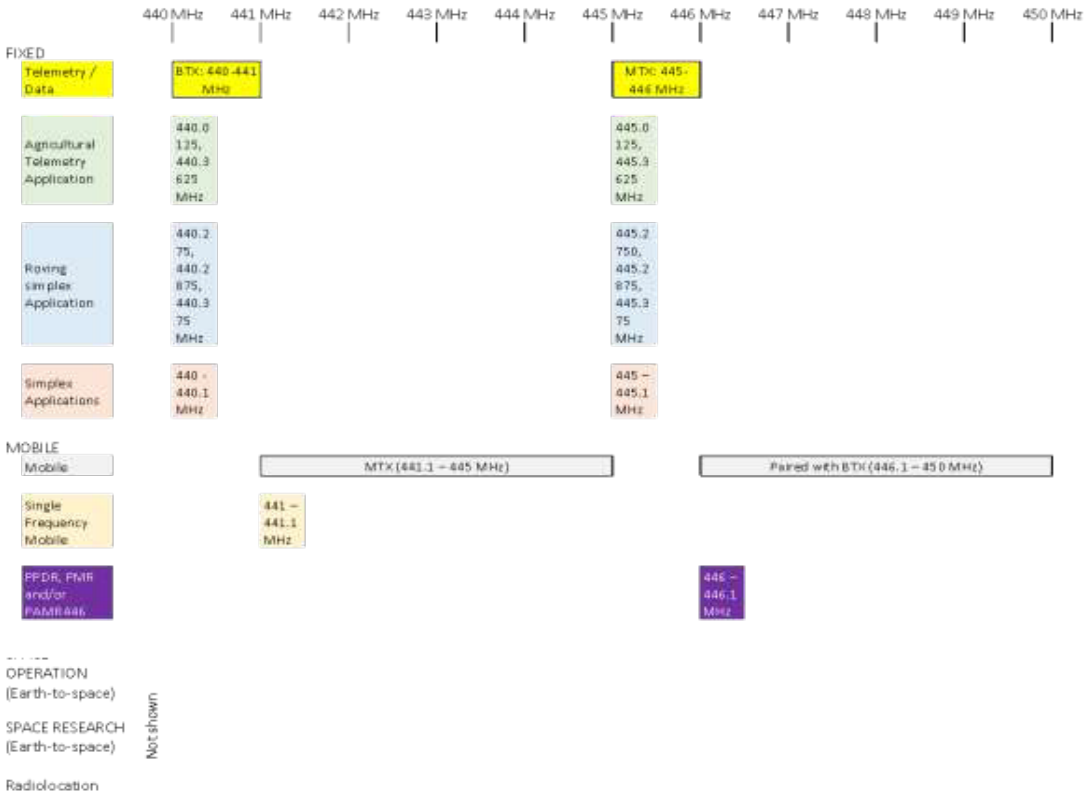


Figure 1. Band allocation, as per National Table of Frequency Allocations (see Appendix A). The allocations are shown as ranges or centre frequencies of the channels (separated by commas).

More details follow.

4.2 Channelling arrangements for analogue and digital land mobile systems with channel spacing of up to 25 kHz, of 50 kHz, 100 kHz, or 150 kHz, as guided by T/R 25-08 [9], is recommended to follow the following approach.

The channel centre frequencies (hereinafter called *centre frequencies*) use the following *preferred formula*. This preferred formula should be used whenever possible, but at least in new and re-farmed bands:

$$F_{CH} = \textit{Band Edge} - (\text{Channel Spacing}/2) + n \times \text{Channel Spacing},$$

Where:

F_{CH} = channel centre frequency
n = 1, 2, 3,… - channel number;

[9] Recommendation T/R 25-08, Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz, Approved 15 January 1990. Amended 28 September 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/document/909, https://docdb.cept.org/download/2544)

Band Edge is the lower edge of allocated frequency band, i.e., 440 MHz.

For systems using a channel spacing of 200 kHz the centre frequencies should be selected according to the preferred formula with an option to offset these centre frequencies by 100 kHz.

4.2.1 Duplex or two-frequency simplex channel separation, location of sub-bands and guard bands [10]

4.2.2 A sub-band can be simplex or duplex. The lower and upper part of a duplex sub-band should be in the same allocated band.

4.2.3 The frequencies of emissions of base or repeater stations should be placed in the upper band and those of mobile stations in the lower band. The same positions of upper and lower bands should be selected for bordering/adjacent countries.

4.2.4 The channel centre frequency of a digital land mobile system using a channel spacing greater than 25 kHz may be selected in a way that the channel pertaining to the centre frequency with its nominal channel spacing falls entirely into a sub-band and does not overlap the guard band necessary around the edges of simplex sub-bands and the edges of the lower parts and upper parts of duplex sub-bands.

4.2.5 For Analogue and Digital Public Mobile Radio (PMR) in the band 446-446.2 MHz, the requirements are listed in Government Gazette No 45690 dated 24 December 2021 (replacing the channelisation scheme provided in Government Gazette 38641 dated 30 March 2015 which was compliant to 34.4) and refer to ETSI EN 303 405 [11] and CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03 [12].

4.2.6 The sub-band 440 - 441 MHz, follows Figure 3 above instead:

For low-power wide area networks (LPWAN) using the band 440 – 441 MHz, Government Gazette No 42230 [13] provides the following channel arrangements:

---

[10] ECC Recommendation T/R 25-08, Planning criteria and coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz. http://spectrum.welter.fr/international/cept/erc-recommendations/erc-recommendation-25-08-public-land-mobile-29-MHz-470-MHz.pdf

[11] ETSI EN 303 405 V1.1.1 (2017-05) Land Mobile Service; Analogue and Digital PMR446 Equipment; Harmonised Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.2 of Directive 2014/53/EU. (https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_en/303400_303499/303405/01.01.01_60/en_303405v010101p.pdf)

[12] ERC Recommendation 70-03, Relating to the use of Short Range Devices (SRD), Tromsø 1997, Subsequent amendments 12 February 2021 (https://docdb.cept.org/download/25c41779-cd6e/Rec7003e.pdf).

[13] Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan: Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band 440 to 441 MHz, Government Gazette No 42230, 15 February 2019, pages 212 - 222. (https://archive.opengazettes.org.za/archive/ZA/2019/government-gazette-ZA-vol-644-no-42230-dated-2019-02-15.pdf)

1. The 440 MHz to 441 MHz frequency band is split into a total of five 125 kHz bandwidth channels.
2. These channels have a guard-band between them and are spaced 200 kHz apart as shown in Figure 2 and Table 3.

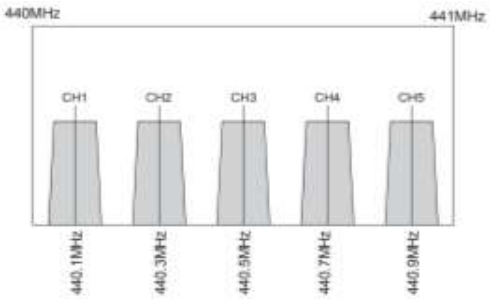


Figure 2. LPWAN channels in 440-441 MHz visualised

CHANNEL	CENTER FREQ	BANDWIDTH (kHz)
1	440.100MHz	125kHz
2	440.300MHz	125kHz
3	440.500MHz	125kHz
4	440.700MHz	125kHz
5	440.900MHz	125kHz

Table 3: LPWAN channels in 440-441 MHz

3. The frequency band 440 – 441 MHz provides a total bandwidth of 1 MHz for burglar alarms and related security telemetry services.

4.2.7 For PMR446 associated with the band 446.0 – 446.2 MHz, the guidance on channelisation is provided in ETSI EN 303 405 6 and ECC/DEC/(15)05 [14].

5 Requirements for usage of radio frequency spectrum

5.1 This chapter covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary in order to make the best use of the available frequencies.

5.2 The use of the band is limited to Fixed, Mobile and SPACE OPERATION (Earth-to-space) and SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) on Primary basis.

5.3 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.4 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP), and an extract of NRFP is shown in Appendix A.

5.5 Maximum radiated power is specified through the Type Approval process for the equipment used.

5.6 In addition to §5.5 above, the land mobile systems with channel bandwidths of 6.25 kHz, 12.5 kHz and 25 kHz, 50 kHz, 100 kHz, 150 kHz, and 200 kHz (the same

[14] ECC Decision (15)05, The harmonised frequency range 446.0-446.2 MHz, technical characteristics, exemption from individual licensing and free carriage and use of analogue and digital PMR 446 applications. Approved 3 July 2015. Amended 2 March 2018. (https://docdb.cept.org/download/1491)

requirements apply for channel bandwidth **between** 6.25 kHz and 200 kHz) should comply with requirements listed in ECC/DEC/ (19)02 [15], including

5.6.1 Within the wanted channel at the carrier frequency, the effective radiated power used shall comply with the authorisation conditions. Normal effective radiated power emissions within the wanted channel do normally not exceed 40 dBm for user equipment and 53 dBm for base station equipment.

5.6.2 **Transmitter Adjacent and Alternate Adjacent Channel Power**: The power in the first two lower and upper adjacent channels, shall not exceed a value of 60 dBc below the transmitter output power without the need to be below -36 dBm ERP. These limits are valid for all base stations, user equipment and repeaters.

5.6.3 **Transmitter Unwanted Emissions in The Spurious Domain**: The unwanted emissions within the spurious domain during operation shall not exceed -36 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -30 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz. In standby mode, the unwanted emissions shall not exceed -57 dBm for frequencies up to 1 GHz and shall not exceed -47 dBm for frequencies above 1 GHz.

5.6.4 **Transmitter Intermodulation Attenuation**: This requirement applies only to transmitters to be used in base stations or repeaters. Intermodulation attenuation is a measure of the capability of a transmitter to inhibit the generation of signals in its non-linear elements caused by the presence of the transmitter power and an interfering signal entering the transmitter via its antenna. In general, the intermodulation attenuation ratio shall be at least 40 dB for any intermodulation component. Note that the Administration may require a more stringent intermodulation attenuation requirement for base station equipment to be used in special service conditions, e.g., at sites where more than one transmitter will be in service, this is recommended to be at least 70 dB for any intermodulation component.

5.6.5 **Transmitter Adjacent Channel Transient Power:** Transient power is the power falling into adjacent spectrum due to switching the transmitter on and off. The transient power in the adjacent channels (e.g., caused by push-to-talk functionality) shall not exceed -60 dBc in the adjacent channels, or -50 dBc for equipment, without the need to be below -36 dBm.

5.6.6 **Receiver Adjacent Channel Selectivity**: The adjacent channel selectivity is the measure of the capability of the receiver of the land mobile system to receive a wanted modulated signal at the nominal operating frequency without exceeding a given degradation due to the presence of another land mobile system in assumed 25 kHz channels adjacent to the channel bandwidth for which the equipment is intended. E.g., the centre of an

[15] ECC Decision (19)02, Land mobile systems in the frequency ranges 68-87.5 MHz, 146-174 MHz, 406.1-410 MHz, 410-430 MHz, 440-450 MHz and 450-470 MHz. Approved 8 March 2019 (https://docdb.cept.org/download/1455)

adjacent channel relative to the centre of the nominal channel is at +/- 62.5 kHz for a land mobile system operating with a 100 kHz channel bandwidth. The adjacent channel selectivity is described with the following table:

Channel bandwidth	Unwanted signal levels
Up to 200 kHz	-37 dBm

5.6.7 **Receiver blocking: Blocking** is the measure of the capability of the receiver to receive a wanted modulated signal without exceeding a given degradation due to the presence of an unwanted input signal at any frequencies outside of the wanted channel and the first two lower and upper adjacent. The blocking level shall not be less than -27 dBm.

5.6.8 The blocking level shall not be less than -27 dBm. It is possible that interference may still occur despite fulfilling the above requirements. If interference, guidance provided in Appendix B will may be followed.

5.7 In addition to §5.5 above, for Analogue and Digital Public Mobile Radio (PMR) in the band 446-446.2 MHz, the requirements listed in Government Gazette No 45690 dated 24 December 2021 [16] (e.g., maximum radiated power 500 mW ERP) must be complied to.

5.8 In addition to 5.5, as per Government Gazette 42230, all transmissions from any low power wide area networks/burglar alarms and security related telemetry operating in 400 – 401 MHz band, should not exceed 100 mW (20 dBm) EIRP.

5.9 On a case-by-case basis, higher EIRP may be permitted. In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if major interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

6 Implementation

6.1 This RFSAP shall be effective on the date of issue.

6.2 No new assignment for the band 440 – 450 MHz shall be approved unless they comply with this RFSAP.

7 Co-ordination Requirements

7.1 Coordination is performed by the Authority during the process of assignment.

7.2 Planning characteristics in border areas

The location, the power, and the antenna heights of all stations in the network should be selected in such a way that their range is confined, as far as possible, to the zone to be covered by the intended service.

[16] Amendment of the radio frequency spectrum regulations, 2015, Government Gazette No 45690, 24 December 2021 (https://www.gov.za/sites/default/files/gcis_document/202112/45690gen737.pdf).

Excessive antenna heights and transmitter outputs should be avoided, by using several locations of reduced height wherever possible. In border areas directional antennas should be used to minimise the interference potential.

The effective radiated power and the height of the antenna should be as low as possible in relation to the area to be served.

7.3 In the event of any interference, the Authority will require affected parties to carry out coordination. If the interference continues to be unresolved after 24 hours, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution. The Authority will decide the necessary modifications and schedule of modifications to resolve the dispute. The Authority will be guided by the interference resolution process as shown in Appendix B.

7.4 Assignment holders shall take full advantage of interference mitigation techniques such as antenna discrimination, tilt, polarization, frequency discrimination, shielding/blocking (introduce diffraction loss), site selection, and/or power control to facilitate the coordination of systems.

7.5 Indicative coordination thresholds for analogue or digital land mobile systems, as per T/R 25-08 [17]

7.5.1 The aim of coordination thresholds is to avoid harmful interference between stations located in neighbouring countries. To achieve this, indicative coordination thresholds are established which should not be exceeded without coordination between neighbouring countries.

7.5.2 Indicative coordination thresholds for land mobile systems (co-channel, 50% locations, 10% time [18], 10 m receiving antenna height, within a reference bandwidth of 25 kHz, at the border-line) is 20 dB(µV/m).

7.5.3 For systems using a channel spacing greater than 25 kHz, the following bandwidth conversion formula can be used provided that the spectral power distribution within this channel spacing is uniform within the channel:

$$BC = 10 \times \log_{10} (\text{channel spacing} / 25 \text{ kHz}), \text{dB}$$

7.5.4 The value (BC) resulting from the formula should be added to the indicative coordination threshold as listed above.

7.5.5 For all other spectral power distributions, indicative coordination threshold levels should be applied within every 25 kHz bandwidth within the channel spacing.

---

[17] Recommendation T/R 25-08: "Planning criteria and cross-border coordination of frequencies for land mobile systems in the range 29.7-470 MHz", Approved 15 January 1990, Amended 28 September 2018, https://docdb.cept.org/document/909

[18] In certain situations, the 1% time curves should be used for digital systems, e.g. to better protect analogue systems.

8 Assignment

8.1 Standard Approach

The assignment of frequency will take place according to the Standard Application Procedures in the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015.

9 Amendments

9.1 Not applicable.

10 Frequency Migration

10.1 Specific Procedure

There is no specific technical procedure needed.

Appendix A National Radio Frequency Plan

Table 4 shows an extract from the National Frequency Plan for South Africa.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
440-450 MHz FIXED	440-450 MHz FIXED	Telemetry / Data BTX (440 – 441 MHz) FIXED (telemetry, dual frequency alarm systems) Agricultural Telemetry Application Roving simplex Application	Paired with MTX (445 – 446 MHz) Channels 440.0125, 440.3625, 445.0125 and 445.3625 MHz are used for Agricultural Telemetry. Channels 440.275 MHz, 440.2875 MHz, 445.2750 MHz, 445.2875 MHz, 440.375 MHz, and 445.375 MHz are roving simplex channels.
MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	MOBILE except aeronautical mobile	Simplex Applications Mobile MTX (441.1 – 445 MHz) Single Frequency Mobile (441 – 441.1 MHz) PPDR, PMR and/or PAMR446 (446 – 446.1 MHz)	Channels 440 - 440.100 MHz and 445 – 445.1 MHz are used as simplex. Paired with BTX (446.1 – 450 MHz) 8 channels - PMR446-ERC/DEC/ (98)25 Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan GG 42230 Notice 74 of 2019 Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations (Annex B) (GG. No. 38641, 30 March 2015). Further studies Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (GG No .42337 Notice 36 of 2019)
Radiolocation 5.269 5.270 5.271 5.284 5.285 5.286	SPACE OPERATION (Earth-to-space) SPACE RESEARCH (Earth-to-space) Radiolocation 5.269 5.270 5.271 5.284 5.285 5.286		

Table 4: National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa for 440 to 450 MHz band[19]

[19] National Radio Frequency Plan 2021, (NRFP-21) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz, Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, Government Gazette No 46088 (Notice 911 of 2022), 25 March 2022 (https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/National-Radio-Frequency-Plan-2021.pdf)

Appendix B Interference Resolution Process

Technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements for four (4) geographical sub-regions are defined by the African Union, which includes the Southern African sub-region of ten (10) countries. Cross-Border Frequency Coordination and interference resolution should follow the Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HIPSSA[20] and (HCM4A)[21] or any appropriate methos applicable.

When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and the code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration affected. All the following characteristics should be included:

a) carrier frequency (MHz)
b) name of transmitter station
c) country of location of transmitter station
d) geographical coordinates (latitude, longitude)
e) effective antenna height (m)
f) antenna polarisation
g) antenna azimuth (degrees)
h) antenna gain (dBi)
i) effective radiated power (dBW)
j) expected coverage zone or radius (km)
k) date of entry into service (month, year).
l) code group number used
m) antenna tilt (degrees)

The Administration affected will evaluate the request for coordination and will, within thirty (30) days, notify the Administration requesting coordination the result of the evaluation. If, in the course of the coordination procedure, the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within (30) days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. Where the Administration fails to respond within thirty (30) days following communication of the reminder will be deemed to have given its consent, and the code coordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

---

[20] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A), Agreement. HIPSSA - Harmonization of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa, ITU, 2013, 54pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

[21] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination Agreement Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A): On the coordination of frequencies between 29.7 MHz and 43.5 GHz For the fixed service and the land mobile service. Adopted on (01.01.2022). DRAFT, 25pp. Available online at https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/PRIDA/PublishingImages/Pages/default/HCM4A_2022_%20Main%20text_and%20annex%2012%20_EN_v.0.pdf

The above-mentioned periods are subject to extension by common consent.

INDEPENDENT COMMUNICATIONS AUTHORITY OF SOUTH AFRICA

NO. 3768 **4 August 2023**

HEREBY ISSUES A NOTICE REGARDING THE FINAL RADIO FREQUENCY ASSIGNMENT PLANS FOR THE FREQUENCY BAND 1518 MHz TO 1525 MHz IN TERMS OF REGULATION 3 OF THE RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATIONS, 2015

1. The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa ("the Authority"), hereby publishes the Final **Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan for the frequency band 1518 MHz to 1525 MHz** in terms of regulation 3 of the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations, 2015, read with the Radio Frequency Migration Regulation 2013, the 2013 and 2019 Radio Frequency Migration Plans.

YOLISA KEDAMA
ACTING CHAIRPERSON

Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan

Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band
1518 MHz to 1525 MHz

Table of Contents

1 Glossary

In this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, terms used shall have the same meaning as in the Electronic Communications Act 2005 (no. 36 of 2005); unless the context indicates otherwise:

"Act"	means the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act No. 36 of 2005) as amended
"Administration"	means any governmental department or service responsible for discharging the obligations undertaken in the Constitution of the International Telecommunication Union, in the Convention of the International Telecommunication Union and in the Administrative Regulations (CS 1002).
"CEPT"	means European Conference of Postal and Telecommunications Administrations
"DF"	means Dual Frequency
"DM RS"	means Demodulation Reference Signal
"GSO"	means Geostationary Orbit (for satellites)
"IMT"	means International Mobile Telecommunications
"ITU"	means the International Telecommunication Union;
"ITU-R"	means the International Telecommunication Union Radiocommunication Sector
"MSS"	means Mobile-Satellite Service (or Mobile-Satellite radiocommunication Service), defined in Article 1.25 of the ITU Radio Regulations
"NRFP"	means the National Radio Frequency Plan 2021 for South Africa
"RFSAP"	means the Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan
"SF"	means Single Frequency
"STL"	means Studio Transmitter Link
"WRC-03"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2003
"WRC-07"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2007
"WRC-12"	means the world Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2012
"WRC-15"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Geneva in 2015
"WRC-19"	means the World Radiocommunications Conference held in Sharm el-Sheikh in 2019

2 Purpose

2.1 The Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) provides information of the requirements attached to the use of a frequency band in line with the allocation and other

information in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP). This information includes technical characteristics of radio systems, frequency channelling, coordination, and details on the required migration of existing users of the band and the expected method of assignment.

This RFSAP states the requirements for the utilization of the frequency band between 1518 MHz and 1525 MHz for Fixed, Mobile, and Mobile-Satellite services.

2.2 This follows the feasibility study concerning the 1518 - 1525 MHz band[1], as mandated by the Frequency Band Migration Regulation and Plan contained in the IMT Roadmap 2014[2] and IMT Roadmap 2019[3].

2.3 This Authority decision is consistent with the ITU allocations for the 1518 - 1525 MHz band, as shown in Table 1. The whole band is allocated for Mobile, Fixed and Mobile-Satellite services on a primary basis within Region 1.

2.4 Table 3 (Appendix A) shows the National Frequency Plan for South Africa for the 1518 - 1525 MHz band. In the table, it is clearly stipulated that the band 1518 - 1559 MHz is identified for the satellite component of IMT, i.e., Resolution 225[4] applies, for the IMT Satellite component and Single Frequency Links (1517 – 1525 MHz). The 2019 RFSAP[5] also stated "the requirements for the utilisation of the frequency band between 1518 MHz and 1525 MHz for the IMT Satellite component and Single Frequency Links (1517 – 1525 MHz)". The single frequency links are typically used in private and communal radio repeaters which boost and retransmit weak radio signals across a wider area. The satellite component of IMT provides users with quality telecommunication services primarily on a global coverage basis and is most economic outside those areas covered by the terrestrial component.

2.5 The 2019 RFSAP further stated, "the RFSAP seeks to ensure that there is no harmful interference to IMT Satellite Systems and to assign for single frequency links where there is no harmful interference to IMT Satellite services". The 2019 RFSAP also stated that "this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan supersedes any previous spectrum assignment arrangements for the same spectrum location", and that a feasibility study needs to be conducted in order to implement the requirements of the existing RFSAP 2019.

2.6 The Authority has concluded on encouraging a mixed use of the band for Fixed, Mobile, and Mobile-Satellite services. The intention of this RFSAP is ensure both Fixed and Mobile usage of the band, whilst ensuring that there is no harmful interference to any future IMT Satellite Systems – and to assign for single frequency links (Fixed links) where there is no harmful interference to IMT Satellite services.

3 General

3.1 Technical characteristics of the equipment used in Single Frequency Links (Fixed Services), Mobile Services and IMT Satellite shall conform to all applicable South African standards, international standards, International Telecommunications Union (ITU) and its radio regulations as agreed and adopted by South Africa

---

[1] Implementation of the Radio Frequency Migration Plan and the International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) Roadmap for public consultation, Government Gazette No. 45690, 24 December 2021.

[2] Final (Draft) IMT Roadmap 2014, Government Gazette Vol. 593 Pretoria, 14 November 2014 No. 38213

[3] Final (Draft) IMT Roadmap 2019, Government Gazette Vol. 645, 29 March 2019 No. 42361

[4] https://www.itu.int/dms_pub/itu-r/oth/0c/0a/R0C0A00000C0034PDFE.pdf

[5] Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan, Rules for Services operating in the Frequency Band 1518 MHz to 1525 MHz Government Gazette No. 42337 435, 29 March 2019

3.2 All installations must comply with safety rules as specified in applicable standards.

3.3 The equipment used shall be certified under South African law and regulations.

3.4 The allocation of this frequency band and the information in this Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan (RFSAP) are subject to review.

3.5 Frequency bands assigned for the IMT Satellite component include bands 1518 – 1525 MHz.

3.6 Frequency bands assigned for Single Frequency Links include bands 1517 – 1525 MHz.

3.7 WRC-03 and WRC-07 allocated this additional spectrum to the mobile satellite service to complement existing L-band allocations used by numerous satellite operators. Therefore, the band 1518 – 1525 MHz is sometimes called "Extended L band" for MSS, referring to satellite user terminals operating in the band 1518 to 1525 MHz (space to Earth), with the terminals transmitting to the satellite in the band 1670 MHz to 1675 MHz (Earth to space). In general, the wider band 1518 - 1559 MHz band is used by several GSO MSS operators, including Inmarsat, to provide vital communication services to ships, aircraft, and land mobile users.

3.8 This Satellite component of IMT is applicable for the provision of the satellite service. The typical technical and operational characteristics identified as appropriate by the ITU are described in the following documents

- This band is identified as being available for the satellite component of IMT, and some of the services offered by MSS operators form part of the "satellite component for IMT-2000", as defined by Recommendation ITU-R M. 1850-2 (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1850);
- ITU-R Recommendation M.1391: Methodology for the calculation of IMT-2000 satellite spectrum requirements (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1391/en);
- ITU-R Recommendation M.1167: Framework for the satellite component of International Mobile Telecommunications-2000 (IMT-2000) (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1167); and
- ITU-R Recommendation M.818 - Satellite operation within International Mobile Telecommunications-2000 (IMT-2000) (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.818/en)

3.9 Single Frequency Links (in the Fixed Service) are applicable for the provision of the system and service. The typical technical and operational characteristics identified as appropriate by the ITU are described in the following documents

- CEPT Recommendation T/R 13-01 E (Preferred channel arrangements for fixed service systems operating in the frequency range 1 - 2.3 GHz (https://docdb.cept.org/download/2499)
- ITU-R Recommendation F.1242: Radio-frequency channel arrangements for digital radio systems operating in the range 1 350 MHz to 1 530 MHz (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-F.1242/en)

3.10 The following reports provide the details of co-existence studies between Mobile and MSS services in this band.

- ECC Report 263 [6] (Mar 2017) addressed the compatibility studies between IMT base stations operating below 1518 MHz and MSS land terminals operating above 1518 MHz.

[6] ECC Report 263, Adjacent band compatibility studies between IMT operating in band 1492-1518 MHz and the MSS operating in 1518-1525 MHz, 3 March 2017 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/967)

- This led to the following balanced approach published in ECC decision (17)06 [7] and EC decision 2018/661/EU [8].
- ECC/DEC/ (04)09 amended 26 June 2009: ECC Decision of 12 November 2004 on the designation of the bands 1518 - 1525 MHz and 1670 - 1675 MHz for the Mobile-Satellite Service [9].

3.11 The use of the band 1518 - 1525 MHz by the mobile-satellite service is subject to coordination. According to the Radio Regulations, the mobile-satellite service operating in the band 1518-1525 MHz stations shall not claim protection from the stations in the fixed service[10].

3.12 The following documents may also be useful when considering the 1518-1525 MHz band:

3.12.1 ITU-R Recommendation M.1167 (10/95): Framework for the satellite component of International Mobile Telecommunications-2000 (IMT-2000) (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1167)

3.12.2 ITU-R Recommendation F.1242-0 (05/97): Radio-frequency channel arrangements for digital radio systems operating in the range 1 350 MHz to 1 530 MHz (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-F.1242/en)

3.12.3 Recommendation ITU-R M.1480 -0 (05/2000): Essential technical requirements of mobile earth stations of geostationary mobile-satellite systems that are implementing the Global mobile personal communications by satellite (GMPCS) – Memorandum of understanding arrangements in parts of the frequency band 1-3 GHz (https://www.itu.int/dms_pubrec/itu-r/rec/m/R-REC-M.1480-0-200005-I!!PDF-E.pdf)

3.12.4 ITU-R Recommendation M.818 -2 (06/2003): Satellite operation within International Mobile Telecommunications-2000 (IMT-2000) (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.818/en)

3.12.5 Recommendation ITU-R M.1343 -1 (06/05): Essential technical requirements of mobile earth stations for global non-geostationary mobile-satellite service systems in the bands 1-3 GHz (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1343/en)

3.12.6 ECC/DEC/ (04)09, ECC Decision of 12 November 2004 on the designation of the bands 1518 - 1525 MHz and 1670 - 1675 MHz for the Mobile-Satellite Service, Amended 26 June 2009 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/382)

3.12.7 ITU RESOLUTION 225 (REV.WRC-12) Use of additional frequency bands for the satellite component of IMT (https://www.itu.int/dms_pub/itu-r/oth/0C/0A/R0C0A00000F0075PDFE.pdf)

---

[7] ECC/DEC/ (17)06, ECC Decision of 17 November 2017 on the harmonised use of the frequency bands 1427-1452 MHz and 1492-1518 MHz for Mobile/Fixed Communications Networks Supplemental Downlink (MFCN SDL), Approved 17 November 2017, Corrected 2 March 2018 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/1016)

[8] EC decision 2018/661/EU: Commission Implementing Decision (EU) 2018/661 of 26 April 2018 amending Implementing Decision (EU) 2015/750 on the harmonisation of the 1 452-1 492 MHz frequency band for terrestrial systems capable of providing electronic communications services in the Union as regards its extension in the harmonised 1 427-1 452 MHz and 1 492-1 517 MHz frequency bands (https://eur-lex.europa.eu/legal-content/EN/TXT/PDF/?uri=CELEX:32018D0661&rid=1)

[9] https://docdb.cept.org/document/382

[10] ITU Radio Regulations Footnote 5.348 under No. 9.11A

3.12.8 Recommendation ITU-R M. 1850 -2 (09/2014) Detailed specifications of the radio interfaces for the satellite component of International Mobile Telecommunications-2000 (IMT-2000) (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1850)

3.12.9 ETSI EN 301 444 V2.2.1 (2021-04) Satellite Earth Stations and Systems (SES); Land Mobile Earth Stations (LMES) and Maritime Mobile Earth Stations (MMES) providing voice and/or data communications, operating in the 1,5 GHz and 1,6 GHz frequency bands; Harmonised Standard for access to radio spectrum. (https://www.etsi.org/deliver/etsi_en/301400_301499/301444/02.02.01_60/en_301444v020201p.pdf)

3.12.10 ITU-R M.1184-3 (01/2018): Technical characteristics of mobile satellite systems in the frequency bands below 3 GHz for use in developing criteria for sharing between the mobile-satellite service (MSS) and other services (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1184/en)

3.12.11 ECC Report 280 Satellite Solutions for 5G, 18 May 2018 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/2989)

3.12.12 CEPT Report 069 Report from CEPT to the European Commission in response to the Mandate "Ultra-Wideband technology in view of a potential update of Commission Decision 2007/131/EC". Report approved on 26 October 2018 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/7244), if such ultra-wideband technology would be used in South Africa;

3.13 Documents considering various aspects of the coordination are mentioned in the section "Co-ordination Requirements".

4 Channelling Plan

4.1 The channelling plan for Single Frequency Links is as per ITU-R recommendation F.1242.

The Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 [11], recommended a possible channelling scheme shown in the Table 2[12].

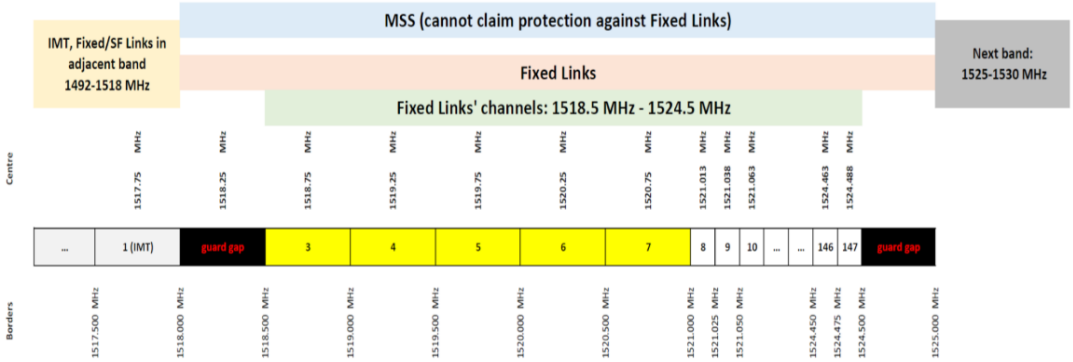
[11] Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (Government Gazette Number 42337 Notice 166 of 2019), 29 March 2019 (https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/final-radio-frequency-migration-plan-2019.pdf)

[12] Minor changes have been made to that table, e.g., IMT channels were renamed, and thus the number of 500 kHz wide channels was reduced and the channel numbering inside the band changed.

Single (or simplex) frequency channel (shared) [intended for migration of links < 1 GHz]									
	ITU / CEPT	Based on REC ITU-R F.1242							
	Band	1.5 GHz (F.S) Simplex							
	Ctr.Freq								
	Ch.Width	7 x500 kHz	& 140 x 25 kHz						
	Separ.								
	Ch.Spac.	7 x 500 kHz & 140 x 25 kHz							
	Ctr.Gap								
Ch.	**Centre, MHz**	**Ch.**	**Centre, MHz**	**Ch.**	**ntre, MHz**	**Ch.**	**Centre, MHz**	**Ch.**	**Centre, MHz**
1 (IMT)	1517.75	37	1521.7375	73	1522.638	109	1523.5375	145	1524.4375
2 (IMT)	1518.25	38	1521.7625	74	1522.663	110	1523.5625	146	1524.4625
3	1518.75	39	1521.7875	75	1522.688	111	1523.5875	147	1524.4875
4	1519.25	40	1521.8125	76	1522.713	112	1523.6125		
5	1519.75	41	1521.8375	77	1522.738	113	1523.6375		
6	1520.25	42	1521.8625	78	1522.763	114	1523.6625		
7	1520.75	43	1521.8875	79	1522.788	115	1523.6875		
8	1521.0125	44	1521.9125	80	1522.813	116	1523.7125		
9	1521.0375	45	1521.9375	81	1522.838	117	1523.7375		
10	1521.0625	46	1521.9625	82	1522.863	118	1523.7625		
11	1521.0875	47	1521.9875	83	1522.888	119	1523.7875		
12	1521.1125	48	1522.0125	84	1522.913	120	1523.8125		
13	1521.1375	49	1522.0375	85	1522.938	121	1523.8375		
14	1521.1625	50	1522.0625	86	1522.963	122	1523.8625		
15	1521.1875	51	1522.0875	87	1522.988	123	1523.8875		
16	1521.2125	52	1522.1125	88	1523.013	124	1523.9125		
17	1521.2375	53	1522.1375	89	1523.038	125	1523.9375		
18	1521.2625	54	1522.1625	90	1523.063	126	1523.9625		
19	1521.2875	55	1522.1875	91	1523.088	127	1523.9875		
20	1521.3125	56	1522.2125	92	1523.113	128	1524.0125		
21	1521.3375	57	1522.2375	93	1523.138	129	1524.0375		
22	1521.3625	58	1522.2625	94	1523.163	130	1524.0625		
23	1521.3875	59	1522.2875	95	1523.188	131	1524.0875		
24	1521.4125	60	1522.3125	96	1523.213	132	1524.1125		
25	1521.4375	61	1522.3375	97	1523.238	133	1524.1375		
26	1521.4625	62	1522.3625	98	1523.263	134	1524.1625		
27	1521.4875	63	1522.3875	99	1523.288	135	1524.1875		
28	1521.5125	64	1522.4125	100	1523.313	136	1524.2125		
29	1521.5375	65	1522.4375	101	1523.338	137	1524.2375		
30	1521.5625	66	1522.4625	102	1523.363	138	1524.2625		
31	1521.5875	67	1522.4875	103	1523.388	139	1524.2875		
32	1521.6125	68	1522.5125	104	1523.413	140	1524.3125		
33	1521.6375	69	1522.5375	105	1523.438	141	1524.3375		
34	1521.6625	70	1522.5625	106	1523.463	142	1524.3625		
35	1521.6875	71	1522.5875	107	1523.488	143	1524.3875		
36	1521.7125	72	1522.6125	108	1523.513	144	1524.4125		

Table 1: Simplex Channels as per section "1.12.1.3 Simplex Channels" of Appendix G of the Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (Page 204/293).

This table may also be illustrated with the diagram provided in Figure 1:



<u>Figure 1</u>: Illustration for the channel plan for fixed links for 1518-1525 MHz band, based on Table 2 (not to scale).

5 Requirements for usage of radio frequency spectrum

5.1 This chapter covers the minimum key characteristics considered necessary in order to make the best use of the available frequencies.

5.2 The use of the band is limited to Fixed, Mobile, and Mobile-Satellite services. They include Single frequency (SF) links and IMT satellite services.

5.3 Only systems using digital technologies that promote spectral efficiency will be issued with an assignment. Capacity enhancing digital techniques are being rapidly developed, and such techniques that promote efficient use of spectrum without reducing quality of service are encouraged.

5.4 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if harmful interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.5 The allocation of spectrum and shared services within these bands are found in the National Radio Frequency Plan (NRFP), and an extract of the NRFP is shown in Appendix A.

5.6 Maximum radiated power is specified through the type approval process for the equipment used.

5.7 In some cases, a radio system conforming to the requirements of this RFSAP may require modifications if major interference is caused to other radio stations or systems.

5.8 ICNIRP Guideline compliance is required, where applicable;

5.9 Criteria and guidelines for interference mitigation are described in Appendix D; and

5.10 Whenever possible, the operators / spectrum users are encouraged to share the spectrum.

6 Implementation

6.1 This RFSAP shall be effective on the date of issue.

6.2 No new assignment for the band 1518 – 1525 MHz shall be approved unless they comply with the RFSAP.

7 Co-ordination Requirements

7.1 Coordination is performed by the Authority during the process of assignment.

7.2 The following documents may include information useful for coordination:

7.2.1 ECC Report 263 [13], CEPT Report 269 [14], CEPT Report 65 [15], and Decision (EU) 2018/661 8 regarding compatibility with services operating in the bands 1492 - 1518 MHz, 1427 - 1518 MHz, 1492 - 1517 MHz, and 1452 - 1492 MHz, respectively. Also, Decision (EU) 2018/661 [16], ECC/DEC/ (17)06 [17], ECC Report 299 [18], Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 [19]. For instance:

- ECC Report 263 addressed the compatibility studies between IMT base stations operating below 1518 MHz and MSS land terminals operating above 1518 MHz and states

  "Based on the final results of its compatibility studies, it is concluded that:
  - The minimum in-band blocking characteristic for land mobile earth stations receivers from a 5 MHz broadband signal interferer (LTE) operating below 1518 MHz shall be −30 dBm above 1520 MHz;
  - The base station unwanted emission limits EIRP for a broadband signal interferer (LTE) operating below 1518 MHz shall be −30 dBm/MHz above 1520 MHz. This figure is 10 dB more stringent than ECC Decision (13)03 due to a different service in the adjacent band.

  It is noted that the IMT block ends at 1517 MHz.
  - With 1 MHz frequency separation, the required separation distances range from 435 – 6,100 m for land MESs; from 8,800 – 13,600 m for sea MESs; and from 7,700 – 16,500 m for aircraft MESs.
  - With 3 MHz frequency separation, the required separation distances range from 10 – 1,550 m for land MESs; from 400 – 3,400 m for sea MESs; and from 400 – 4,585 m for aircraft MESs.

---

[13] ECC Report 263 Adjacent band compatibility studies between IMT operating in band 1492-1518 MHz and the MSS operating in 1518-1525 MHz. Approved 03 March 2017 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/967)

[14] CEPT Report 269 Least restrictive technical conditions for Mobile/Fixed Communications Networks in 1427-1518 MHz. Approved 17 November 2017. Corrected 2 March 2018 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/1017)

[15] CEPT Report 65. Report from CEPT to the European Commission in response to the Mandate "to develop harmonised technical conditions in additional frequency bands in the 1.5 GHz range for their use for terrestrial wireless broadband electronic communications services in the Union". Report approved on 17 November 2017 by the ECC. Corrected 2 March 2018 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/1018)

[16] Decision (EU) 2018/661, Commission Implementing Decision (EU) 2018/661 of 26 April 2018 amending Implementing Decision (EU) 2015/750 on the harmonisation of the 1452-1492 MHz frequency band for terrestrial systems capable of providing electronic communications services in the Union as regards its extension in the harmonised 1427-1452 MHz and 1492-1517 MHz frequency bands (https://docdb.cept.org/document/8820)

[17] ECC/DEC/ (17)06, ECC Decision of 17 November 2017 on the harmonised use of the frequency bands 1427-1452 MHz and 1492-1518 MHz for Mobile/Fixed Communications Networks Supplemental Downlink (MFCN SDL), Approved 17 November 2017, Corrected 2 March 2018 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/1016)

[18] ECC Report 299 Measures to address potential blocking of MES operating in bands adjacent to 1518 MHz (including 1525-1559 MHz) at sea ports and airports (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9066)

[19] Recommendation ITU-R M.1036 -6 (10/2019): Frequency arrangements for implementation of the terrestrial component of International Mobile Telecommunications (IMT) in the bands identified for IMT in the Radio Regulations (RR) (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1036)

- With 6 MHz frequency separation, the required separation distances range from 10 – 1,100 m for land MESs; from 300 – 1300 m for sea MESs; and from 300 – 2,000 m for aircraft MESs."
- The Report 263 also advises on the base station unwanted emission limits per cell above 1,518 MHz, maximum out-of-block EIRP limits for emissions within the band 1,427 – 1,517 MHz per antennas, base station unwanted emission limits per cell above 1,518 MHz for base stations operating in 1,492 - 1517 MHz.

- CEPT Report 269 states
  - "Base station power in 1,512 - 1,517 MHz should not exceed 58 dBm/5 MHz EIRP;
  - Base station unwanted emissions within 1,427 - 1,517 MHz are defined by the BEM in ECC/DEC/ (13)03; 16.3 dBm/5 MHz EIRP for the first adjacent 5 MHz block, 11 dBm/5 MHz EIRP for the second and 9 dBm/5 MHz EIRP for the third and beyond. It is proposed that this should apply also to emissions from blocks in the frequency band 1,452 – 1,492 MHz for emissions that fall into 1,427 – 1,452 MHz or 1,492 – 1,517 MHz when these are used for MFCN;
  - Base station unwanted emissions into the frequency band 1,400 – 1,427 MHz should not exceed -72 dBW/27 MHz;
  - Base station unwanted emissions in 1,520 – 1,559 MHz should not exceed -30 dBm/MHz EIRP;
  - Base station unwanted emissions in 1,518 – 1,520 MHz should not exceed -0.8 dBm/MHz EIRP "

7.2.2 See ECC Report 198 [20] for fixed links;

7.2.3 CEPT Recommendation T/R 13-01 E regarding coordination between mobile and fixed services [21]; For example, it mentions that "According ERC Report 65 a separation distance of 2 km and a carrier separation of 8.3 MHz is required between FS and MS stations operating in adjacent bands. Therefore, a careful deployment and coordination between MS and FS with channel spacing below 14 MHz is needed."

7.2.4 ERC/REC 70-03 [22] regarding the use of Short Range Devices (SRD), should such be introduced in the 1,518 – 1,525 MHz band in the future;

[20] ECC Report 198 Adaptive modulation and ATPC operations in fixed point-to-point systems - Guideline on coordination procedures, 16 May 2013 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/305)

[21] CEPT Recommendation T/R 13-01 E (Recommendation T/R of 1993 on "Preferred channel arrangements for fixed service systems operating in the frequency range 1-2.3 GHz". 1993. Revised on 5 February 2010) (https://docdb.cept.org/document/868)

[22] ERC/REC 70-03 ERC Recommendation of 6 October 1997 on relating to the use of Short Range Devices (SRD). Editorial update on 11 February 2022 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/845)

7.2.5 ECC Report 121 [23], ECC Report 147 [24], and ECC Report 253 [25] regarding compatibility with professional wireless microphone systems (PWMS), should such be introduced in the 1518-1525 MHz band in the future; and;

7.2.6 ITU Recommendation ITU-R M.1459 and ECC Report 295 [26] regarding protection criteria for and coordination between telemetry systems in the aeronautical mobile service and MSS [27], should such be introduced in the 1,518 – 1,525 MHz band in the future.

7.3 In the event of any interference, the Authority will require affected parties to carry out coordination. In the event that the interference continues to be unresolved after 24 hours, the affected parties may refer the matter to the Authority for a resolution. The Authority will decide the necessary modifications and schedule of modifications to resolve the dispute. The Authority will be guided by the interference resolution process as shown in Appendix B.

7.4 Assignment holders shall take full advantage of interference mitigation techniques such as antenna discrimination, tilt, polarization, frequency discrimination, shielding/blocking (introduce diffraction loss), site selection, and/or power control to facilitate the coordination of systems.

7.5 Whenever possible, Cross Border Frequency Coordination will abide by the Harmonised Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A) Agreement. This follows the 3rd CRASA AGM that agreed that CRASA should implement the Cross Border Frequency Coordination Harmonised Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A) Agreement.

7.6 The ECC had noted the need for greater understanding of the concept and need for harmonisation in the signing of the HCM4A Agreement by the SADC Member States if the implementation of the Agreement was to be effective. The ECC, therefore, agreed to convene a workshop on HCM4A and requested CRASA Members to consider signing the agreement. These activities were part of the Frequency Planning Sub Committee (FPSC) Operations Plan 2015/16.

7.7 At the 5th CRASA AGM, Swakopmund, Namibia – 07-08 April 2016 (5), the subject of Cross Border Frequency Coordination using the Harmonised Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A) was discussed in detail, following similar efforts in Europe. The Resolution CRASA/AGM/15.16/07 stipulates, "The AGM urged CRASA Members to prioritise the motivation to their administrations who are yet to indicate their interest to sign the Harmonised Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A), to do so as soon as possible".

---

[23] ECC Report 121 Compatibility studies between Professional Wireless Microphone Systems (PWMS) and other services/systems in the bands 1452-1492 MHz, 1492-1530 MHz, 1533-1559 MHz also considering the services/systems in the adjacent bands (below 1452 MHz and above 1559 MHz). 22 September 2008 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/229)

[24] ECC Report 147 Additional compatibility studies relating to PWMS in the 1518.1559 MHz excluding the band 1543.45-1543.95 MHz and 1544-1545 MHz, Tromsø, May 2010 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/256).

[25] ECC Report 253 Compatibility studies for audio PMSE at 1492-1518 MHz and 1518-1525 MHz, 30 September 2016 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/957)

[26] ECC Report 295 Guidance on Cross-border coordination between MFCN and Aeronautical Telemetry Systems in the 1429-1518 MHz band. Approved 8 March 2019 (https://docdb.cept.org/document/9070)

[27] Recommendation ITU-R M.1459-0 (05/2000): "Protection criteria for telemetry systems in the aeronautical mobile service and mitigation techniques to facilitate sharing with geostationary broadcasting-satellite and mobile-satellite services in the frequency bands 1 452-1 525 MHz and 2 310-2 360 MHz" (https://www.itu.int/rec/R-REC-M.1459-0-200005-I/en)

7.7.1 Therefore, coordination would follow the HCM4A as detailed in Sub-Saharan Africa Assessment Report on Harmonization of ICT Policies in Sub-Saharan Africa[28] (HIPSSA)

7.8 A harmonized calculation method (HCM4A) brings these benefits

7.8.1 Based on HCM Agreement used in Europe

7.8.2 Optimise spectrum usage;

7.8.3 Prevent harmful interferences;

7.8.4 Confer an adequate protection for stations;

7.8.5 Define technical provisions and administrative procedures;

7.8.6 Quick assignment of preferential frequencies; Transparent decisions through agreed assessment procedures; Quick assessment of interference through data exchange

7.9 HCM4A involves all 4 sub regions of Africa. This means the HCM4A projects include performing a survey and a comparative analysis of existing administrative and technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements across the 4 geographical sub-regions as defined by the African Union (AU), namely,

7.9.1 Central Africa: (Burundi, Central African Republic, Chad, Congo, Democratic Republic of Congo, Equatorial Guinea, Gabon, Sao Tome, and Principe);

7.9.2 East Africa: (Comoros, Djibouti, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Kenya, Madagascar, Mauritius, Rwanda, Seychelles, Somalia, Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda);

7.9.3 Southern Africa: (Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia, Zimbabwe); and

7.9.4 West Africa: (Benin, Burkina-Faso, Cape Verde, Côte d'Ivoire, Gambia, Ghana, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Liberia, Mali, Niger, Nigeria, Sierra Leone, Senegal, Togo).

7.10 HCM4A also comes with a software tool for Sub-Saharan Africa[29], [30]

7.10.1 Optimise spectrum usage by accurate interference field strength calculations;

7.10.2 Establish general parameters, improvement and supplementation of technical provisions, and individual restrictions;

7.10.3 Establish models for computer-aided interference range calculations; and

7.10.4 Harmonise parameters: objectively predictable towards transparent decisions.

8 Assignment

8.1 Standard Approach

---

[28] https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

[29] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A) https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

[30] PowerPoint Presentation (itu.int) https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Regional-Presence/AsiaPacific/Documents/Events/2017/May%20BKK/Presentations/HCM%20and%20HCM4A%20BKK%2020170504%20IB.pdf

The assignment of frequency will take place according to the Standard Application Procedures in the Radio Frequency Spectrum Regulations 2015.

9 Amendments

9.1 Not applicable.

10 Frequency Migration

10.1 Specific Procedure
Studio transmission links may be migrated into this band under Fixed Services and are subject to coordination with the existing co-primary users.

Appendix A National Radio Frequency Plan

Table 2 shows an extract from the National Frequency Plan for South Africa.

ITU Region 1 allocations and footnotes	South African allocations and footnotes	Typical Applications	Notes and Comments
1 518-1 525 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.348 5.348A 5.348B 5.351A 5.341 5.342	1 518-1 525 MHz FIXED MOBILE except aeronautical mobile MOBILE-SATELLITE (space-to-Earth) 5.348 5.348A 5.351A 5.341	IMT Satellite component	The band 1518-1559 MHz is identified for satellite component of IMT; Res. 225 applies. Radio Frequency Spectrum Assignment Plan GG 42286 Notice 125 of 2019 Final Frequency Migration Plan 2019 (GG No. 42337 Notice 36 of 2019)

Table 2: National Radio Frequency Plan for South Africa for 1518 to 1525 MHz band[31]

[31] National Radio Frequency Plan 2021, (NRFP-21) 8.3 kHz – 3000 GHz Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, Government Gazette No 46088, 25 March 2022 (https://www.icasa.org.za/uploads/files/National-Radio-Frequency-Plan-2021.pdf)

Appendix B Interference Resolution Process

Many technical procedures related to bilateral and multilateral cross-border frequency coordination agreements for the four (4) geographical sub-regions are defined by the African Union which includes the Southern African sub-region of ten (10) countries. Whenever possible, cross-Border Frequency Coordination and interference resolution should follow the Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A) [32].
When requesting coordination, the relevant characteristics of the base station and the code or PCI group number should be forwarded to the Administration affected. All of the following characteristics should be included:

a) carrier frequency (MHz)
b) name of transmitter station
c) country of location of transmitter station
d) geographical coordinates (latitude, longitude)
e) effective antenna height (m)
f) antenna polarisation
g) antenna azimuth (degrees)
h) antenna gain (dBi)
i) effective radiated power (dBW)
j) expected coverage zone or radius (km)
k) date of entry into service (month, year).
l) code group number used
m) antenna tilt (degrees)

The Administration affected will evaluate the request for coordination and will, within thirty (30) days, notify the Administration requesting coordination the result of the evaluation. If, in the course of the coordination procedure, the Administration affected requires additional information, it may request such information.

If no reply is received by the Administration requesting coordination within (30) days, it may send a reminder to the Administration affected. Where the Administration fails to respond within thirty (30) days following communication of the reminder will be deemed to have given its consent, and the code coordination may be put into use with the characteristics given in the request for coordination.

The above-mentioned periods are subject to extension by common consent.

[32] Cross-Border Frequency Coordination: Harmonized Calculation Method for Africa (HCM4A) https://www.itu.int/en/ITU-D/Projects/ITU-EC-ACP/HIPSSA/Documents/FINAL%20DOCUMENTS/FINAL%20DOCS%20ENGLISH/hcm4a_agreement.pdf.pdf

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND INFRASTRUCTURE

NO. 3769 **4 August 2023**

AGRÉMENT SOUTH AFRICA

(Approval of innovative construction products and systems)

Notice is hereby given that Agrément South Africa has, with effect from 28 June 2023 issued an Agrément certificate, details of which appear in the schedule hereto.

SCHEDULE

Agrément Certificate 2023/643

Subject: Punku H-Block Building System

Certificate holder: HWV Projects (Pty) Ltd

Description: The Punku H-Block Building System is a dry stacking system comprising concrete H-Blocks interlocking with concrete keystones, custom-made lintels and window sills. The building system components (H-Blocks, lintels, keystones and window sills) are manufactured from concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 7 Mpa. The building system components are manufactured in moulds with the following dimensions:

- H-Block: 200 mm (W) x 300 mm (H) x 400 mm (L)
- Closed H-Block: 200 mm (W) x 300 mm (H) x 400 mm (L)
- Half H-Block: 200 mm (W) x 300 mm (H) x 200 mm (L)
- Hexagon-shaped Keystone (tapering): 88 mm (Base) x 88 mm (Width) x 160 mm (Depth)
- Lintels: 75 mm (Height) x 118 mm (Base width) x 2000 mm (Length)

- Side sills: 200 mm (Thickness) x 1200 mm (Height)
- Side sills: 200 mm (Thickness) x 900 mm (Height)
- Bottom sills: 200 mm (Thickness) x 600 mm (Length)

The recommended foundation type is a strip foundation. The plinths are constructed from conventional blocks or H-Blocks. For walls built above the conventional blocks foundation, the first course of H-Blocks is laid on a mortar-bedded custom-made lintel above the slab. The custom-made lintel serves as a guide rail for the blocks. For the plinth constructed with the H- block, the first course of H-Blocks is laid on a mortar-bedded custom-made lintel above the strip footing.

The blocks are laid in a conventional stretcher bond pattern with keystones placed H-Block joint centres for interlocking and braced with a steel rod. The wall joints are pointed with cement grout. The walls are left unplastered or can be plastered and finished with CemteQ plasterlite plaster with a thickness of 12 mm internally and 15 mm externally.

NB. The plastered walls are for non-category 1 buildings for energy zones 2,4,6 and 7.

The building system's window sills are custom-made; alternatively, conventional steel and aluminium window frames can be used. The door frames and doors are conventional. The roof is constructed with a concrete beam, conventional timber, or lightweight steel trusses with lightweight, heavyweight, or Agrément approved cladding.

The Agrément certificate contains detailed information on the system and can be accessed at *http://www.agrement.co.za*

Copies are obtainable from: Chief Executive Officer (CEO)

Agrément South Africa, P O Box 72381, Lynnwood Ridge, 0040.

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND INFRASTRUCTURE

NO. 3770 **4 August 2023**

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS

AGRÉMENT SOUTH AFRICA

(Approval of innovative construction products and systems)

Notice is hereby given that Agrément South Africa has, with effect from 28 June 2023, issued an Agrément certificate, details of which appear in the schedule hereto.

SCHEDULE

Agrément Certificate 2023/645

Subject: Africa Tanks

Certificate holder: Africa Tanks (Pty) Ltd

Description: Africa Tanks are manufactured from High-Density Polyethylene (HDPE) through a blow moulding process. The wall thickness ranges from 2.5 mm to 6 mm, depending on the size of the tank. The tanks vary in size from 1000 litres to 5000 litres.

The tanks can be manufactured in any of the following colours: green, Sahara, battleship grey, and Royal Blue. The tanks consist of three layers, namely, the Outer layer, which is manufactured from virgin HDPE and is UV resistant and protects the tanks; the Middle layer, which is manufactured from regrind material and prevents algae growth and the Inner layer, which is manufactured from virgin HDPE and prevents bacteria build-up and keeps the water clean and 'food safe' for longer periods.

The tanks are fitted with 60 mm or 50 mm diameter overflow at the top and 50 mm diameter tank inlet connectors at the bottom. These can be fitted with standard outlet and inlet pipes. The access lids at the top of the tanks are 450 mm in diameter.

The Agrément certificate contains detailed information on the product and can be accessed at *http://www.agrement.co.za*

Copies are obtainable from: Chief Executive Officer (CEO)

Agrément South Africa, P O Box 72381, LYNNWOOD RIDGE, 0040

innovative construction product assessments

Tel: +27 (12) 841 3708 **Web:** www.agrement.co.za **Email:** agrement@agrement.co.za
Address: Building 17B, 2nd Floor, Scientia Campus, Meiring Naudé Road, Brummeria, Pretoria

DEPARTMENT OF SPORTS, ARTS AND CULTURE

NO. 3771 **4 August 2023**

sport, arts & culture
Department:
Sport, Arts and Culture
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Private Bag X897 | VWL Building | 202 Madiba Street | Pretoria, 0001 |
Email: info@dsac.gov.za | Tel: 012 441 3000 | Fax: 012 441 3699

Private Bag X9015 | Room 1621 | 120 Plein Street | Cape Town, 8000 |
Email: info@dsac.gov.za | Tel: (021) 465 5620 | Fax: (021) 465 5624
www.dsac.gov.za

DEPARTMENT OF SPORT, ARTS AND CULTURE, SOUTH AFRICA

NOTICE

NOTICE IN TERMS OF SECTION 12 (1) OF THE USE OF OFFICIAL LANGUAGES ACT, 2012 (ACT NO. 12 OF 2012) AND REGULATION 9 OF THE REGULATIONS PUBLISHED ON THE 28TH OF FEBRUARY 2014 IN THE GOVERNMENT GAZETTE UNDER NOTICE No.10140: NOTICE OF EXEMPTION OF THE NATIONAL GAMBLING BOARD FROM ESTABLISHING A LANGUAGE UNIT

In terms of Section 12(1) of the Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act No. 12 of 2012) (to be referred to hereinafter as "the Act") and Regulation 9 of the Regulations published on the 28th of February 2014 in the Government Gazette under Notice No.10140 (to be referred to hereinafter as "the Regulations"), I hereby -

(i) exempt in part the National Gambling Board from the application of section 7 of the Act; and

(ii) require National Gambling Board in accordance with section 12(4) of the Act to assign a senior employee to perform the functions of a language unit.

In terms of Regulation 9 of the Regulations to the Act, I may at any time review an exemption granted in terms of this Act and may-

a) withdraw the exemption;
b) amend or remove any condition to which the exemption is subject to; or add the conditions that may be necessary;
c) amend the scope of the exemption; or
d) take any other step in regard to the exemption.

sport, arts & culture
Department:
Sport, Arts and Culture
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

Private Bag X897 | VWL Building | 202 Madiba Street | Pretoria, 0001 |
Email: info@dsac.gov.za | Tel: 012 441 3000 | Fax: 012 441 3699

Private Bag X9015 | Room 1621 | 120 Plein Street | Cape Town, 8000 |
Email: info@dsac.gov.za | Tel: (021) 465 5620 | Fax: (021) 465 5624

Given under my Hand at Pretoria on this...6th..... day of...JULY...2023.

MR NCEDISO GOODENOUGH KODWA, MP
MINISTER OF SPORT, ARTS AND CULTURE

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE, INDUSTRY AND COMPETITION

NO. 3772 **4 August 2023**

CO OPERATIVES THAT HAS BEEN REMOVED FROM THE REGISTER

1. HLUMANI AGRICULTURAL CO-OPERATIVE LIMITED (C2015/012171/24)
2. AQUA GREEN AND PROJECTS AGRICULTURAL PRIMARY CO-OP LTD C2018/005398/24)
3. ORANJERIVIER WYNKELDERS CO-OPERATIVE LIMITED (1966/000002/24)
4. LJT INVESTMENTS PRIMARY CO-OPERATIVE LIMITED (2018/000890/24)
5. MGABADELI AND NKOMOSE AGRICULTURAL AND MULTI-PURPOSE PRIMARY CO-OPERATIVE LIMITED (2008/002338/24)

Notice is hereby given that the names of the abovementioned co-operatives will, after the expiration of thirty days from the date of this notice, be struck off the register in terms of the provisions of section 71A of the Co-operatives Amendment Act, No 6 of 2013.
Any objections to this procedure, which interested persons may wish to raise, must together with the reasons therefore, be lodged with this office before the expiration of the period of thirty days.

REGISTRAR OF CO OPERATIVES
Office of the Registrar of Co operatives
Dtic Campus
77 Meintjies Street
Pretoria
0002

Private Bag X237
Pretoria
0001

The dti Campus (Block F - Entfutfukweni), 77 Meintjies Street, Sunnyside, Pretoria I P O Box 429, Pretoria, 0001 Call Centre: 086 100 2472Email: LSkosana@cipc.co.za Website: www.cipc.co.za

GENERAL NOTICES • ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS

DEPARTMENT OF CO-OPERATIVE GOVERNANCE

GENERAL NOTICE 1941 OF 2023

REGULATIONS FRAMING THE INSTITUTIONALISATION OF THE DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT MODEL IN TERMS OF SECTION 47(1)(*b*) OF THE INTERGOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS FRAMEWORK ACT, 2005

Any person who wishes to submit written comments on the proposed draft Regulations framing the institutionalisation of the District Development Model in terms of section 47(1)(b) of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 are hereby invited to do so within 30 days from the date of publication hereof by—

(a) posting such comments to the following address:

Department of Cooperative Governance
Private Bag X804
PRETORIA
0001;

(b) delivering such comments by hand at the following address:

Department of Cooperative Governance
87 Hamilton Street
Arcadia
PRETORIA; or

(c) e-mailing such comments to the following address:
ashleyl@cogta.gov.za

Comments must be addressed to the Director-General: Cooperative Governance and marked for the attention of **Mr Ashley Losch**.

MS THEMBI NKADIMENG, MP
MINISTER OF COOPERATIVE GOVERNANCE AND TRADITIONAL AFFAIRS
DATE:

SCHEDULE

CHAPTER 1

INTEPRETATION AND PURPOSE OF REGULATIONS

Definitions

1. In these Regulations a word or expression bears the meaning assigned to it in the Act and unless the context otherwise indicates—

"**Act**" means the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act No. 13 of 2005);

"Catalytic projects" means intergovernmental long-term projects of high budget value and impact;

"**Constitution**" means the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996;

"**DCoG**" means the Department of Cooperative Governance;

"**DCoG DG's DDM Implementation Coordinating Committee**" refers to a committee established by the Director-General of the Department of Cooperative Governance for the purposes of coordinating the implementation of the District Development Model;

"**DDM**" means the District Development Model which is an operational model for improving cooperative governance as announced by the President of the Republic of South Africa in the Presidency Budget speech in 2019;

"**DDM Implementation Protocol**" means the implementation protocol contemplated in section 35 of the Act for the purpose of implementing the DDM;

"**Director-General**" means the Director-General of the Department of Cooperative Governance;

“District or Metropolitan DDM Committee” refers to an inter-governmental committee chaired by either a district or metropolitan municipal mayor to provide political oversight.

“District or Metropolitan DDM Coordination Steering Committee” refers to an inter-governmental coordinating steering committee at a provincial level chaired by a Premier of a province and co-chaired by the MEC for local government in the respective province.

“District or Metropolitan Technical DDM Hubs” refers to an inter-governmental technical support network or team to coordinate and facilitate inter-governmental planning in the district and metro spaces.

"**District or Metropolitan DDM Technical Committee**" refers to an inter-departmental committee established by the Director-General in a province in consultation with Heads of Departments;

“District Municipality” means a municipality that has municipal executive and legislative authority in an area that includes more than one municipality, and which is described in section 155 (1) of the Constitution as a category C municipality

"**District spaces**" means geographical areas whose extent and boundaries coincide with those of Category C municipalities as described in section 155(1)(*c*) of the Constitution;

"**DPME**" means the Department of Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation;

“Intergovernmental District or Metropolitan Committee” refers to the intergovernmental structure established as per section 24 of the Act.

"**Joint programmes**" refers to programmes that transcend the conventional organisational boundaries in planning, budgeting and implementation resulting in

several departments, agencies or ministries becoming responsible for one aspect of the programme;

"MEC" means a member of the Provincial Executive Council;

"Metropolitan Municipality" means a municipality that has exclusive executive and legislative authority in its area, and which is described in section 155 (1) of the Constitution as a category A municipality;

"**Metropolitan spaces**" means geographical areas whose extent and boundaries coincide with those of Category A municipalities as described in Section 155(1)(*a*) of the Constitution;

"**Minister**" means the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs;

"**National DDM Political Champions**" refers to Ministers and Deputy Ministers appointed by the President to act as intergovernmental facilitators to address service delivery weaknesses, including those identified through the development and implementation of One Plans in their respective district and metropolitan spaces;

"**One Plan"** is an intergovernmental plan setting out a long-term strategic framework to guide the implementation of investment and delivery plans in relation to each of the districts and metropolitan spaces, which constitutes an intergovernmental implementation protocol, as contemplated in section 35 of the Act;

"Premier's Coordinating Forum" refers to a Premier's intergovernmental forum as defined in section 16 of the Act;

"Presidential Coordinating Council" refers to a President's coordinating council as defined in section 6 of the Act;

"**Presidency Steering Committee on the DDM**" refers to the technical committee established by the President of the Republic to provide strategic oversight on the

implementation of the DDM and technical support to the President in his or her capacity as the overall DDM political champion;

"**Reprioritisation**" refers to the joint process of review and adjustment of priorities and commitments by the organs of state involved, when required.

"**Terms of reference**" refers to the rules of internal procedures of intergovernmental structures as defined in section 33(1)(a) of the Act.

Purpose

2. The purpose of these regulations is to provide for an intergovernmental framework and operational model that will frame the coordination and synchronisation of local intergovernmental development priorities in the context of the DDM, through a set of intergovernmental structures and the One Plan as part of the institutionalisation of the DDM.

CHAPTER 2

DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT MODEL

Principles

3. (1) The DDM is—

(a) framed within the existing intergovernmental relations system as defined in the Act and does not replace the existing division and allocation of powers, functions and responsibilities of spheres of government and organs of state;

(b) a framework for the coordination and alignment of the development priorities within particular district and metropolitan spaces; and

(c) a mechanism to practically demonstrate cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations at a local level, with the aim of improving government cohesion and effectiveness in delivering services and enabling integrated sustainable development outcomes and impact, including identifying and addressing implementation blockages, especially those requiring an intergovernmental focus.

(2) The DDM works within existing intergovernmental framework and processes to achieve its aims and objectives to identify opportunities to ensure better development and performance through improved synchronisation and utilisation of public and private resources.

(3) The framework of the DDM is premised on improving the ALL of Government and ALL of society approach through fostering intergovernmental joint planning and budgeting and programme and project implementation, as well as monitoring through the development and implementation of One Plans within the existing legislative framework.

Requirements

4. (1) The entire national sphere of government and all national organs of state must contribute to the formulation and implementation of the One Plan in each district and metropolitan space, within the existing legislative and intergovernmental framework.

(2) The entire provincial sphere of government and all provincial organs of state must formulate and implement the One Plan in each district and metropolitan space within the province, within the existing legislative and intergovernmental framework through the provincial, district and metropolitan DDM coordinating and technical committees.

(3) A district municipality and local municipalities under its jurisdiction, including entities of the district municipality and the local municipalities concerned, must contribute to the joint formulation and implementation of the One Plan, within the district and within the existing legislative and intergovernmental framework.

(4) A metropolitan municipality and entities of the municipality, must contribute to the joint formulation and implementation of the One Plan in the metropolitan space and within the existing legislative and intergovernmental framework.

(5) The One Plan should include contributions of the private sector and the priorities of social actors.

(6) All departments across the three spheres of government must specify the manner in which they contribute to the development and implementation of One Plans through their relevant operational functions, capabilities and budgets, where required.

Implementation

5. The DDM must be implemented through the interrelated processes of spatialisation and reprioritisation that form part of the development and implementation of One Plans within the existing legislative framework.

Institutional arrangements

6. (1) Institutional arrangements for the DDM must be aimed at sustaining a programmatic approach to cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations centred around the One Plans.

(2) The President of the Republic is the overall champion of the DDM and may appoint Ministers or Deputy Ministers as National DDM Political Champions for each district and metropolitan space.

(3) The Minister is responsible for the institutionalisation and implementation of the DDM in terms of the cooperative governance mandate of the Department and as directed by the President of the Republic.

(4) The DPME is responsible for developing and coordinating the implementation and institutionalisation of the country's planning system, policies and legislation. The DPME will provide strategic leadership and technical support in the localisation of national and sectoral plans within identified district and metropolitan One Plans and spaces.

(5) Each Premier is the overall provincial champion of the DDM in his or her province and must establish provincial DDM intergovernmental structures as

contemplated under section 21 of the Act, and may appoint MECs as provincial political champions for each district and metropolitan space within the province.

(6) Each province must play an integral role in the programmatic approach through the President's Coordinating Council and by leading the coordination processes at the provincial level utilising the provincial DDM intergovernmental forums linked with the Premier's Coordinating Forum.

(7) The MEC for local government is responsible for the institutionalisation and implementation of the DDM in terms of the cooperative governance mandate of the Department and as directed by the Minister and the Premier.

(8) The Director-General of a province is the overall technical DDM champion in his or her province and is the co-chairperson of the provincial DDM technical structure as contemplated under section 5 of these Regulations together with the Head of Department for the provincial department of local government.

(9) A Head of Department for the provincial department of local government must assign senior officials to participate in district or metropolitan DDM technical structures as contemplated under section 12 of these Regulations that must lead the development and monitoring of the implementation of One Plans.

(11) A Mayor of a district and a metropolitan municipality is the local champion of the DDM in his or her municipality and lead the district or metropolitan DDM political structures as contemplated under section 24 of the Act.

(12) A Municipal Manager of a district and a metropolitan municipality is the local champion of the DDM in his or her municipality and lead the technical district and metropolitan DDM committees as contemplated under section 30 of the Act.

(13) District and Metropolitan DDM technical support hubs comprising of teams with critical skills and knowledge may be established by the DCoG in selected districts and metropolitan spaces with support from national and provincial departments in a phased manner as technical support agents for supporting DDM implementation, coordinating capacity building support initiatives, and enhancing local institutional capabilities within the DDM framework.

(14) The Director-General must issue circulars outlining the composition, roles and responsibilities and general functioning of intergovernmental DDM structures with a specific focus on the participation of state-owned enterprises, private sector, civil society, organised local government, and traditional leaders, as well as the issuing of circulars for the establishment of district and metropolitan DDM technical support hubs outlining the human and financial requirements and the general functioning thereof.

(15) A terms of reference outlining the general functioning of the DCoG DG's DDM Implementation Coordinating Committee, including its relationship with the Presidency Steering Committee on the DDM, must be drafted and adopted as outlined in section 33 of the Act.

(16) The President of the Republic must establish a Presidency steering committee on the DDM, comprising of senior officials from selected national departments, which must fulfil an overall coordination function in line with the DDM champion role ascribed to him or her.

(17) A terms of reference outlining the general functioning of the DDM Presidency steering committee on the DDM must be drafted and adopted as outlined in section 33 of the Act.

CHAPTER 3

ONE PLANS

Context of plans

7. (1) A One Plan must be developed for each district and metropolitan space as a long-term intergovernmental implementation protocol outlining key intergovernmental catalytic programmes and projects, which serves as a strategic framework to guide government and private sector investment within the district or metropolitan space.

(2) A One Plan may not replace national and provincial development plans, sectoral plans and any legally prescribed development and strategic plan or a departmental or entity annual performance plan in operation at any of the three spheres of government but need to be aligned with each other.

(3) A One Plan may influence the review of existing legally prescribed development of strategic plans or a departmental or entity annual performance plan in operation at any of the three spheres of government.

(4) A One Plan should take into consideration policy, planning and budgeting priorities and plans as well as spatial development frameworks at national, provincial and local government level as well as the priorities of social partners.

(5) A One Plan may influence more strategic and impact-oriented budgeting and reprioritisation of budgets across the three spheres of government, utilising and even strengthening current legislative levers, and must be developed jointly by all spheres of government, state-owned entities, the private sector and civil society.

Preparation, approval and adoption of plans

8. (1) A One Plan development process must follow the following stages:

(a) Diagnostic stage: This stage makes provision for a deep-dive analysis and understanding of the existing socio-economic development context;

(b) Vision setting stage: This stage indicates the desired future framed by national, provincial and regional development goals with clear outcomes and impacts to be achieved;

(c) Strategy formulation stage: This stage makes provision for the identification of strategies and interventions required to realise the desired future; and

(d) Implementation commitment stage: This stage makes provision for the commitments and contributions of each sphere of government, state-owned entity, and private sector that will enable the identified strategies to be implemented.

(2) The Director-General must issue guidelines and circulars outlining the prescribed framework for One Plans in line with the One Plan development process.

(3) The established intergovernmental structures as contemplated in these Regulations together with the district and metropolitan DDM technical support hubs, where applicable, must facilitate the preparation of the One Plan through joint planning processes involving all three spheres of government, as well as private sector and other civil society stakeholders.

(4) Each district and metropolitan DDM technical structure must

oversee the preparation of the One Plan related to its district or metropolitan space and publish the draft One Plan for public comment for a period specified in the guidelines and circulars before submitting the completed One Plan to the relevant metropolitan, district and local municipal councils and the relevant Provincial Executive, for endorsement.

(5) Each Provincial Executive Council, metropolitan, district and local municipal councils, following consultation in the relevant intergovernmental structures as pronounced in these Regulations, must recommend the One Plan for approval in writing to the Minister.

(6) If there are any objections to the One Plan after the due processes followed by the Provincial Executive Council or metropolitan, district or local municipal council, the reasons for objecting to the One Plan must be submitted in writing to the Minister.

(7) The Minister must submit the approved One Plans to Cabinet for adoption.

(8) All three spheres of government and organs of state must implement the One Plans adopted by Cabinet.

(9) A One Plan for a district and metropolitan space must be developed during the period stipulated in a circular issued by the Director-General.

Implementation and monitoring of plans

9. (1) The One Plans must be implemented through the annual, medium-, and long-term strategic planning and budgeting processes of government and state-owned entities.

(2) The DCoG must together with national, provincial, and local government develop and regularly update an Information Management System, outlining clearly defined implementation indicators, linked with existing reporting systems across the three spheres of government that must be applied to monitor, evaluate and assess the status, implementation and progress of One Plans across all the district and metropolitan spaces.

CHAPTER 4

GENERAL

Short title and commencement

10. These Regulations are called the Regulations Framing the Institutionalisation of the District Development Model, 2023 and come into operation on the date of publication in the Government *Gazette*.

DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE AND CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT

GENERAL NOTICE 1942 OF 2023

PUBLICATION OF EXPLANATORY SUMMARY OF THE REGULATION OF INTERCEPTION OF COMMUNICATIONS AND PROVISION OF COMMUNICATION-RELATED INFORMATION AMENDMENT BILL, 2023

1. Notice is hereby given in terms of Rule 276(1)(b) of the Rules of the National Assembly that the Minister of Justice and Correctional Services intends to introduce the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-Related Information Amendment Bill, 2023 (the Bill), in the National Assembly shortly.

2. The explanatory summary of the Bill is hereby published in accordance with Rule 276(1)(c) of the Rules of the National Assembly.

3.1 The Bill seeks to amend the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-Related Information Act, 2002 (Act No. 70 of 2002) (RICA), so as to insert certain definitions; to provide for the designation of an independent designated judge; to provide for the designation of an independent review judge, to provide for the powers and functions of the review judge; to provide for the tenure of designated and review judges; to provide for adequate safeguards where the subject of surveillance is a practising lawyer or journalist; to provide for the notification of persons of their surveillance as soon as the notification may be given without jeopardising the purpose of surveillance and that notification may be withheld if it has the potential to impact negatively on national security; to provide for adequate safeguards to address the fact that interception directions are sought and obtained *ex parte*; to provide for adequate procedures to ensure that data obtained pursuant to the interception of communications is managed lawfully and not used or interfered with unlawfully; to provide for procedures to be followed for processing, examining, copying, sharing, disclosing, sorting through, using, storing or destroying of any data; and to provide for principles for the safeguarding of data when dealing with the management of data.

3.2 The Bill arises from the Constitutional Court judgment in *Amabhungane Centre for Investigative Journalism NPC and Another v Minister of Justice and Correctional Services and Others* 2021 (3) SA 246 (CC), which recognised the importance of the right of privacy in the context of state surveillance. The Constitutional Court ordered that the declaration of constitutional invalidity of RICA would be suspended to afford Parliament the opportunity to remedy the defects in RICA by 4 February 2024.

4. A copy of the Bill can be found on the websites of the Parliamentary Monitoring Group at http://www.pmg.org.za and the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development at www.justice.gov.za and, after introduction, may also be obtained from the Government Printers: Cape Town (Telephone number: (021) 465-7531).

DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE AND CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT

GENERAL NOTICE 1943 OF 2023

PUBLICATION OF EXPLANATORY SUMMARY OF THE NATIONAL PROSECUTING AUTHORITY AMENDMENT BILL, 2023

1. Notice is hereby given in terms of Rule 276(1)(b) of the Rules of the National Assembly that the Minister of Justice and Correctional Services intends to introduce the National Prosecuting Authority Amendment Bill, 2023 (the Bill), in the National Assembly shortly.

2. The explanatory summary of the Bill is hereby published in accordance with Rule 276(1)(c) of the Rules of the National Assembly.

3.1 The Bill seeks to amend the National Prosecuting Authority Act, 1998, so as to insert certain definitions; to provide for the establishment of the Investigating Directorate against Corruption (IDAC) and its powers and functions; to provide for appointment of investigators in IDAC; to provide for the appointment of investigators, to provide for the security screening of investigators, to provide for the remuneration and conditions of service of investigators; provide for the establishment of a mechanism to deal with complaints of a serious nature pertaining to persons appointed at or assigned to an investigating directorate; to provide for powers and functions of investigators; to provide for transitional arrangements relating to the existing Investigating Directorate to become part of the IDAC; to amend RICA, 2002, so as to make provision for applications for directions in terms of RICA by the head of IDAC; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

4. A copy of the Bill can be found on the websites of the Parliamentary Monitoring Group at http://www.pmg.org.za and the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development at www.justice.gov.za and, after introduction, may also be obtained from the Government Printers: Cape Town (Telephone number: (021) 465-7531).

STATISTICS SOUTH AFRICA

GENERAL NOTICE 1944 OF 2023

THE HEAD: STATISTICS SOUTH AFRICA notifies for general information that the Consumer Price Index is as follows:

Consumer Price Index, Rate **(Base Dec 2021=100)**

Rate: **June 2023 – 5.4**

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE, INDUSTRY AND COMPETITION

GENERAL NOTICE 1945 OF 2023

INTERNATIONAL TRADE ADMINISTRATION COMMISSION OF SOUTH AFRICA

CORRECTION NOTICE

The following paragraph replace the corresponding paragraph in List No. 04/2023, which appeared in Government Gazette No. 49011 of 21 July 2023:

MINISTERIAL DIRECTIVE TO REVIEW THE CUSTOM DUTY ON FROZEN MIXED VEGETABLES CLASSIFIABLE UNDER TARIFF SUBHEADING 0710.90
Ref: 03/2023 **Enquiries**: Ms Khosi Mzinjana, Email: kmzinjana@itac.org.za; Mrs. Amina Varachia, Email: avarachia@itac.org.za, and Mrs Dolly Ngobeni, Email: dngobeni@itac.org.za.

For enquiries contact: Ms Khosi Mzinjana, Email: kmzinjana@itac.org.za; Mrs. Amina Varachia, Email: avarachia@itac.org.za, and Mrs Dolly Ngobeni, Email: dngobeni@itac.org.za

Representation should be submitted to the aforementioned ITAC officials on or before 21 August 2023.

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE, INDUSTRY AND COMPETITION

GENERAL NOTICE 1946 OF 2023

INTERNATIONAL TRADE ADMINISTRATION COMMISSION

CUSTOMS TARIFF APPLICATIONS

LIST 05/2023

The International Trade Administration Commission (herein after referred to as ITAC or the Commission) has received the following application concerning the Customs Tariff. Any objection to or comment on this representation should be submitted to the Chief Commissioner, ITAC, Private Bag X753, Pretoria, 0001. Attention is drawn to the fact that the rate of duty mentioned in this application is that requested by the applicant and that the Commission may, depending on its findings, recommend a lower or higher rate of duty.

CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION

The submission of confidential information to the Commission in connection with customs tariff applications is governed by section 3 of the Tariff Investigations Regulations, which regulations can be found on ITAC's website at http://www.itac.org.za/documents/R.397.pdf.
These regulations require that if any information is considered to be confidential, then a non-confidential version of the information must be submitted, simultaneously with the confidential version. In submitting a non-confidential version the regulations are strictly applicable and require parties to indicate:

- *Each instance where confidential information has been omitted and the reasons for confidentiality;*
- *A summary of the confidential information which permits other interested parties a reasonable understanding of the substance of the confidential information; and*
- *In exceptional cases, where information is not susceptible to summary, reasons must be submitted to this effect.*

This rule applies to all parties and to all correspondence with and submissions to the Commission, which unless clearly indicated to be confidential, will be made available to other interested parties.

The Commission will disregard any information indicated to be confidential that is not accompanied by a proper non-confidential summary or the aforementioned reasons.
If a party considers that any document of another party, on which that party is submitting representations, does not comply with the above rules and that such deficiency affects that party's ability to make meaningful representations, the details of the deficiency and the reasons why that party's rights are so affected must be submitted to the commission in writing forthwith (and at the latest 14 days prior to the date on which that party's submission is due).
Failure to do so timeously will seriously hamper the proper administration of the investigation, and such party will not be able to subsequently claim an inability to make meaningful representations on the basis of the failure of such other party to meet the requirements.

APPLICATION FOR THE CREATION OF A TEMPORARY REBATE PROVISION OF THE FULL CUSTOMS DUTY FOR THE IMPORTATION OF:

"Collision avoidance equipment for vehicles incorporating a visual detection sensor, classifiable under tariff subheading 8512.20"

APPLICANT:

DriveRisk (Pty) Ltd

Cnr Pretoria Road and 81 Sarel Cilliers Rynfield
BENONI
1501

ITAC reference 03/2023: Enquires: Ms. Princess Matsepane, Ms. Ndivhudzannyi Mokou, Mr Tshepiso Sejamoholo Tel: 012 394 3699/3627 or 1605 or email pmatsepane@itac.org.za, nramphabana@itac.org.za and tsejamoholo@itac.org.za.

THE APPLICANT STATED THE FOLLOWING, AMONGST OTHERS, AS REASONS FOR THE APPLICATION:

1. According to the Road Traffic Management Corporation ("RTMC"), South Africa has one of the worst road accidents recorded in the world and road accidents cost our country over R300 billion a year in collision claims and downtime. Driver cameras are specifically designed to identify common human factors that lead to accidents;

2. There are currently no local manufacturers of the subject product or similar substitute products in the Southern African Customs Union ("SACU") region. This means DriveRisk has no option but to import at a 15% *ad valorem* duty;

3. Given that there is no local producer, the duty has an unnecessary cost raising effect and DriveRisk is not able to offer these products at a competitive price; and

4. Should the application be approved, the duty relief will assist more fleet operators to adopt the technology, leading to safer drivers on our roads and assist the applicant in its growth plans, to preserve existing jobs and enable the creation of additional jobs.

PUBLICATION PERIOD:

Comments should be submitted within **four (4) weeks** of the date of this notice.

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE, INDUSTRY AND COMPETITION

GENERAL NOTICE 1947 OF 2023

STANDARDS ACT, 2008
STANDARDS MATTERS

In terms of the Standards Act, 2008 (Act No. 8 of 2008), the Board of the South African Bureau of Standards has acted in regard to standards in the manner set out in the Schedules to this notice.

SECTION A: DRAFTS FOR COMMENTS

The following draft standards are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South Africa National standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title, scope and purport	Closing Date
SANS 63008 Ed 1	*Household and similar electrical appliances - Accessibility of control elements, doors, lids, drawers and handles*. This document contains accessibility requirements to enable more accessible use of certain elements found on household and similar electrical appliances by older persons and persons with disabilities. It provides guidance to achieve accessible design of only control elements (e.g. knobs, buttons), including control panels, display screens and doors, lids, drawers and handles. It does not enable the full assessment of the overall accessibility of a household appliance. This document covers supporting and auxiliary functions that a user performs regularly. Assembly, installation, configuration or repair of appliances are excluded. This document provides test methods and data that support accessible design. This document gives guidance to apply ISO/TR 22441:2008 and ISO/IEC Guide 71:2014 to the design of various interactive elements of household and similar electrical appliances. It does not deal with remote controls, or control via network or mobile applications. Touch control elements are covered in this document (see also Annex A), but new interaction controls, such as gestures and speech control, are not covered. This document does not deal with safety issues.	2023-09-17
SANS 301489-13 Ed 1	*Electromagnetic compatibility and Radio spectrum Matters (ERM); Electroagnetic Compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 13: Specific conditions for Citizens' Band (CB) radio and ancillary equipment (speech and non-speech*). Covers the assessment of Citizens' Band (CB) radio equipment, intended for the transmission of speech and/or data (non-speech), and associated ancillary equipment, in respect of Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC).	2023-09-17

SCHEDULE A.1: AMENDMENT OF EXISTING STANDARDS

The following draft amendments are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South African National Standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Scope of amendment	Closing Date
SANS 5210 Ed 2.4	*Determination of Nitrate and Nitrate in water samples.*	Amended to change the title of the standard, to update technical content on some of the clauses.	2023-09-18

SCHEDULE A.2: WITHDRAWAL OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following published standards are issued for comments with regard to the intention by the South African Bureau of Standards to withdrawn them.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date
SANS 60598-2-6 Ed 1	*Luminaires Part 2: Particular requirements Section 6: Luminaires with built-in transformers or convertors for filament lamps*	The standard is obsolete.	2023-09-30

SCHEDULE A.3: WITHDRAWAL OF INFORMATIVE AND NORMATIVE DOCUMENTS

In terms of section 24(5) of the Standards Act, the following documents are being considered for withdrawal.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date

SECTION B:ISSUING OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS

SHEDULE B.1: NEW STANDARDS

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 62271-204:2023 Ed 2	*High-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 204: Rigid gas-insulated transmission lines for rated voltage above 52 kV.* Applies to rigid HV gas-insulated transmission lines (GIL) in which the insulation is obtained, at least partly, by an insulating gas or gas mixture other than air at atmospheric pressure, for alternating current of rated voltages above 52 kV, and for service frequencies up to and including 60 Hz.
SANS 1482:2023 Ed 3	*Ladies' shoes, flat lasted, with stuck-on outer soles.* Specifies requirements for materials and construction for ladies' shoes made in accordance with the flat-lasted stuck-on principle.
SANS 12402-2:2023 Ed 2	*Personal flotation devices – Part 2: Lifejackets, performance level 275 – Safety requirements.* Specifies the safety requirements for lifejackets, performance level 275.
SANS 7816-4:2023 Ed 4	*Identification cards – Integrated circuit cards – Part 4: Organization, security and commands for interchange*. Specifies contents of command-response pairs exchanged at the interface.
SANS 62841-3-10:2023 Ed 1	*Electric motor-operated hand-held tools, transportable tools and lawn and garden machinery – Safety – Part 3-10: Particular requirements for transportable cut-off machines.* Applies to transportable cut-off machines intended to cut materials such as metals, concrete and masonry and to be fitted with one abrasive.
SANS 60335-2-113:2023 Ed 1	*Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 2-113: Particular requirements for beauty care appliances incorporating lasers and intense light sources.* Deals with the safety of cosmetic and beauty care appliances incorporating lasers or intense light sources for household and similar purposes, where their operation relies on contact with the skin, their rated voltage being not more than 250 V.
SATS 62257-7-3:2023 Ed 1	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 7-3: Generator set – Selection of generator sets for rural electrification systems.* Specifies the general requirements for the selection, sizing, erection and operation of generator sets in decentralized rural electrification systems.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 62282-3-100:2023 Ed 2	*Fuel cell technologies – Part 3-100: Stationary fuel cell power systems – Safety.* Applies to stationary packaged, self-contained fuel cell power systems or fuel cell power systems comprised of factory matched packages of integrated systems which generate electricity through electrochemical reactions.
SANS 60947-8:2023 Ed 2	*Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 8: Control units for built-in thermal protection (PTC) for rotating electrical machines.* Specifies requirements for control units, which control a switching device in response to the PTC thermistors incorporated in rotating electrical machines and the industrial application.
SANS 20346:2023 Ed 3	*Personal protective equipment – Protective footwear.* Specifies basic and additional (optional) requirements for protective footwear used for general purpose.
SANS 556-2-5:2023 Ed 2	*Low-voltage switchgear – Part 2-5: Earth leakage switches – Switches that incorporate residual current protection.* Covers earth leakage devices, without overcurrent protection, rated at voltages not exceeding 1 000 V a.c., with residual operating currents from 6 mA to 30 A.
SANS 60335-2-111:2023 Ed 1	*Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 2-111: Particular requirements for electric ondol mattress with a non-flexible heated part.* Deals with the safety of electric ondol-mattresses for household and similar purposes, their rated voltage being not more than 250 V.
SANS 60507:2023 Ed 1	*Artificial pollution tests on high-voltage ceramic and glass insulators to be used on a.c. systems.* Applies to the determination of the power frequency withstand characteristics of ceramic and glass insulators to be used outdoors and exposed to polluted atmospheres, on a.c. systems with the highest voltage of the system greater than 1 000 V.
SANS 62841-4-2:2023 Ed 1	*Electric motor-operated hand-held tools, transportable tools and lawn and garden machinery – Safety – Part 4-2: Particular requirements for hedge trimmers.* Applies to hand-held hedge trimmers which are designed for use by one operator for trimming hedges and bushes, including extended-reach hedge trimmers with a maximum length of 3,5 m.
SANS 51177:2023 Ed 2	*Impact attenuating playground surfacing – Methods of test for determination of impact attenuation.* Specifies the test apparatus and the impact test methods for determining the impact attenuation of surfacing by measuring the acceleration experienced during impact.
SANS 301489-33:2023 Ed 1	*Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services – Part 33: Specific conditions for ultra-wideband (UWB) devices; Harmonised Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.1(b) of Directive 2014/53/EU.* Specifies technical characteristics and methods of measurements for radio devices based on UWB technology in respect of Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC).
SANS 303687:2023 Ed 1	*6 GHz WAS/RLAN; Harmonised Standard for access to radio spectrum.* Specifies technical characteristics and methods of measurements for 6 GHz Wireless Access Systems including Radio Local Area Network (WAS/RLAN) equipment.
SATR 15801:2023 Ed 1	*Document management – Electronically stored information – Recommendations for trustworthiness and reliability.* Describes the implementation and operation of information management systems that store and make available for use electronically stored information (ESI) in a trustworthy and reliable manner.
SATS 19163-2:2023 Ed 1	*Geographic information – Content components and encoding rules for imagery and gridded data – Part 2: Implementation schema.* Specifies an implementation schema based on the content models for geographic imagery and gridded thematic data defined in the ISO/TS 19163-1 (published in South Africa as an identical adoption under the designation SATS 19163-1).
SANS 60335-2-74:2023 Ed 3	*Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 2-74: Particular requirements for portable immersion heaters.* Deals with the safety of portable electric immersion heaters for household and similar purposes, their rated voltage being not more than 250 V.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 60335-2-34:2023 Ed 6	*Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 2-34: Particular requirements for motor-compressors.* Deals with the safety of sealed (hermetic and semi-hermetic type) motor-compressors, their protection and control systems, if any, which are intended for use in equipment for household and similar purposes and which conform with the standards applicable to such equipment.
SANS 7811-2:2023 Ed 3	*Identification cards – Recording technique – Part 2: Magnetic stripe – Low coercivity.* Defines the characteristics for identification cards as defined in Clause 4 of this document and the use of such cards for international interchange.
SANS 7811-6:2023 Ed 4	*Identification cards – Recording technique – Part 6: Magnetic stripe – High coercivity.* Specifies requirements for a high coercivity magnetic stripe (including any protective overlay) on an identification card, the encoding technique and coded character sets.
SANS 15693-1:2023 Ed 3	*Cards and security devices for personal identification – Contactless vicinity objects – Part 1: Physical characteristics.* Defines the physical characteristics of vicinity cards (VICCs).
SANS 15693-3:2023 Ed 3	*Cards and security devices for personal identification – Contactless vicinity objects – Part 3: Anticollision and transmission protocol.* Specifies the protocols and commands other parameters required to initialize communications between a vicinity integrated circuit card and a vicinity coupling device, methods to detect and communicate with one card among several cards ("anticollision"), optional means to ease and speed up the selection of one among several cards based on application criteria.
SANS 61557-16:2023 Ed 1	*Electrical safety in low voltage distribution systems up to 1 000 V a.c. and 1 500 V d.c. – Equipment for testing, measuring or monitoring of protective measures – Part 16: Equipment for testing the effectiveness of the protective measures of electrical equipment and/or medical electrical equipment.* Defines performance requirements for test and measurement equipment to determine the effectiveness of the protective measures of electrical measures for electrical equipment and/or medical electrical equipment described in IEC 62353.
SANS 60079-31:2023 Ed 3	*Explosive atmospheres – Part 31: Equipment dust ignition protection by enclosure "t".* Applies to equipment protected by enclosure and surface temperature limitation for use in explosive dust atmospheres.
SANS 62055-31:2023 Ed 2	*Electricity metering – Payment systems – Part 31: Particular requirements – Static payment meters for active energy (classes 0,5,1 and 2).* Applies to newly manufactured, static watt-hour payment meters of accuracy classes 0,5, 1 and 2 for direct connection, for the measurement of alternating current electrical energy consumption of a frequency in the range 45 Hz to 65 Hz that include a supply control switch for the purpose of interruption or restoration of the electricity supply to the load in accordance with the current value of the available credit maintained in the payment meter.
SANS 9809-1:2023 Ed 3	*Gas cylinders – Design, construction and testing of refillable seamless steel gas cylinders and tubes – Part 1:Quenched and tempered steel cylinders and tubes with tensile strength less than 1 100 MPa.* Specifies minimum requirements for the material, design, construction and workmanship, manufacturing processes, examination and testing at time of manufacture for refillable seamless steel gas cylinders and tubes with water capacities up to and including 450 l.

SCHEDULE B.2: AMENDED STANDARDS

The following standards have been amended in terms of section 24(1)(a) of the Standards Act

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 60335-2-17:2023 Ed 3.2	*Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 2-17: Particular requirements for blankets, pads, clothing, and similar flexible heating appliances. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to update referenced standards, terms and definitions, general conditions for the tests, the requirements for classification, marking and instructions, power input and current, heating, leakage current and electric strength at operating temperature, moisture resistance, leakage current and electric strength, abnormal operation, mechanical strength, construction, supply connection and external flexible cords, resistance to heat and fire, and to update the figures on radiation, toxicity and similar hazards and the annex on routine tests.
SANS 60335-2-54:2023 Ed 4.2	*Household and similar electrical appliances – Safety – Part 2-54: Particular requirements for surface-cleaning appliances for household use employing liquids or steam. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to update the clause on stability and mechanical hazards requirements, and construction requirements.
SANS 62841-3-1:2023 Ed 1.1	*Electric motor-operated hand-held tools, transportable tools and lawn and garden machinery – Safety – Part 3-1: Particular requirements for transportable table saws. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 1.* Amended to update referenced standards, terms and definitions, the clauses on marking and instructions, and on abnormal operation, the requirements on mechanical hazards, mechanical strength, construction, creepage distances, and on clearances and distances through insulation, and the annex on battery tools and battery packs.
Standard No. and year	**Title, scope and purport**
SANS 1652:2023 Ed 1.7	*Battery chargers – Industrial type. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 7.* Amended to update referenced standards, the requirements on electrolytic capacitors, enclosure, preparation of battery charger, and to change the designation of annex A from "guide to purchasers on preparing an enquiry" to "guide on preparing an enquiry".
SANS 3001-GR40:2023 Ed 1.2	*Civil engineering test methods – Part GR40: Determination of the California bearing ratio. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to update the introduction, referenced standards, the clauses on apparatus, procedure, calculations, test report, and the annex on example of the calculation procedure.
SANS 1350:2023 Ed 1.3	*Guardrails for roads – W-section. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 3.* Amended to update the requirements for materials and dimensions, the table on tensile properties, and figures, and to delete the appendix on notes to purchasers.
SANS 434:2023 Ed 6.2	*General Protective Clothing. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to update the referenced standards, the pocket requirements, and to delete the annex on notes to purchasers.
SANS 414:2023 Ed 1.1	*Coal and coke – Analysis and testing – Higher rank coal ash and coke ash – Major and minor elements – Acid digestion/flame atomic absorption spectrometric method. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 1.* Amended to update the referenced standards.
SANS 409:2023 Ed 1.1	*Coal and coke – Analysis and testing – Determination of trace elements – Coal, coke and fly-ash – Determination of eleven trace elements – Flame atomic absorption spectrometric method. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 1.* Amended to update the referenced standards.
SANS 446:2023 Ed 4.2	*Absorbent gauze (fabric and swabs) and butter muslin. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to delete the annex on notes to purchasers.
SANS 1118-6:2023 Ed 3.4	*School clothing – Part 6: Dresses, tunics and gyms. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 4.* Amended to delete the annex on notes to purchasers.
SANS 1118-10:2023 Ed 1.5	*School clothing – Part 10: Jerseys and cardigans. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 5.* Amended to update referenced standards and to delete the appendix on notes to purchasers.
SANS 1613:2023 Ed 2.1	*Warp-knitted terry towelling fabric and articles. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 1.* Amended to delete the annex on notes to purchasers.

SCHEDULE B.3: WITHDRAWN STANDARDS

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following standards have been withdrawn.

Standard No. and year	Title
ARP 062-2:2005 Ed 1	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 2: From requirements to a range of electrification systems.*
ARP 062-6:2006 Ed 1	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 6: Acceptance, operation, maintenance and replacement.*
ARP 062-7-1:2011 Ed 2	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 7-1: Generators – Photovoltaic generators.*
ARP 062-8-1:2007 Ed 1	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 8-1: Selection of batteries and battery management systems for stand-alone electrification systems – Specific case of automotive flooded lead-acid batteries available in developing countries.*
ARP 062-9-1:2009 Ed 1	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 9-1: Micropower systems.*
ARP 062-9-3:2008 Ed 1	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 9-3: Integrated system – User interface.*
ARP 062-9-5:2007 Ed 1	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 9-5: Integrated system – Selection of portable PV lanterns for rural electrification projects.*
ARP 062-12-1:2008 Ed 1	*Recommendations for small renewable energy and hybrid systems for rural electrification – Part 12-1: Selection of self-ballasted lamps (CFL) for rural electrification systems and recommendations for household lighting equipment.*
SANS 5117:2005 Ed 2	*Textiles – Formulae used in statistical analysis.*
CKS 499:2013 Ed 1.2	*Laundry alkali.*

SCHEDULE B4: ESTABLISHMENT OF TECHNICAL COMMITTEES

In terms of the South African Norm for the development of South African National Standards, the following technical committee has been established:

Committee No.	Title	Scope

If your organization is interested in participating in these committees, please send an e-mail to Dsscomments@sabs.co.za for more information.

SCHEDULE B5: RETRACTION OF PREVIOUSLY GAZETTED ITEMS

Notice is hereby given that the following standards gazetted for public enquiry have been retracted.

Standard No.	Title	Scope	Date gazetted

SCHEDULE B6: GENERAL

Notice is hereby given that the following standards/draft standard have been renumbered.

Standard/draft No.	Title	Scope	New number/designation

SCHEDULE B7: ADDRESS OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN BUREAU OF STANDARDS HEAD OFFICE

Copies of the standards mentioned in this notice can be obtained from the Head Office of the South African Bureau of Standards at 1 Dr Lategan Road, Groenkloof, Private Bag X191, Pretoria 0001.

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE, INDUSTRY AND COMPETITION

GENERAL NOTICE 1948 OF 2023

STANDARDS ACT, 2008
STANDARDS MATTERS

In terms of the Standards Act, 2008 (Act No. 8 of 2008), the Board of the South African Bureau of Standards has acted in regard to standards in the manner set out in the Schedules to this notice.

SECTION A: DRAFTS FOR COMMENTS

The following draft standards are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South Africa National standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title, scope and purport	Closing Date
SANS 19161-1 Ed 1	Geographic information - Geodetic references - Part 1: International terrestrial reference system (ITRS).	2023-09-04
SANS 20345 Ed 3	*Personal protective equipment - Safety footwear*. This document specifies basic and additional (optional) requirements for safety footwear used for general purpose. It includes, for example, mechanical risks, slip resistance, thermal risks, ergonomic behaviour. It also specifies requirements for safety footwear equipped with customized insocks, customized safety footwear or individual manufactured customized safety footwear.	2023-09-04
SANS 2084 Ed 1	*Menstrual cups - Design, performance, packing and marking requirements.* Covers the materials, design, performance,packaging and marking requirements for menstrual cups.	2023-09-04
SANS 2084 Ed 1	*Menstrual cups - Design, performance, packing and marking requirements.* Covers the materials, design, performance,packaging and marking requirements for menstrual cups.	2023-08-15
SANS 61215-1-3 Ed 1	*Terrestrial photovoltaic (PV) modules - Design qualification and type approval -Part 1-3: Special requirements for testing of thin-film amorphous silicon based photovoltaic (PV) modules.* This document lays down requirements for the design qualification of terrestrial photovoltaic modules suitable for long-term operation in open-air climates. The useful service life of modules so qualified will depend on their design, their environment and the conditions under which they are operated. Test results are not construed as a quantitative prediction of module lifetime.	2023-08-15
SANS 10400-O Ed 4	*The application of the National Building Regulations Part O: Lighting and ventilation*. Provides deemed-to-satisfy requirements for compliance with part O (Lighting and ventilation) of the National Building Regulations.	2023-09-05
SANS 704 Ed 3	*Terminology work - Principles and methods. Establishes the basic principles and methods for preparing and compiling terminologies both inside and outside the framework of standardization.*	2023-08-29
SANS 60095-1 Ed 4	*Lead-acid starter batteries Part 1: General requirements and methods of test.* Applies to lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V, used primarily as a power source for the starting of internal combustion engines, lighting, and for auxiliary equipment of internal combustion engine vehicles. These batteries are commonly called "starter batteries". This document is applicable to batteries for the following purposes: batteries for passenger cars; batteries for commercial and industrial vehicles. This document is not applicable to batteries for other purposes, such as the starting of railcar internal combustion engines or for motorcycles and other power sport vehicles.	2023-08-20
SANS 673 Ed 4	*Mixtures of copper-chromium-arsenic compounds for timber preservation.* Covers mixtures of copper-chromium-arsenic compounds (in the form of a powder, a granular powder, a paste, or a liquid) for timber preservation.	2023-08-15

SANS 1808-53 Ed 2	*Water supply and distribution system components - Part 53: Drain cocks for hot-water storage containers.* Specifies dimensional and performance requirements for copper alloy drain cocks that are suitable for the draining of hot-water storage containers that comply with SANS 151.	2023-08-06
SANS 500 Ed 2	*Inspection, examination and testing of manually operated chain blocks and chain lever hoists currently in use.* Specifies the requirements for the inspection, examination and testing of manually operated chain blocks and chain lever hoists in use.	2023-08-06
SANS 60534-4 Ed 1	*Industrial-process control valves -Part 4: Inspection and routine testing.* Specifies the requirements for the inspection and routine testing of control valves manufactured in conformity with the other parts of IEC 60534.	2023-08-08
SATR 61511-0 Ed 1	*Functional safety - Safety instrumented systems for the process industry sector - Part 0: Functional safety for the process industry and IEC 61511.* Provides an overview of the other three parts of IEC 61511.	2023-08-08
SANS 60534-7 Ed 1	*Industrial-process control valves - Part 7: Control valve data sheet.* Provides a list of requirements that are normally necessary for the procurement of the majority of control valves for process systems.	2023-08-08
ARP 0111 Ed 1	*Net zero guidelines.* Provides guiding principles and recommendations to enable a common, global approach to achieving net zero greenhouse gas emissions through alignment of voluntary initiatives and adoption of standards, policies and national and international regulation.	2023-07-31
SANS 60331-3 Ed 2	*Tests for electric cables under fire conditions - Circuit integrity Part 3: Test method for fire with shock at a temperature of at least 830 °C for cables of rated voltage up to and including 0,6/1,0 kV tested in a metal enclosure.* Specifies the test apparatus and procedure and gives the performance requirements, including recommended flame application times, for low-voltage power cables of rated voltage up to and including 0,6/1,0 kV, and control cables with a rated voltage which are required to maintain circuit integrity when tested in a metal enclosure and when subject to fire and mechanical shock under specified conditions.	2023-09-05
SANS 62832-2 Ed 1	*Industrial-process measurement, control and automation - Digital factory framework - Part 2: Model elements.* Specifies detailed requirements for model elements of the Digital Factory framework.	2023-09-05
SANS 62832-3 Ed 1	*Industrial-process measurement, control and automation - Digital Factory framework - Part 3: Application of Digital Factory for life cycle management of production systems.* Specifies rules of the Digital Factory framework for managing information of a production system throughout its life cycle.	2023-09-05
SANS 10118 Ed 4	*The aerial application of pesticides*. Covers the aerial application of pesticides and the requirements for the training of agricultural pilots, aircraft to be used for the application, landing places, protection of pilots and ground personnel, health precautions for pilots and ground personnel, the registration holder of the pesticide, the chemical distributor, the sponsor, and aerial application companies, and first-aid treatment in cases of suspected poisoning.	2023-07-22
SANS 60884-1 Ed 3	*Plugs and socket-outlets for household and similar purposes Part 1: General requirements*. Applies to plugs and fixed or portable socket-outlets for a.c. only, with or without earthing contact, with a rated voltage greater than 50 V but not exceeding 440 V and a rated current not exceeding 32 A, intended for household and similar purposes, either indoors or outdoors.	2023-07-22

SCHEDULE A.1: AMENDMENT OF EXISTING STANDARDS

The following draft amendments are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South African National Standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Scope of amendment	Closing Date
SANS 347 Ed 3.1	*Categorization and conformity assessment criteria for all pressure equipment.*		2023-09-04
SANS 709 Ed 1.2	*Aluminium cans for milk and cream.*	Amended to remove notes to purchasers.	2023-09-04
SANS 1124-3 Ed 1.2	*Syringes and needles (sterile-packed for single use) Part 3: Syringes with a re-use prevention feature.*	Amended to update a refence document	2023-09-04
SANS 10089-2 Ed 3.2	*The petroleum industry Part 2: Electrical and other installations in the distribution and marketing sector.*	Amended to update the scope, referenced standards, definitions, to modify the requirements for classification of hazardous locations, to delete clause on certification requirements for explosion-protected apparatus, update the clause on selection of explosion-protected apparatus, static electricity, and bonding, and change the annex on fuel storage depots to informative.	2023-08-15
SANS 1352 Ed 1.1	*The installation, maintenance, replacement and repair of domestic air source water heating heat pump systems.*	Amended to delete a tradename, and the reference to the certificate of compliance.	2023-08-29
SANS 10086-1 Ed 4.2	*The installation, inspection and maintenance of equipment used in explosive atmospheres Part 1: Installations including surface installations on mines.*	Amended to update the foreword and referenced standards.	2023-08-15
SANS 60079-7 Ed 4.1	*Explosive atmospheres Part 7: Equipment protection by increased safety "e"*	Amended to update the requirements on connection facilities for external conductors.	2023-08-15
SANS 1423-1 Ed 3.1	*Performance requirements for textile fabrics of low flammability Part 1: Apparel fabrics.*	Amended to update normative references and delete the annex on notes to purchasers.	2023-08-06
SANS 304 Ed 3.2	*Linen threads for footwear.*	Amended to update requirements for Twist variation and to delete the annex on notes to purchasers	2023-08-06
SANS 555-1 Ed 1.1	*Fluids for electrotechnical applications Part 1: Unused inhibited mineral insulating oils for transformers and switchgear.*	Amended to update referenced standards, oxidation stability and to update requirements for gassing tendency in table 1.	2023-08-06
SANS 555-3 Ed 1.1	*Fluids for electrotechnical applications Part 3: Recycled inhibited mineral insulating oils for transformers and switchgear.*	Amended to update referenced standards, oxidation stability and to update requirement for gassing tendency in table 1.	2023-08-06
SANS 5449 Ed 3.1	*Dimensional changes of made-up textile articles.*	Amended to delete notes to users.	2023-08-06
SANS 1732 Ed 1.1	*Greywater Reuse Systems - General Requirements.*	Amended to delete a tradename, and the reference to the certificate of compliance.	2023-09-06
SANS 1029 Ed 3.2	*Miniature substations for rated a.c. voltages up to and including 24 Kv.*	Amended to update referenced standards, and the annexes on model form for schedules A and B and drawings.	2023-07-22

SANS 10142-2 Ed 1.3	*The wiring of premises Part 2: Medium-voltage installations above 1 kV a.c. not exceeding 22 kV a.c. and up to and including 3 MVA installed capacity.*	Amended to update referenced standards, to update general requirements and to delete the annex on the appointment of competent persons in South Africa..	2023-07-22
SANS 62271-102 Ed 1.2	*High-voltage switchgear and controlgear - Part 102: Alternating current disconnectors and earthing switches*	Corrected to change the reference number in the subclause on rated mechanical terminal load (subclause 4.103).	2023-07-22
SANS 62606 Ed 1.2	*General requirements for arc fault detection and protection devices (AFDDs).*		2023-07-22
SANS 60320-3 Ed 1.2	*Appliance couplers for household and similar general purposes Part 3: Standard sheets and gauges.*		2023-07-22
ARP 061 Ed 1.2	*Procurement guide for large cage and wound-rotor induction motors of medium voltage.*	Amended to update referenced standards.	2023-07-22

SCHEDULE A.2: WITHDRAWAL OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following published standards are issued for comments with regard to the intention by the South African Bureau of Standards to withdrawn them.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date
SANS 60834-6 Ed 2	*Fixed capacitors for use in electronic equipment Part 6: Sectional specification: Fixed metallized polycarbonate film dielectric d.c. capacitors.*	The standard is obsolete.	2023-09-06
SANS 60834-6-1 Ed 2	*Fixed capacitors for use in electronic equipment Part 6-1: Blank detail specification: Fixed metallized polycarbonate film dielectric d.c. capacitors - Assessment level E*	The standard is obsolete.	2023-09-06
SATS 17022 Ed 1	*Conformity assessment - Requirements and recommendations for content of a third-party audit report on management systems.*	Withdrawn at ISO without replacement.	2023-09-06
SANS 22134 Ed 1	*Practical guidelines for socioterminology*	Standard is outdated and no longer relevant to the industry.	2023-09-06
SANS 61753-2-1 Ed 1	*Fibre optic communication system design guides Part 1: Single-mode digital and analogue systems*	Withdrawn at ISO with no replacement.	2023-09-06
SANS 61282-1 Ed 1	*Fibre optic communication system design guides Part 1: Single-mode digital and analogue systems.*	Withdrawn at ISO with no replacement.	2023-09-06

SCHEDULE A.3: WITHDRAWAL OF INFORMATIVE AND NORMATIVE DOCUMENTS

In terms of section 24(5) of the Standards Act, the following documents are being considered for withdrawal.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date

SECTION B:ISSUING OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS

SHEDULE B.1: NEW STANDARDS

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 10010:2023 Ed 1	*Quality management - Guidance to understand, evaluate and improve organizational quality culture*. Gives guidance on the evaluation, development and improvement of organizational quality culture to help an organization to achieve sustained success. This document takes into account the fundamental concepts and quality management principles, with specific focus on people engagement and leadership.
SANS 60335-2-115:2023 Ed 1	*Household and similar electrical appliances - Safety - Part 2-115: Particular requirements for skin beauty care appliances*. Deals with the safety of electric appliances for skin beauty care of persons and intended for household, commercial and similar purposes, their rated voltage being not more than 250 V.
SANS 12616-1:2023 Ed 1	*Terminology work in support of multilingual communication - Part 1: Fundamentals of translation-oriented thermography*. Specifies requirements and recommendations related to fundamentals of translation-oriented terminography for producing sound bilingual or multilingual terminology collections.
SANS 26580:2023 Ed 1	*Software and systems engineering - Methods and tools for the feature-based approach to software and systems product line engineering*. Addresses a specialization of the more general reference model for software and systems product line engineering and management described in ISO/IEC 26550.
SANS 301489-27:2023 Ed 1	*ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services - Part 27: Specific conditions for Ultra Low Power Active Medical Implants (ULP-AMI) and related peripheral devices (ULP-AMI-P) operating in the 402 MHz to 405 MHz bands; - Harmonized Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.1(b) Directive 2014/53/EU*. Covers the assessment of all radio transceivers associated with Ultra Low Power Active Medical Implants (ULP-AMIs) and associated Peripheral ULP-AMI-Ps) in respect of ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC).
SANS 301489-29:2023 Ed 1	*ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 29: Specific conditions for Medical Data Service Devices (MEDS) operating in the 401 MHz to 402 MHz and 405 MHz to 406 MHz bands; Harmonised Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.1(b) of Directive 2014/53/EU*. Covers the assessment of all radio transceivers associated with Ultra Low Power Active Medical Implants (ULP-AMIs), Ultra Low Power Active Medical Devices (ULP-AMDs), Ultra Low Power Body Worn Devices (ULP-BWDs) and associated Ultra Low Power Active Medical Implant Peripherals (ULP-AMI-Ps), Ultra Low Power Active Medical Device Peripherals (ULP-AMD-Ps) in respect of ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC).
SANS 301489-31:2023 Ed 1	*Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 31: Specific conditions for equipment in the 9 kHz to 315 kHz band for ultra-low power active medical implants (ULP-AMI) and related peripheral devices (ULP-AMI-P); Harmonised standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.1(b) of Directive 2014/53/EU*. Covers the assessment of all radio transceivers associated with inductive Ultra Low Power Active Medical Implant (ULP AMI) transmitters and receivers operating in the range from 9 kHz to 315 kHz and any associated external radio apparatus (ULP-AMI Ps) transmitting in the frequency range of 9 kHz to 315 kHz including external programmers and patient related telecommunication devices in respect of ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC).

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 301489-35:2023 Ed 1	*ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 35: Specific requirements for Low Power Active Medical Implants (LP-AMI) operating in the 2 483,5 MHz to 2 500 MHz bands; Harmonised Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.1(b) of Directive 2014/53/EU*. Covers the assessment of all radio transceivers associated with Low Power Active Medical Implants (LP-AMIs) and associated Peripheral devices (LP-AMI-P) in respect of ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC).
SANS 301489-50:2023 Ed 1	*Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 50: specific conditions for cellular communication base station (BS), repeater and ancillary equipment; harmonised standard for electromagnetic compatibility*. Specifies technical characteristics and methods of measurements in respect of ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC) for the following equipment types: digital cellular base station equipment, including BS with antenna ports and BS without antenna ports; repeaters; and associated ancillary equipment.
SANS 301489-51:2023 Ed 1	*ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 51: Specific conditions for Automotive, Ground based Vehicles and Surveillance Radar Devices using 24,05 GHz to 24,25 GHz, 24,05 GHz to 24,5 GHz, 76 GHz to 77 GHz and 77 GHz to 81 GHz; Harmonised Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.1(b) of Directive 2014/53/EU*. Covers the assessment of automotive, ground based vehicles and surveillance radar devices using 24,05 GHz to 24,25 GHz, 24,05 GHz to 24,5 GHz, 76 GHz to 77 GHz and 77 GHz to 81 GHz in respect of ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC).
SANS 301489-52:2023 Ed 1	*ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 52: Specific conditions for Cellular Communication User Equipment (UE) radio and ancillary equipment; Harmonised Standard for ElectroMagnetic Compatibility*.
SANS 301489-53:2023 Ed 1	*ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC) standard for radio equipment and services; Part 53: Specific conditions for terrestrial sound broadcasting and digital TV broadcasting service transmitters and associated ancillary equipment Harmonised Standard covering the essential requirements of article 3.1(b) of Directive 2014/53/EU*. Specifies technical characteristic and methods of measurements for terrestrial sound broadcasting and digital TV broadcasting service transmitters, exciters, repeaters, active deflectors, On-Channel repeaters and any associated ancillary equipment.
SANS 60335-2-50:2023 Ed 5	*Household and similar electrical appliances - Safety Part 2-50: Particular requirements for commercial electric bains-marie*. Deals with the safety of electrically operated commercial bains-marie, their rated voltage being not more than 250 V for single-phase appliances connected between one phase and neutral, and 480 V for other appliances.
SANS 60335-2-55:2023 Ed 4	*Household and similar electrical appliances - Safety Part 2-55: Particular requirements for electrical appliances for use with aquariums and garden ponds*. Deals with the safety of electric appliances for use with aquariums and garden ponds for household and similar purposes, their rated voltage being not more than 250 V, including direct current (DC) supplied appliances and battery-operated appliances
SANS 19111:2023 Ed 3	*Geographic information - Spatial referencing by coordinates*. Defines the conceptual schema for the description of referencing by coordinates. Describes the minimum data required to define coordinate reference systems. Applicable to producers and users of geographic information
SANS 19112:2023 Ed 2	*Geographic information - Spatial referencing by geographic identifiers*. Defines the conceptual schema for spatial references based on geographic identifiers. establishes a general model for spatial referencing using geographic identifiers and defines the components of a spatial reference system. specifies a conceptual scheme for a gazetteer. applicable to digital geographic data, and its principles may be extended to other forms of geographic data such as maps, charts and textual documents.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 15693-2:2023 Ed 3	*Cards and security devices for personal identification - Contactless vicinity objects - Part 3: Anticollision and transmission protocol.* Specifies the protocols and commands other parameters required to initialize communications between a vicinity integrated circuit card and a vicinity coupling device, methods to detect and communicate with one card among several cards ("anticollision"), optional means to ease and speed up the selection of one among several cards based on application criteria.
SANS 60947-8:2023 Ed 2	*Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 8: Control units for built-in thermal protection (PTC) for rotating electrical machines. Specifies requirements for control units, which control a switching device in response to the PTC thermistors incorporated in rotating electrical machines and the industrial application*. Specifies requirements for that type of system comprising a positive temperature coefficient (PTC) thermistor having particular characteristics, and its associated control unit. Includes the characteristics, construction, performance and tests of the control unit and its association with a PTC thermistor designated "Mark A".
SANS 61557-16:2023 Ed 1	*Electrical safety in low voltage distribution systems up to 1 000 V a.c. and 1 500 V d.c. - Equipment for testing, measuring or monitoring of protective measures - Part 16: Equipment for testing the effectiveness of the protective measures of electrical equipment and/or medical electrical equipment.* Defines performance requirements for test and measurement equipment to determine the effectiveness of the protective measures of electrical measures for electrical equipment and/or medical electrical equipment described in IEC 62353.
SANS 62055-31:2023 Ed 2	*Electricity metering - Payment systems Part 31: Particular requirements - Static payment meters for active energy (classes 0,5,1 and 2).* Applies to newly manufactured, static watt-hour payment meters of accuracy classes 0,5, 1 and 2 for direct connection, for the measurement of alternating current electrical energy consumption of a frequency in the range 45 Hz to 65 Hz that include a supply control switch for the purpose of interruption or restoration of the electricity supply to the load in accordance with the current value of the available credit maintained in the payment meter.
SANS 60079-31:2023 Ed 2	*Explosive atmospheres Part 31: Equipment dust ignition protection by enclosure "t".* Applicable to equipment protected by enclosure and surface temperature limitation for use in explosive dust atmospheres. Specifies requirements for design, construction and testing of Ex Equipment and Ex Components.

SCHEDULE B.2: AMENDED STANDARDS

The following standards have been amended in terms of section 24(1)(a) of the Standards Act.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 182-5:2023 Ed 1.4	*Conductors for overhead electrical transmission lines Part 5: Zinc-coated steel wires for conductors and stays. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 4.* Amended to delete the notes to the scope, to update definitions, and to delete the appendix on notes to purchasers.
SANS 1422:2023 Ed 2.2	*Domestic electric laundry treatment machines. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to delete the footnotes on the obtainability of the information on AS-9 swatches and on suitable temperature indicators, and the annex on note to purchasers.
SANS 10222-3:2023 Ed 5.1	*Electrical security installations - Part 3: Electric fences (non-lethal) and manufacture requirements. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 1.* Amended to update the scope, and fundamental requirements, to add a note on the installation of joints, to update electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) requirements, the clauses on electric domestic pet control fences, on strip grazing electric fences, on game control electric fences, and on electric security fences - specialized, to update the annexes on lightning protection requirements for electric fences, on earthing of electric fences, and to delete the annex on certification (electric fence system certificate of compliance), and to add annexes on inspection and tests (new and existing installations), and on recommended tools.
SANS 60335-2-75:2023 Ed 3.2	*Household and similar electrical appliances - Safety Part 2-75: Particular requirements for commercial dispensing appliances and vending machines. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to update the scope, normative references, and the requirements for marking and instructions, heating, and construction.
SANS 60705:2023 Ed 3.2	*Household microwave ovens - Methods for measuring performance. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to update the scope, referenced standards, terms and definitions, to modify the requirements for classification, list of measurements, general conditions for measurements, to update the clauses on dimensions and volume, determination of microwave power output, efficiency, technical tests for performance, heating performance, cooking performance, defrosting performance, and to update the annex on regional defrosting tests.
SANS 141:2023 Ed 2.3	*Glass-reinforced polyester (GRP) laminates. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 3.* Amended to update referenced standards, and to delete the note on the obtainability of further details of a suitable shearing tool, and the annex on notes to purchasers.
SANS 776:2023 Ed 3.2	*Copper alloy gate valves - Heavy duty. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to update referenced standards, the sub-clause on service temperature, to correct the numbering of the tables, to update the clause on materials, construction and performance, the sub-clause on strength test on handwheels, and to delete the annex on notes to purchasers.
SANS 1652:2023 Ed 1.7	*Battery chargers - Industrial type. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No. 2.* Amended to update referenced standards, the requirements on electrolytic capacitors, enclosure, preparation of battery charger, and to change the designation of annex A from "guide to purchasers on preparing an enquiry" to "guide on preparing an enquiry".

SCHEDULE B.3: WITHDRAWN STANDARDS

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following standards have been withdrawn.

Standard No. and year	Title

CONTINUES ON PAGE 258 OF BOOK 3

Printed by and obtainable from the Government Printer, Bosman Street, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001
Contact Centre Tel: 012-748 6200. eMail: info.egazette@gpw.gov.za
Publications: Tel: (012) 748 6053, 748 6061, 748 6065

Government Gazette
Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 698 4 August Augustus 2023 No. 49079

PART 3 OF 3

ISSN 1682-5845

SCHEDULE B4: ESTABLISHMENT OF TECHNICAL COMMITTEES

In terms of the South African Norm for the development of South African National Standards, the following technical committee has been established:

Committee No.	Title	Scope

If your organization is interested in participating in these committees, please send an e-mail to Dsscomments@sabs.co.za for more information.

SCHEDULE B5: RETRACTION OF PREVIOUSLY GAZETTED ITEMS

Notice is hereby given that the following standards gazetted for public enquiry have been retracted.

Standard No.	Title	Scope	Date gazetted

SCHEDULE B6: GENERAL

Notice is hereby given that the following standards/draft standard have been renumbered.

Standard/draft No.	Title	Scope	New number/designation

SCHEDULE B7: ADDRESS OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN BUREAU OF STANDARDS HEAD OFFICE

Copies of the standards mentioned in this notice can be obtained from the Head Office of the South African Bureau of Standards at 1 Dr Lategan Road, Groenkloof, Private Bag X191, Pretoria 0001.

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT

NO. 1949 **4 August 2023**

AIR SERVICE LICENSING ACT, 1990 (ACT NO.115 OF 1990)
APPLICATION FOR THE GRANT OR AMENDMENT OF DOMESTIC AIR SERVICE LICENCE

Pursuant to the provisions of section 15 (1) (b) of Act No. 115 of 1990 and Regulation 8 of the Domestic Air Regulations,1991, it is hereby notified for general information that the application detail of which appear in the appendix, will be considered by the Air Service Licensing Council. Representation in accordance with section 15 (3) of the Act No.115 of 1990 in support of, or in position, an application, should reach the Air Service Licensing Council. Private Box X 193, Pretoria, 0001 or by email at: domesticcouncil@dot.gov.za within 21 days of date of the publication thereof.

APPENDIX I (New Applications)

(A) **Full name and trade name of the applicant.** (B) Full business or residential address of the applicant. (C) Class of license applied for. (D) Type of air service to which application applies. (E) Category of aircraft to which application applies.

(A) **Mpati Freight Cargo (Pty) Ltd trading as Mpati Freight Cargo** (B) 304 Rosemead Court, 659 Church Street, Arcadia, Pretoria, Gauteng, 0007. (C) Class II. (D) Type N1 & N2. (E) Category A3.

APPENDIX II (Amendment Applications)

(A) Full Name and trade name of the applicant. (B) Full business or residential address the applicant. (C) The Class and number of license in respect of which the amendment is sought (D) Type of air service and the amendment thereto which is being applied for (E) Category of aircraft and the amendment thereto which is being applied for. (F) Amendment referred to in section 14(2) (b) to.

(A) Airlink (Proprietary) Ltd trading as Airlink. (B) #3 Greenstone Hill Office Park, Emarald Boulevard, Greenstone Hill, Modderfontein, 1609. (C) Class I (S060D) (D) Type S1. (E) Category A1. (F) Changes in Management Plan: Mr. Tjatji Samuel Mampshika appointed as Responsible Person: Aircraft.

(A) Skyhorse Aviation (Pty) Ltd. (B) Unit 1 Stand 98, Tijger Vallei Office Park, Silverlakes, Pretoria, South Africa (C) Class III (G1113D) (D) Type G2, G3, G4, G5, G7, G8, G10, G15 & G16 (Power line Maintenance) (E) Category A3, H4, H1 & H2. (F) Changes to Postholders: Gregory Clegg replaces Johannes Heijstek as Responsible Person: Aircraft (Fixed Wing Part 135).

(A) Helicopter Charter & Training CC. (B) Boeing Street Central, Port Elizabeth, 6058. (C) Class III (G573D) (D) Type G10 & G15 (Addition of Type G16: Offshore Operations) (E) Category H2 (F) Changes to MP: C. Kleynhans appointed as Accountable Manager, J. Liebenberg appointed as RP: Flight Operations, S. R Marais appointed as RP: Aircraft, S. Honiball appointed as Air Service Safety Officer.

(A) Helicopter Charter & Training CC. (B) Boeing Street Central, Port Elizabeth, 6058. (C) Class II (N565D) (D) Type N1 (E) Category H2 (Addition of Category A3) (F) Changes to MP: C. Kleynhans appointed as Accountable Manager, J. Liebenberg appointed as RP: Flight Operations, S. R Marais appointed as RP: Aircraft, S. Honiball appointed as Air Service Safety Officer.

(A) Fly Jetstream Aviation (Pty) Ltd trading as Fly Jetstream Aviation. (B) Office No 7, Main Terminal Building, Wonderboom Airport, Pretoria, Gauteng, 0182. (C) Class III (G1118D) (D) Type G1, G2, G3, G4, G5,G7, G8, G10, G11, G12, G13, G14 & G15 (E) Category A2, A3, A4, H1 & H2. (F) Changes to Management Plan: Andre Johan Prins appointed as Responsible Person: Aircraft, Henry Miles appointed as Air Service Safety Officer.

(A) Fly Jetstream Aviation (Pty) Ltd trading as Fly Jetstream Aviation. (B) Office No 7, Main Terminal Building, Wonderboom Airport, Pretoria, Gauteng, 0182. (C) Class II (N830D) (D) Type N1 & N2 (E) Category A2, A3, A4, H1 & H2. (F) Changes to Management Plan: Andre Johan Prins appointed as Responsible Person: Aircraft, Henry Miles appointed as Air Service Safety Officer.

(A) Bushveld Game capture CC trading as Bushveld Game Capture. (B) Plaas Doornhang N14, Vryburg, 8600, South Africa. (C) Class III (G1081) (D) Type G2, G3, G10 & G15 (E) Category H2. (F) Addition of Type G5.

(A) Look Up Productions CC trading as Look up Pro. (B) 54 Hayes Road, Protea Ridge, Krugersdorp, 1739. (C) Class III (G1305D) (D) Type G3, G4 & G16 (RPAS) (E) Category A4, H1 & H2. (F) Addition of Type G5 & Changes to Management Plan: Daniel Muller appointed as CEO, Hannes Bezuidenhout appointed as Air Service Safety Officer & Daniel Muller appointed as Responsible Person: Flight Operations.

(A) Zenith Air CC. (B) Hangar 4, Gate 5, Lanseria International Airport, Lanseria. (C) Class II (N603D) (D) Type N1 & N2. (E) Category A1, A2, A3 & A4. (F) Changes to Management Plan: Mr. J. P Du Toit appointed as Responsible Person: Flights Operations, Mr. R.F Strydom appointed as Responsible Person: Aircraft, Ms. A Dorfling appointed as Air Safety Officer.

(A) BAC Helicopters CC. (B) Imbonini Helistops, 4 Barbet Road, Shaka's Head, KZN, 4381. (C) Class II (N1105D) (D) Type N1 & N2. (E) Category H1 & H2. (F) Changes to Management Plan: A.J Bell appointed as Resposible Person: Flight Operations and C. W Wyness appointed as Safety Officer.

(A) BAC Helicopters CC. (B) Imbonini Helistops, 4 Barbet Road, Shaka's Head, KZN, 4381. (C) Class III (G1106D) (D) Type G3, G4, G5, G7, G8, G10, G15 & G16 (RPAS). (E) Category A4, H1 & H2. (F) Changes to Management Plan: A.J Bell appointed as Resposible Person: Flight Operations and C. W Wyness appointed as Safety Officer.

CERTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS FOR DOCUMENTS FILED WITH THE AIR SERVICES LICENSING COUNCIL (ASLC)

In amplification of the provisions of section 15 of the Air Services Licensing Act No. 115 of 1990 ("**ASL Act**") as amended, it is hereby notified that the Air Services Licensing Council ("**Council**") has noticed a substantial increase in the submission of suspicious and possibly fraudulently certified documents to it. Accordingly, Council hereby advises all members of the public that the Council will, from **1 August 2023**, apply strict verification methods on all certified supporting documents submitted to it as part of the application process.

1. CERTIFICATION

Certification is the act of confirming the validity / authenticity of a document and therefore Council requires certified copies of documents to accompany applications submitted to it, so as to ensure the authenticity of such document(s). The certification must be done by a Commissioner of Oaths, who **MUST** be appointed in terms of the Justices of the Peace and Commissioners of Oaths Act No.16 of 1963.

1.1. Who can be a Commissioner of Oaths in South Africa?

The Justices of the Peace and Commissioners of Oaths Act No.16 of 1963 ("**Act**") as well as its Regulations prescribe who may be designated a Commissioner of Oaths as well as the powers assigned to them. According to Section 5 of the Act, a

Commissioner of Oaths can be any person appointed as such by the Minister of Justice ("**Minister**") or appointed by any officer of the Department of Justice who has the rank of Director and is authorised in writing by the Minister. Section 6 of the Act further gives the Minister more powers to designate the holder of any office, as an *ex officio* Commissioner of Oaths for any area specified in a notice published in the Government Gazette.

1.2. Who is designated by the Minister to be a Commissioner of Oaths?

GN 903 in GG19033 of 10 July 1998 as amended, and GN 109 in GG22030 of 2 February 2001, provides a list of various offices which are designated by the Minister to be Commissioner of Oaths. Typically, the list includes[1] Members of the National Executive[2], Attorneys, Notary Public, Conveyancers, Advocates, Members of the Judiciary, Actuaries, Accountants[3], South African Police Service, Clerk of the Court and Assistant Clerk, Judge's Secretary, Justice of the Peace, Messenger of the Court, Peace Officer, Sheriff, Additional Sheriff and Deputy Sheriff or Sworn Translator.

The primary roles of a Commissioner of Oaths is as follows:

1.2.1. to administer oaths or affirmations; and

1.2.2. to certify copies of original documents as true copies.

In circumstances where a particular office is not designated as a Commissioner of Oaths by the Minister, any person occupying a position in that office, can apply to become designated as a Commissioner of Oaths. A Commissioner of Oaths is **only designated for the period when they occupy the particular designated post**. As soon as he or she resigns or retires from the designated post, he or she is automatically seizes to be an *ex officio* Commissioner of Oaths. Should a person wish to remain a Commissioner of Oaths upon resignation or retirement, he or she must reapply to the Department of Justice.

1.3. What does it mean to certify?

A certified copy is a copy (often a photocopy) of an original document that has on it, an endorsement or certificate that it is a true copy of the original document. It does not certify that the original document is genuine, only that it is a true copy of the original document.

In order to certify documents as a true copy of the original, the Commissioner of Oaths must ensure that they have viewed the original documents and that they are identical to the copy that they are commissioning. As a general rule, Commissioner of Oaths fulfil their functions within a local context – that is, they take oaths for persons within the Republic of South Africa, and certify documents for use within the Republic of South Africa.

1.4. How is certification done?

[1] The Regulations provide an exhaustive list of all the offices which are designated as Commissioners of Oaths and who are authorised to administer an oath or take an affirmation.
[2] President or the Acting President of the Republic of South Africa, Ministers and Deputy Ministers
[3] Chartered Accountants, Professional Accountant (SA), Professional Tax Practitioner (SA), Professional Tax Specialist (SA) and Business Accountants in Practice.

The Commissioner of Oaths must be provided with the original document together with a photocopy of the original and thereafter certify the photocopy.

1.5. Documents with photos:

When certifying a document with a photograph, such as a passport, drivers licence or identity document, the Commissioner of Oaths must write: *"Certified to be a true copy of the original seen by me"* on the document or write *"I certify that this is a true likeness of [title and the full name of the individual as appears on the document]* and thereafter:

1.5.1. Sign and date it;

1.5.2. Print his/her name;

1.5.3. Add their occupation, address and telephone number.

1.6. Documents without photos:

For all other documents without photos, the Commissioner of Oaths will write *"Certified to be a true copy of the original seen by me"* on the document and thereafter:

1.6.1. Sign and date it;

1.6.2. Print his/her name;

1.6.3. Add their occupation, address and telephone number.

1.7. Multiple pages:

If the document has multiple pages, the Commissioner of Oaths may write the certification on the first page and state how many pages are included in the certified copy. Alternatively, and if required the Commissioner of Oaths can sign and stamp each page of the certified copy and thereafter securely attach or bind multiple pages together to ensure they are not tampered with.

1.8. What if the original document is not available?

Where there is no original document, certification can still be completed if the Commissioner of Oaths is provided with evidence of the source of the document. For example, if a company registration document, bank statement or utility bill is issued electronically, the Commissioner of Oaths must be shown how the document was retrieved by logging in to the App or website of the entity concerned and thereafter download a PDF copy of the document. If the document was only issued via email, the Commissioner of Oaths must be shown the original email in which the document was attached as a PDF copy. The Commissioner of Oath may, if necessary, contact the issuer of the email, so as to confirm that the document was in fact issued by them.

2. CERTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

Failure by applicants to adhere to the certification requirements listed below WILL result in Council rejecting any application submitted to it, for incompleteness. The certification requirements of Council, are therefore as follows:

2.1. South African certified documents:

2.1.1. Certification of documents filed with the Council Secretariat must not be older than **3 (three) calendar months from date of submission**;

2.1.2. The Commissioner of Oaths, certifying and/or affirming the document(s) MUST state the **date of certification**;

2.1.3. Only one identity document/passport may appear on a single page and in the case of the South African smart card ID, both sides must be presented on the same single page;

2.1.4. Only validly issued passports will be accepted;

2.1.5. No Asylum Seeker / Temporary Resident document will be accepted as valid confirmation of identity;

2.1.6. The following information of a Commissioner of Oaths must appear on the document(s):

2.1.6.1. Full name and Surname

2.1.6.2. Business Address

2.1.6.3. Signature

2.1.6.4. Designation

2.1.6.5. Date of certification

The above information is required to ensure that the Commissioner of Oaths is traceable for accountability purposes.

2.1.7. Documents certified by a police official from the South African Police Service (SAPS), MUST indicate the officials rank and rank number.

2.2. Internationally certified documents:

2.2.1. Notarisation by a Notary Public is an internationally recognized form of certification or affirmation of documents, and Council will accept both South African and international Notary Public certifications as a method of confirming the authenticity of documents which originate outside of the Republic of South Africa.

2.2.2. Where a person is based in another country and has to submit documents to Council, a Certificate of Authentication MUST accompany those documents to confirm authenticity.

2.2.3. A Notary Public certified document(s), must be accompanied by a Notary Public **certification seal** and/or **certificate**.

3. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS OF FALSIFIED CERTIFICATION

3.1. Criminal Offence

Where copies of documents submitted to Council are falsified and subsequently represented as true copies of the original, the Commissioner of Oaths who certified the document, may find himself or herself (together with the Applicant) guilty of an offence in terms of Section 26(1)(e) of the ASL Act and if convicted, **liable to a fine or imprisonment for a period not exceeding 5 (five) years**.[4]

3.2. Stamps

Set out below is an example of the minimum information which is required by Council to be recorded in a stamp of a Commissioner of Oath.

CERTIFICATION OF DOCUMENTS:

CERTIFIED TRUE COPY OF THE ORIGINAL DOCUMENT.

THERE ARE NO INDICATIONS THAT THE ORIGINAL DOCUMENT HAS BEEN ALTERED BY UNAUTHORISED PERSONS.

Designation (rank) ……*ex officio*: Republic of South Africa

Date: ……

Place ……

Business Address: ……

……..

Commissioner of Oaths

……

SIGNATURE FULL NAMES

ADMINISTRATION OF AN OATH OR AFFIRMATION:

1. I certify that before administering the oath/affirmation I asked the deponent the following questions and wrote down his/her answers in his/her presence:

1.1 Do you know and understand the contents of the declaration?

ANSWER: ……

1.2 Do you have any objection to taking the prescribed oath?

ANSWER: ……..

1.3 Do you consider the prescribed oath to be binding on you conscience?

ANSWER: ……

1.4 Do you want to make an affirmation?

ANSWER: ……

2. I certify that the deponent has acknowledged that he/she knows and understands the contents of this declaration, which was sworn to/affirmed before me and the deponent's signature/thumbprint/mark was place thereon in my presence.

…… ……

SIGNATURE FULL NAMES

Commissioner of Oaths

Designation (rank) ……*ex officio*: Republic of South Africa

Date: ……

Place ……

Business Address: ……

[4] Section 26(2)(b)

INTERNATIONAL AIR SERVICE ACT, (ACT NO.60 OF 1993)
GRANT /AMENDMENT OF INTERNATIONAL AIR SERVICE LICENSE

Pursuant to the provisions of section 17 (12) of Act No.60 of 1993 and Regulation 15 (1) and 15 (2) of the International Air Regulations,1994, it is hereby notified for general information that the applications, detail of which appear in the Schedules hereto, will be considered by the International Air Services Council (Council) representation in accordance with section 16(3) of the Act No. 60 of 1993 and regulation 25(1) of International Air Services Regulation, 1994, against or in favour of an application, should reach the Chairman of the International Air Services Council at Department of Transport, Private Bag X 193, Pretoria, 0001 or by email at: internationalcouncil@dot.gov.za within 28 days of the publication hereof. It must be stated whether the party or parties making such representation is / are prepared to be represent or represented at the possible hearing of the application.

APPENDIX I

(A) **Full name, surname and trade name of the applicant**. (B) Full business or residential address of the applicant. (C) Class of licence applied for. (D) Type of International Air Service to which application pertains. (E) Category or kind of aircraft to which application pertains. (F) Airport from and the airport to which flights will be undertaken. (G) Area to be served. (H) Frequency of flight.

(A) **Mpati Freight Cargo (Pty) Ltd trading as Mpati Freight Cargo** (B) 304 Rosemead Court, 659 Church Street, Arcadia, Pretoria, Gauteng, 0007. (C) Class II. (D) Type N1 & N2. (E) Category A3. (F) N/A. (G) Worldwide. (H) N/A.

APPENDIX II (Amendment Applications)

(A) Full name, surname and trade name of the applicant. (B) Full business or residential address of the applicant. (C) Class and number of license in which the amendment is made. (D) Type of International Air Service in respect of which the amendment was made. (E) Category or kind of aircraft to which license was made. (F) Airport in respect of which the amendment was made. (G) Area to be served. (H) Frequency of flight.

(A) Fly Jetstream Aviation (Pty) Ltd trading as Fly Jetstream Aviation. (B) Office No 7, Main Terminal Building, Wonderboom Airport, Pretoria, Gauteng, 0182. (C) Class II License (I/N239). (D) Type N1 & N4. (E) Category A2, A3, A4, H1 & H2. (F) N/A. (G) N/A. (H) N/A.

(A) Fly Jetstream Aviation (Pty) Ltd trading as Fly Jetstream Aviation. (B) Office No 7, Main Terminal Building, Wonderboom Airport, Pretoria, Gauteng, 0182. (C) Class III License (I/G263). (D) Type G1, G2, G3, G4, G5,G7, G8, G10, G11, G12, G13, G14 & G15 (E) Category A2, A3, A4, H1 & H2. (F) N/A. (G) N/A. (H) N/A.

(A) Airlink (Proprietary) Ltd trading as Airlink. (B) #3 Greenstone Hill Office Park, Emarald Boulevard, Greenstone Hill, Modderfontein, 1609. (C) Class I (I/S073) (D) Type S1 (E) Category A1. (F) Oliver Tambo International Airport (JNB), Johannesburg, South Africa. - Sir Seretse Khama International Airport (GBE), Gaborone, Botswana (G) N/A. (H) 14 return flights per week.

(A) Airlink (Proprietary) Ltd trading as Airlink. (B) #3 Greenstone Hill Office Park, Emarald Boulevard, Greenstone Hill, Modderfontein, 1609. (C) Class I (I/S073) (D) Type S1 (E) Category A1. (F) Oliver Tambo International Airport (JNB), Johannesburg, South Africa. – Kenneth Kaunda International Airport (LUN) Lusaka Zambia (G) N/A. (H) 14 return flights per week.

(A) Airlink (Proprietary) Ltd trading as Airlink. (B) #3 Greenstone Hill Office Park, Emarald Boulevard, Greenstone Hill, Modderfontein, 1609. (C) Class I (I/S073) (D) Type S1 (E) Category A1. (F) Oliver Tambo International Airport (JNB), Johannesburg, South Africa. - Maputo International Airport (MPM), Maputo, Mozambique (G) N/A. (H) 14 return flights per week.

(A) Zenith Air CC. (B) Hangar 4, Gate 5, Lanseria International Airport, Lanseria. (C) Class II (I/N129). (D) Type of N1 & N4. (E) Category A1, A2, A3 & A4. (F) N/A. (G) In respect of Type N1: Worldwide (excluding the Republic of South Africa); In respect of Type N4: Worldwide. (H) N/A.

INTERNATIONAL AIR SERVICE ACT, (ACT NO.60 OF 1993)
GRANT /AMENDMENT OF INTERNATIONAL AIR SERVICE LICENSE

Pursuant to the provisions of section 24 (1(a) and (b) and 25 (5)of Act No.60 of 1993 and Regulation 16 (1) and 17 (1) of the International Air Regulations,1994, it is hereby notified for general information that the applications, detail of which appear in the Schedules hereto, will be considered by the International Air Services Council (Council) representation in accordance with section 24(3) of the Act No. 60 of 1993 and regulation 25(2) of International Air Services Regulation, 1994, against or in favour of an application, should reach the Chairman of the International Air Services Council at Department of Transport, Private Bag X 193, Pretoria, 0001 or by email at: internationalcouncil@dot.gov.za within 21 days of the publication hereof. It must be stated whether the party or parties making such representation is / are prepared to be represent or represented at the possible hearing of the application.

APPENDIX I (New/renewal)

(A) COMPAGNIE AFRICAINE D'AVIATION (B) No 1, Avenue De Poids Lourds, Quartier Kingabwa, C/Limete, Kinshasa/Gombe, DRC; OR International Cargo Section, Warehouse No7, 1st floor, O R Tambo International Airport. (C) Class I. (D) Type S1. (E) A1 – A330-300 – (MSN 725) 9S-ABS; A320-200 (MSN 3915); 9S-ABI; A320-214 (MSN 1637) 9S-AJS. (F) and (G) S1: Kinshasa International Airport (Ndjili Airport) – O R Tambo / International Airport (Johannesburg) – Kinshasa / Lubumbashi International Airport (Luano Airport) – O R Tambo International Airport – Lubumbashi / Kinshasa – Lubumbashi – O R Tambo International – Lubumbashi – Kinshasa**.** (H) 5 Flights per week.

APPENDIX II (Amendments)

(A) ZAMBIA AIRWAYS (2014) LIMITED. (B) 34/947 Kenneth Kaunda International Airport. (C) Class I. (D) Type S1. (E) A1 fleet: **Bombardier DHC-8-402 – Reg: ET-AXF and DHC-8-400 – Reg: ET-AXE.** (F) and (G) Lusaka - O R Tambo International Airport – Lusaka / Lusaka – O R Tambo International Airport Livingstone – Lusaka / Lusaka – Livingstone – O R Tambo International Airport – Lusaka / Lusaka – Harare – O R Tambo International Airport – Lusaka. (H) Double daily operations (14 flights per week).

(A) EDELWEISS AIR AG. (B) The Circle 32, 8058 Zurich Airport, Switzerland, (C) Class I. (D) Type S1. (E) A1 fleet: **A340-313 – Reg: HB-JMC.** (F) and (G) Zurich - Cape Town – Zurich. (H) Seven (7) flights per week.

BOARD NOTICES • RAADSKENNISGEWINGS

BOARD NOTICE 467 OF 2023

AUDITING PROFESSION ACT, 2005 (ACT NO 26 OF 2005), AS AMENDED – REGISTRATION OF REGISTERED AUDITORS AND REGISTERED CANDIDATE AUDITORS

The Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors publishes the following information relating to the registration of Registered Auditors and Registered Candidate Auditors with effect from date of publication.

For further information, enquiries should be directed to:

Ms C M Garbutt
Manager: Registrations
Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors
Email: cgarbutt@irba.co.za

Imre Nagy
Chief Executive Officer

PROCESSES AND DOCUMENTS PRESCRIBED
IN TERMS OFTHE AUDITING PROFESSION ACT, 26 OF 2005, AS AMENDED (APA)

A SUMMARY OF THE RELEVANT SECTIONS OF THE ACT

Section 6(1)(a), (c), (g)

6(1) The Regulatory Board must, subject to this Act

(a) prescribe minimum qualifications, competency standards and requirements for registration of auditors and candidate auditors in addition to those provided for in this Act;

(c) prescribe the period of validity of the registration of a registered auditor and a candidate auditor;

(g) prescribe minimum requirements for the renewal of registration and re-registration of registered auditors and registered candidate auditors.

Section 37(1), (1A) (2)(b)

37(1) An individual must apply on the prescribed application form to the Regulatory Board for registration as an auditor or registered candidate auditor.

37(2) If, after considering an application, the Regulatory Board is satisfied that the applicant

(b) has complied with the prescribed education, training and competency requirements for a registered auditor or registered candidate auditor;

Section 38(2), (3)

38(2) On application by a firm which is a partnership fulfilling the conditions in subsection 1(a) or a sole proprietor, on the prescribed application form, the Regulatory Board must register the firm as a registered auditor on payment of the prescribed fee.

38(3) The Regulatory Board must register a company as a registered auditor on payment of the prescribed fee if the company meets the requirements set out in subsection (3)(a)-(d).

Section 40(1), (2)

40(1) A registered auditor or registered candidate auditor must apply in the prescribed manner to the Regulatory Board for the renewal of his or her registration.

40(2) A registered auditor or registered candidate auditor whose registration was terminated in terms of section 39 or cancelled in terms of section 51(3)(a)(iv) may apply for re-registration in the prescribed manner to the Regulatory Board.

DETAIL OF DOCUMENTS AND PROCESSES PRESCRIBED IN TERMS OF THE AUDITING PROFESSION ACT, 26 OF 2005, AS AMENDED (APA)

SECTION 6:

6(1)	The Regulatory Board must, subject to this Act
(a)	prescribe minimum qualifications, competency standards and requirements for registration of auditors and candidate auditors in addition to those provided for in this Act;

1. Registration as a Registered auditor

It is ***prescribed*** that the minimum qualifications, competency standards and requirements for registration of auditors in addition to those provided for in this Act are:

1.1 For candidates who wrote the Public Practice Examination (PPE):

1.1.1 The applicant must have successfully completed the PPE;

1.1.2 The applicant must have successfully completed a recognised training contract in public practice;

1.1.3 A determination by the Regulatory Board that the applicant is a fit and proper person to practise the profession;

1.1.4 Proof that an applicant is a member in good standing of a professional body accredited by the Regulatory Board; and

1.1.5 Submission of a valid police clearance certificate in respect of the applicant.

1.2 For candidates who wrote the Assessment of Professional Competence (APC):

1.2.1 The applicant must have successfully completed the APC;

1.2.2 The applicant must have successfully completed a recognised training contract;

1.2.3 The applicant must have successfully completed the Regulatory Board's Audit Development Programme (ADP);

1.2.4 A determination by the Regulatory Board that the applicant is a fit and proper person to practise the profession,

1.2.5 Proof that an applicant is a member in good standing of a professional body accredited by the Regulatory Board; and

1.2.6 Submission of a valid police clearance certificate in respect of the applicant.

1.3 For all candidates:

If it has been more than three years since the applicant was last registered with the Regulatory Board, successfully completed the PPE, successfully completed their training contract (in the case of applicants who wrote the PPE), or successfully completed the ADP, whichever is the later date, the

applicant is required to submit with their application their CV, evidence of CPD undertaken for the past three years, and a short explanation of why registration is required.

If the applicant is joining a firm already registered with the Regulatory Board, the applicant must also provide a letter signed by the Senior Partner or equivalent of the firm confirming their position within the firm and their audit proficiency.

The applicant may be required to attend a proficiency assessment.

2. **Registration as a registered candidate auditor**

It is ***prescribed*** that the minimum qualifications, competency standards and requirements for registration of registered candidate auditors in addition to those provided for in this Act are:

2.1 The applicant must have successfully completed a recognised academic programme at an accredited university;

2.2 The applicant must have successfully completed a recognised core assessment programme;

2.3 The applicant must have completed a recognised professional development and assessment programme;

2.4 The application must be determined by the Regulatory Board to be a fit and proper person to enter into the Audit Development Programme (ADP); and

2.5 Proof that an applicant is a member in good standing of a professional body accredited by the Regulatory Board; and

2.6 Submission of a valid police clearance certificate[1] in respect of the applicant.

3. Registration of firms

It is ***prescribed*** that the minimum qualifications, competency standards and requirements for registration of firms in addition to those provided for in this Act are:

3.1 Submission of the completed ***prescribed*** Form 2 **(ANNEXURE B);**

3.2 A statement that ISQM1 has been implemented, supported by:

3.2.1 Evidence in respect of all relevant components in accordance with paragraphs 57 to 60 of ISQM1; and

3.2.2 Evidence of compliance with the specified responses in paragraph 34 of ISQM1.
In assessing the fulfilment of the requirements of paragraph 3.2 above, recognition and application of the scalability considerations described in paragraph 10 of ISQM1 will apply.

3.3 Submission of confirmation of firm ownership:

3.3.1 If the firm is an incorporated company, a copy of the shareholders register / securities register / share certificates and the latest COR39 from CIPC confirming directors of the firm;

[1] A police clearance certificate is valid if it is not older than six months.

3.3.2 If firm is a partnership, a copy of the partnership agreement or equivalent.

3.4 If a firm wishes to register additional branches once the firm is registered with the Regulatory Board, the firm must complete and submit a Form 2A **(ANNEXURE C).**

(c)	prescribe the period of validity of the registration of a registered auditor and a registered candidate auditor;

4. **Period of validity of the registration of a Registered auditor**

It is ***prescribed*** that the period of validity of the registration of a registered auditor, being both defined on a continuous registration basis and on an annual basis, is:

4.1 On a continuous basis, from the date of first registration until termination for whatever reason;

4.2 On an annual basis, from 1 April to 31 March of each year, provided the registered auditor pays the required annual fees, submits the required annual documents and complies with the annual renewal requirements,

5. **Period of validity of the registration of a registered candidate auditor**

It is ***prescribed*** that the period of validity of the registration of a registered candidate auditor is:

The candidate shall be registered as a registered candidate auditor until:

5.1 the candidate has satisfied all the (ADP) requirements, which include:

5.1.1 the candidate has submitted a portfolio of evidence; and

5.1.2 the Regulatory Board has evaluated the portfolio of evidence and has reached a decision that the candidate has successfully completed the ADP; and

5.1.3 An ADP monitoring visit has been conducted at the firm where the candidate has completed the ADP and the environment has been assessed as conducive to the development of professional competence; or

5.1.4 the candidate withdraws from the ADP.

In the premise where the candidate has complied with paragraphs 5.1.1, 5.1.2 and 5.1.3, the candidate will then be eligible to apply for registration as a registered auditor.

6. **Period of validity of the registration of a firm**

It is ***prescribed*** that the period of validity of the registration of a firm, being both defined on a continuous registration basis and on an annual basis, is:

6.1 On a continuous basis, from the date of first registration until deregistration for whatever reason;

6.2 On an annual basis, from 1 April to 31 March of each year, provided the firm pays the required assurance fees and submits the required annual assurance fee declaration and any other required documents and remains in good standing with the Regulatory Board. [2]

(g)	prescribe minimum requirements for the renewal of registration and re-registration of registered auditors and registered candidate auditors.

7. **Requirements for renewal of registration and re-registration of registered auditors**

7.1 **Renewal of registration of registered auditors**

It is ***prescribed*** that the minimum requirements for the renewal of registration are:

7.1.1 For the registered auditor to be in good standing with the Regulatory Board[2];

7.1.2 Payment of the annual fees by a specified date, which fee is prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time;

7.1.3 Completion and submission by a specified date of an individual Annual Return;

7.1.4 With effect from the year starting 1 April 2022, compliance with the Regulatory Board's CPD Policy, as amended from time to time;

7.1.5 Continued residence within the Republic of South Africa;

7.1.6 Continued membership in good standing with a professional body accredited by the Regulatory Board; and

7.1.7 A determination by the Regulatory Board to be a fit and proper person to continue to practice the profession.

7.2 **Re-registration of registered auditors**

It is ***prescribed*** that the minimum requirements for re-registration are:

7.2.1 Payment of a registration fee, which fee is prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time;

7.2.2 Payment of any outstanding fees or other amounts owed to the IRBA by the individual applying for re-registration;

7.2.3 Completion and submission of Form 1 (Application by an Individual for Admission to the Register of Auditors) **[see ANNEXURE A];**

7.2.4 A determination by the Regulatory Board that the applicant is a fit and proper person to practice the profession;

[2] A registered auditor is in good standing with the Regulatory Board when he/she has complied with all their explicit obligations and the Regulatory Board Rules; paid all fees and debts owing to the Regulatory Board (or made arrangements to pay such debts), while not being subject to any form of sanction with which he/she has not complied or a suspension which has not been uplifted or a disciplinary order which has precluded his/her continued registration.

7.2.5 Proof that the applicant is a member in good standing with a professional body accredited by the Regulatory Board;

7.2.6 Submission of a valid police clearance certificate in respect of the applicant.[1]

7.2.7 Compliance with all the requirements that would apply if the applicant were applying for registration for the first time as specified in section 37 of Act 26 of 2005;

7.2.8 If it has been more than three years since the applicant was last registered with the Regulatory Board, successfully completed the PPE, successfully completed their training contract (in the case of applicants who wrote the PPE), or successfully completed the ADP, whichever is the later date, the applicant is required to submit with their application their CV, evidence of CPD undertaken for the past three years, and a short explanation of why registration is required. If the applicant is joining a firm already registered with the Regulatory Board, the applicant must also provide a letter signed by the Senior Partner or equivalent of the firm confirming their position within the firm and their audit proficiency. The applicant may be required to undergo a proficiency assessment.

8. **Requirements for renewal of registration and re-registration for registered candidate auditors**

There are no specific requirements for the renewal of registration or re-registration of registered candidate auditors.

9. **Requirements for renewal of registration and re-registration for firms**

Renewal of registration of firms

9.1 In order to renew a firm's registration with the Regulatory Board on an annual basis, it is ***prescribed*** that a firm must:

9.1.1 Pay assurance fees by the specified dates, which fees are prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time;

9.1.2 Complete and submit an assurance fee declaration by a specified date, which declaration comprises of the following[3]:

9.1.2.1 a Firm Assurance Work Declaration; and

9.1.2.2 a public practice information questionnaire, including questions about a Firm's structure;

9.1.3 Maintain good standing with the Regulatory Board[4]

9.1.4 It is further ***prescribed*** that, with effect from 1 April 2024, registered auditors who are firms and who are not in good standing with the Regulatory Board, will not be eligible to renew their registration with the Regulatory Board.

[3] The content of the questionnaires comprising the Assurance Work Declaration may change from time to time as determined by the Regulatory Board.

[4] A registered auditor that is a firm is in good standing with the Regulatory Board when it has complied with all its explicit obligations and the Regulatory Board Rules; submitted all documents required by the Regulatory Board and paid all fees and debts owing to the Regulatory Board (or made arrangements to pay such debts), while not being subject to any form of sanction with which it has not complied or a suspension which has not been uplifted or a disciplinary order which has precluded its continued registration.

Re-registration of firms

9.2 It is ***prescribed*** that the minimum requirements for re-registration are:

9.2.1 Payment of a registration fee, which fee is prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time;

9.2.2 Payment of any outstanding fees or other amounts owed to the IRBA by the firm;

9.2.3 Submission of all required documentation specific to the Assurance Work Declaration; and

9.2.4 Compliance with all the requirements that would apply if the applicant was applying for registration for the first time as specified in section 38 of Act 26 of 2005, including:

9.2.4.1 Completion and submission of Form 2 (Application by a Firm for Admission to the Register of Auditors**) [see ANNEXURE B];**

9.2.4.2 A statement that ISQM1 has been implemented, supported by:

9.2.4.2 (a) Evidence in respect of all relevant components in accordance with paragraphs 57 to 60 of ISQM1; and

9.2.4.2(b) Evidence of compliance with the specified responses in paragraph 34 of ISQM1.

In assessing the fulfilment of the requirements of paragraph 9.2.4.2 above, recognition and application of the scalability considerations described in paragraph 10 of ISQM1 will apply.

9.2.4.5 Submission of confirmation of firm ownership:

9.2.4.5.1 If firm is an incorporated company, a copy of the shareholders agreement / share certificates and the latest COR39 from CIPC confirming directors of the firm;

9.2.4.5.2 If firm is a partnership, a copy of the partnership agreement or equivalent.

9.2.5 The requirements set out in paragraph 9.2.3 to 9.2.4 also apply to firms merging or unmerging who have not previously submitted these documents.

9.2.6 The requirements set out in paragraph 9.2.2 to 9.2.4 also apply to firms who are applying for re-registration and who had not previously complied with these requirements.

SECTION 37:

37(1)	An individual must apply on the prescribed application form to the Regulatory Board for registration as an auditor or candidate auditor.

10. Application forms for registered auditors and registered candidate auditors

10.1 The ***prescribed*** application form for registration as a registered auditor is attached as **ANNEXURE A.**

10.2 The ***prescribed*** application form for registration as a registered candidate auditor is attached as **ANNEXURE D.**

37(2)	If, after considering an application, the Regulatory Board is satisfied that the applicant:-
(a)	has complied with the prescribed education, training and competency requirements for a registered auditor or registered candidate auditor.

11. Education, training and competency requirements for registered auditors or registered candidate auditors

The ***prescribed*** education, training and competency requirements are detailed in this document under paragraphs 1, 2 and 3 of this document.

SECTION 38

38(2)	On application by a firm which is a partnership fulfilling the conditions in subsection 1(a) or a sole proprietor, on the prescribed application form, the Regulatory Board must register the firm as a registered auditor on payment of the prescribed fee.
38(3)	The Regulatory Board must register a company as a registered auditor on payment of the prescribed fee if…

12. Application form for firm registration

The ***prescribed*** application form for all applications to register a firm is attached as **ANNEXURE B**, and the fee is determined and prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time.

SECTION 40

40(1)	A registered auditor or registered candidate auditor must apply in the prescribed manner to the Regulatory Board for the renewal of his or her registration.

13. Renewal of registration for Registered Auditors

13.1 In order to renew his or her registration with the Regulatory Board on an annual basis, it is ***prescribed*** that a registered auditor must:

13.1.1 Pay an annual fee by a specified date, which fee is prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time;

13.1.2 Ordinarily reside within the Republic of South Africa;

13.1.3 Provide proof of continued membership in good standing with a professional body accredited by the Regulatory Board; and

13.1.4 With effect from 1 April 2022, comply with the IRBA CPD policy as amended from time to time; and

13.1.5 Complete and submit an individual Annual Return by a specified date, which Annual Return comprises[5]:

13.1.5.1 a compliance questionnaire relating to the Financial Intelligence Centre Act, 38 of 2001;

13.1.5.2 a public practice questionnaire, including questions about a registered auditor's assurance status;

13.1.2.3 a Continuing Professional Development questionnaire;

13.1.2.4 a Fit and Proper questionnaire;

13.1.2.5 a tax compliance declaration; and

13.1.2.6 a declaration that the registered auditor is in good standing with the Regulatory Board. [2]

13.2 It is further ***prescribed*** that if the registered auditor fails to pay his annual fees by the specified date, the registered auditor's registration automatically lapses in terms of section 39(5) of the APA.

13.3 It is further ***prescribed*** that if the registered auditor fails to submit his complete Individual Annual Return by the specified date, the registered auditor's registration will be cancelled in terms of section 40(2) read with 39(3) of the APA for failing to meet the annual renewal requirements.

13.4 It is further ***prescribed*** that, with effect from the year starting 1 April 2022, failure to comply with the Regulatory Board's CPD Policy, as amended, and its requirements will result in the RA's registration not being renewed.

13.5 It is further ***prescribed*** that, with effect from 1 April 2022, registered auditors who are not in good standing with the Regulatory Board, as at the date on which the Individual Annual Return is submitted, will not be eligible to renew their registration with the Regulatory Board.

13.6 It is further ***prescribed*** that a Registered Auditor who is no longer residing within the Republic of South Africa will not be eligible for the renewal of his/her registration.

13.7 Reinstatement of a registered auditor whose registration has lapsed or been cancelled in terms of paragraph 13.2 and 13.3 above

13.7.1 It is ***prescribed*** that if the registered auditor's registration is lapsed or cancelled in terms of paragraph 13.2 or 13.3 above, the registered auditor may request reinstatement on payment of a prescribed administration fee, together with payment of the outstanding annual fees and/or submission of the outstanding Annual Return and any other fees or documents that are outstanding to the Regulatory Board.

13.78.2 It is further ***prescribed*** that the registered auditor may apply for reinstatement in terms of paragraph 13.7.1 above up until 31 March of the calender year following the calender year of lapsing or cancellation of registration. Late reinstatements may be considered based on the registered auditor's individual circumstances up until the Regulatory Board's financial accounts are closed for that financial year.

[5] The content of the questionnaires comprising the Individual Annual Return may change from time to time as determined by the Regulatory Board

13.7.3 It is further ***prescribed*** that if the registered auditor does not apply for reinstatement before 31 March of the calender year following the calender year of the annual renewal process in which he/she was lapsed or cancelled, the registered auditor may apply for re-registration of registration from 1 April of the calendar year following the calendar year of lapsing or cancellation of registration.

13.7.4 It is further ***prescribed*** that, if a registered auditor whose registration has lapsed or been cancelled does not apply for re-instatement, the registered auditor may not apply for re-registration until 1 April of the calendar year following the calendar year of lapsing or cancellation.

13.8 Reinstatement of a registered auditor whose registration has not been renewed as a result of non-residence within South Africa

13.8.1 It is ***prescribed*** that a registered auditor whose registration has not been renewed as a result of non-residence within South Africa, may only be reinstated if he/she provides evidence of residence within South Africa by 31 March of the calendar year following the calendar year of the annual renewal process in which his/her registration was not renewed.

13.8.2 It is further ***prescribed*** that a registered auditor described in 13.8.1 above, may only apply for re-registration:

13.8.2.1 after 1 April of the calendar year following the calendar year of the annual renewal process in which his/her registration was not renewed; and

13.8.2.2 if he/she provides evidence of his/her ordinary residence within South Africa, pays the prescribed fee and submits all outstanding documents to the Regulatory Board.

13.9 Reinstatement of a registered auditor whose registration has not been renewed as a result of non-compliance with the IRBA's CPD policy, as amended

13.9.1 It is ***prescribed*** that a registered auditor whose registration has not been renewed as a result of non-compliance with the IRBA's CPD policy, as amended, may only be reinstated if he/she has submitted evidence of compliance with the CPD policy by 31 March of the calendar year following the annual renewal process in which his/her registration was not renewed.

13.9.2. Evidence referred to in 13.9.1 above will be evaluated and must be confirmed as satisfactory to the Regulatory Board before 31 March of the calendar year following the annual renewal year in which his/her registration was not renewed, before such a reinstatement can be processed.

13.9.2 It is prescribed that a registered auditor, whose registration has not been renewed as a result of non-compliance with the IRBA's CPD policy, as amended, may only apply for re-registration:

13.9.2.1 after 1 April of the calendar year following the year of the annual renewal process in which his/her registration was not renewed; and

13.9.2.2 if he/she has submitted, to the satisfaction of the Regulatory Board, evidence of compliance with the CPD policy, and has paid the prescribed fee and submitted all outstanding documents to the Regulatory Board.

13.10 Reinstatement of a registered auditor whose registration has not been renewed as a result of the failure to maintain good standing with the Regulatory Board

13.10.1 It is ***prescribed*** that, if a registered auditor whose registration has not been renewed as a result of the failure to maintain good standing with the Regulatory Board as at the time of submission the Individual Annual Return, may only be reinstated once:

13.10.1.1 the registered auditor has, to the satisfaction of the Regulatory Board, remedied any conduct which affected his standing with the Regulatory Board[6].

13.10.1.2 It is further ***prescribed*** that the registered auditor who may apply for reinstatement of his registration in terms of paragraph 13.10.1 above up until 31 March of the calendar year following the year of the non-renewal of his registration. Late reinstatements may be considered based on the registered auditor's individual circumstances.

13.10.1.3 It is further prescribed that if the registered auditor does not apply for reinstatement of his registration before 31 March of the calendar year following the year of the annual renewal process in which his/her registration was not renewed, the registered auditor may re-apply for the Regulatory Board to be re-registered from 1 April of the calendar year following the year of the annual renewal process in which his/her registration was not renewed.

13.11 **Reinstatement of a registered auditor that is a firm whose registration has not been renewed as a result of the failure to maintain good standing with the Regulatory Board**

13.11.1 It is ***prescribed*** that, if a registered auditor who is a firm whose registration has not been renewed as a result of the failure to maintain good standing with the Regulatory Board may only be reinstated once:

13.11.1.1 the firm has, to the satisfaction of the Regulatory Board, remedied any conduct which affected its standing with the Regulatory Board[7].

13.11.1.3 It is further ***prescribed*** that the firm may apply for reinstatement of its registration in terms of paragraph 13.11.1 above up until 31 January of the calendar year following the year of the non-renewal of its registration. Late reinstatements may be considered based on the firm's individual circumstances.

13.11.1.4 It is further prescribed that if the firm does not apply for reinstatement of its registration before 31 January of the calendar year following the year of the annual renewal process in which its registration was not renewed, the firm

[6] This includes compliance with any outstanding obligations, payment of any outstanding fees or debts (or making an appropriate arrangement), upliftment of any suspension or compliance with any disciplinary order or sanction.
[7] This includes compliance with any outstanding obligations, payment of any outstanding fees or debts (or making an appropriate arrangement), upliftment of any suspension or compliance with any disciplinary order or sanction.

may re-apply for the Regulatory Board to be re-registered from 1 February of the calendar year following the year of the non-renewal of its registration.

14. Renewal of registration for registered candidate auditors

There are no specific requirements for the renewal of registration of registered candidate auditors.

40(2)	A registered auditor or registered candidate auditor whose registration was terminated in terms of section 39 or cancelled in terms of section 51(3)(a)(iv) may apply for re-registration in the prescribed manner to the Regulatory Board.

15. Re-registration for Registered auditors

The ***prescribed*** manner of re-registration for registered auditors is as follows:

15.1 Payment of a registration fee, which fee is prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time;

15.2 Completion and submission of Form 1 (Application by an Individual for Admission to the Register of Auditors) **[see ANNEXURE A]**

15.3 A determination by the Regulatory Board that the applicant is a fit and proper person to practise the profession;

15.4 Proof that the applicant is a member in good standing of a professional body accredited by the Regulatory Board;

15.5 Submission of a valid police clearance certificate in respect of the applicant;

15.6 Compliance with all the requirements that would apply if the applicant were applying for registration for the first time as specified in section 37 of the APA and in terms of paragraphs 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3 of this document; and

15.7 If it has been more than three years since the applicant was last registered with the Regulatory Board, successfully completed the PPE, successfully completed their training contract (in the case of applicants who wrote the PPE), or successfully completed the ADP, whichever is the later date, the applicant is required to submit with their application their CV, evidence of CPD undertaken for the past three years, and a short explanation of why registration is required. If the applicant is joining a firm already registered with the Regulatory Board, the applicant must also provide a letter signed by the Senior Partner or equivalent of the firm confirming their position within the firm and their audit proficiency. The applicant may be required to undergo a proficiency assessment.

16. Re-registration for registered candidate auditors

The ***prescribed*** manner of re-registration of registered candidate auditors is as follows:

16.1 Payment of a registration fee, which fee is prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time;

16.2 Completion and submission of Form 5 (Application by an Individual for Admission to the Register of Registered candidate auditors) **[see ANNEXURE D]**

16.3 A determination by the Regulatory Board that the applicant is a fit and proper person enter the Audit Development Programme (ADP);

16.4 Proof that the applicant is a member in good standing of a professional body accredited by the Regulatory Board;

16.5 Submission of a valid police clearance certificate in respect of the applicant; and

16.6 Compliance with all the requirements that would apply if the applicant were applying for registration for the first time as specified in section 37 of the APA and in terms of paragraph 2 of this document.

17. Re-registration of firms

The ***prescribed*** manner of re-registration of firms is as follows:

17.1 Payment of a registration fee, which fee is prescribed by the Regulatory Board from time to time;

17.2 Compliance with all the requirements that would apply with the firm were applying for registration for the first time as specified in section 38 of the APA;

17.3 Completion and submission of Form 2 (Application by a Firm for Admission to the Register of Auditors) **[see ANNEXURE B];**

17.4 A statement that ISQM1 has been implemented, supported by:

17.4.1 Evidence in respect of all relevant components in accordance with paragraphs 57 to 60 of ISQM1; and

17.4.2 Evidence of compliance with the specified responses in paragraph 34 of ISQM1.

In assessing the fulfilment of the requirements of paragraph 17.4 above, recognition and application of the scalability considerations described in paragraph 10 of ISQM1 will apply.

17.5 Submission of confirmation of firm ownership:

17.5.1 If firm is an incorporated company, a copy of the shareholders agreement, memorandum of incorporation, shareholders register / securities register / share certificates and the latest COR39 from CIPC confirming directors of the firm;

17.5.2 If firm is a partnership, a copy of the partnership agreement or equivalent.

17.6 The requirements set out in paragraph 17.4 to 17.5 apply likewise to firms merging or unmerging who have not previously submitted these documents.

17.7 The requirements set out in paragraph 17.4 to 17.5 apply to firms who are applying for re-registration and who had not previously complied with these requirements.

18. ASSURANCE AND NON-ASSURANCE STATUS

The following is ***prescribed*** in terms of Section 6(1)(a) and (g) and Section 37(1) and (2)(b) and Section 40(1) and (2):

19.1 First and re-registration of applicant(s) as registered auditor (Sections 37 and 40):

19.1.1 An applicant for registration as a registered auditor may apply for registration with an assurance or non-assurance status.

19.1.2 Assurance is determined by the definition of "assurance engagement" as it appears in the Regulatory Board's Code of Professional Conduct and includes "audit" as it is defined in the Auditing Profession Act, 26 of 2005.

19.1.3 An applicant who is registered with the Regulatory Board as a registered auditor with an assurance status means that he or she has informed the Regulatory Board that he or she intends to perform assurance work as defined in the Code of Professional Conduct and the Auditing Profession Act, 26 of 2005.

19.1.4 An applicant who is registered with the Regulatory Board as a registered auditor with a non-assurance status means that he or she has informed the Regulatory Board that he or she does not intend to perform assurance work as defined in the Code of Professional Conduct and the Auditing Profession Act 26 of 2005.

19.1.5 Any applicant may be required to attend an interview with the Regulatory Board's Proficiency Assessment Panel.

19.1.5 The Regulatory Board, or the Proficiency Assessment Panel, may, at the time of considering the application for registration or re-registration as a registered auditor, require that an applicant who has requested to be registered with an assurance status instead be registered with a non-assurance status until certain criteria have been met.

19.1.6 An applicant who applies to be registered with the Regulatory Board as a registered auditor with an assurance status must be linked to a firm that is registered with the Regulatory Board.

19.2 Annual renewal of registration of registered auditor (Section 40):

19.2.1 A registered auditor must disclose in his or her Individual Annual Return whether he or she is currently performing assurance work.

19.2.2 If such disclosure reflects a change in the registered auditor's current assurance status, the Regulatory Board will follow the procedure referred to in paragraphs 19.3.1 to 19.3.5 below.

19.3 Change of assurance or non-assurance status:

19.3.1 A registered auditor who wishes to change their assurance or non-assurance status must request such change from the Regulatory Board.

19.3.2 If a registered auditor wishes to change their status from non-assurance to assurance, such change must be requested on Form 6 **(ANNEXURE E)** and approved by the Regulatory Board prior to any assurance engagements being accepted or performed.

19.3.3 The Regulatory Board may request any information it requires from the registered auditor in order for it to come to a determination as to whether the registered auditor is proficient to change their status from non-assurance to assurance.

19.3.4 The Regulatory Board will assess the registered auditor's request and may decline the request if the Registered auditor:

19.3.4.1 is not linked to a firm registered with the Regulatory Board; and/or

19.3.4.2 is not determined by the Regulatory Board to be sufficiently proficient to perform assurance engagements; and/or

19.3.4.3 has not provided a letter from the firm to which the registered auditor is linked, if that registered auditor is an employee, consenting to changing their status to assurance; and/or

19.3.4.4 has not provided any other information which the Regulatory Board has requested in terms of paragraph 19.3.3 above.

19.3.5 If it has been more than three years since the applicant was last assurance, or if the applicant was registered as non-assurance with the Regulatory Board, the applicant may be required to attend an interview with the Regulatory Board's Proficiency Assessment Panel.

19.3.6 A registered auditor may request his/her status be changed from assurance to non-assurance at any time during the year by sending an email to the regulatory board requesting such a change.

19.3.7 A registered auditor may also change his/her status from assurance to non-assurance by changing his/her status to non-assurance in the Individual Annual Return.

19.3.8 A registered auditor may not change his/her status from non-assurance to assurance by changing his/her status in the Individual Annual Return. A form 6 must be completed as referred to in paragraph 19.3.2 above.

19.3.9 If a registered auditor changes his/her status from assurance to non-assurance in his/her Individual Annual Return, the regulatory board will change his/her status to non-assurance in their register as being the current status of the registered auditor.

ANNEXURE A

FORM 1

INDEPENDENT REGULATORY BOARD FOR AUDITORS

(Established under Section 3 of Act 26 of 2005)

APPLICATION BY AN INDIVIDUAL TO THE ENTERED INTO THE REGISTER OF REGISTERED AUDITORS

(For application in terms of Section 37(1) and Section 40(2)

I hereby apply to be registered as a Registered Auditor and I submit the following information in support of my application:

1. **NAME IN FULL:**

(a)	Title:	
(b)	Surname as per ID (and Maiden name if applicable):	
(c)	Forename(s) as per ID:	

2. **ADDRESSES:**

(a)	Your physical address:	
(b)	Your postal address:	
c)	Physical area of practice (if in practice) (Required in order for you to accurately reflect on the IRBA website in the area in which you practice)	

3. **CONTACT DETAILS:**

(a)	Telephone number:	
(b)	Cell number:	
(c)	Primary email address:	
(d)	Secondary email address (this will be used only if we cannot contact you on your primary email address)	

4. **PERSONAL INFORMATION:**

(a)	Identity Number: **(Please attach a copy of the front page of your Identity Document or Card)**	
(b)	Passport Number, only if no South African ID Number: **(Please attach a copy of the relevant page of your passport)**	

(c)	Race: (This information is requested in order to gauge the profession's success in becoming more representative of the people in South Africa.)	
(d)	Are you disabled? (This information is requested in order to gauge the profession's success in becoming more representative of the people in South Africa.)	

5. **TRAINING DETAILS:**

(a)	Dates registered as a trainee accountant with the Board:	From:	To:
(b)	Registration number:		

Please attach a copy of SAICA's confirmation of discharge of training contract letter.

6. **QUALIFICATION DETAILS:**

Tertiary Qualifications	University	Date completed

Passed the Public Practice Examination (PPE)	Month:	Year:

OR

Completed IRBA's Audit Development Programme (ADP)	Month:	Year:

If you are applying for registration and you are a CA(SA) through a reciprocity agreement between SAICA and a foreign professional body, please contact Registry for further assistance.

7. If it has been more than three years since you were last registered with the IRBA as an assurance RA, successfully completed the ADP, passed the Public Practice Examination (date of writing), or completed your training contract in public practice (for applicants who wrote the PPE), whichever is the later date, then your application, for purposes of section 37(2)(d), must be accompanied by:

7.1 a comprehensive up to date CV detailing your professional history with specific focus on your assurance roles and responsibilities;
7.2 completed CPD reflective plans including your final reflections for the past three years, including the current year and your most current assurance CPD;
7.3 a short explanation of why registration is required.

If you are joining an existing firm or the Auditor-General, please also submit a letter from the Senior Partner or CEO or equivalent of the firm or Auditor-General confirming your role within the firm and your audit proficiency. Please include details as to how audit proficiency was assessed.

Your application will be assessed to determine whether a proficiency assessment is required.

If you are requested to attend a proficiency interview, an additional fee, as prescribed by the IRBA for the relevant period, will be applicable.

8. **RESIDENCE:**

Are you resident in the Republic of South Africa?	

Please note that residence in South Africa is a requirement for registration and continued registration with the IRBA.

9. **PROFESSIONAL BODY MEMBERSHIP:**

(a)	Are you a member of a professional body accredited by the IRBA?	
(b)	If yes, please provide name of body and membership number **(Please attach proof of good standing with the professional body accredited by IRBA)**	

Please note that membership of a professional body accredited by the IRBA is required for registration and continued registration with the IRBA. The only professional body currently accredited by the IRBA is the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA).

10. **PREVIOUS REGISTRATION:**

Have you ever previously been registered as an auditor with the IRBA or its predecessor body?	

If termination was as a result of disciplinary action by the IRBA's Disciplinary Committee, provide on a separate page comprehensive reasons as to why you should be re-registered, with specific reference to any changes in circumstance since date of termination.

11. **FIT AND PROPER:**

Answer Yes or No to the following questions.

If the answer to any of the questions is yes, provide details on a separate page.

Financial Integrity		
11.1	Are you an unrehabilitated insolvent, have you entered into a compromise with creditors, are you under debt review, or have you been provisionally sequestrated?	
11.2	Have you ever failed, or are you failing to, manage any financial obligations (including debts) satisfactorily, including civil judgements or pending proceedings which may lead to such a judgement in respect of any unpaid debt?	
Civil Liability		
11.3	Have you ever accepted civil liability for, or been the subject of a civil judgement in respect of theft, fraud, forgery, uttering a forged document, perjury, misrepresentation, or dishonesty under any law?	
Good Character		
11.4	Have you at any time been removed from an office of trust because of misconduct related to a discharge of that office?	

11.5	Have you, at any time been convicted, whether in the South Africa or elsewhere, of theft, fraud, forgery, uttering a forged document, perjury, an offence under the Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004, or any other offence involving dishonesty?	
11.6	Have you at any time been convicted, whether in South Africa or elsewhere, of any other criminal offence?	
11.7	Are you for the time being declared by a competent court to be of unsound mind or unable to manage your own affairs?	
11.8	Have you ever been found guilty of unprofessional conduct by any statutory entity or professional or regulatory body?	
11.9	Are you currently under investigation by any local or statutory entity or regulatory body, including IRBA?	
11.10	Have you ever been refused registration or membership of any professional or statutory body, or had that registration or membership revoked, withdrawn or terminated by that professional or statutory body?	
11.11	Have you ever been dismissed from any office (other than as auditor) or employment, or requested to resign from any office, employment or firm?	
11.12	Have you ever been involved, as a director or member of senior management of a business that has been placed under statutory management or curatorship, in business rescue or in liquidation while you were connected with that organisation, or within one year of that connection?	
11.13	Have you ever been disqualified from being a director of a company or from acting in the management or conduct of the affairs of any company?	
11.14	Have you, or a business with which you have been involved in the capacity of director of member of senior management, ever been the subject of frequent or material preventative, remedial or enforcement actions by any regulatory authority?	

PLEASE NOTE THAT A VALID POLICE CLEARANCE CERTIFICATE MUST BE SUBMITTED WITH YOUR APPLICATION.

12. **PUBLIC PRACTICE INFORMATION:**

(a)	Are you in public practice?	
(b)	Do you intend performing assurance work within the next 12 months? [1]	
(c)	If the answer to (b) above is yes, is any of the assurance work you intend performing classified as high risk? Please refer to **Annexure A.**	

Please note the following with regard to public practice:

- If you are an employee who earns a salary you are not in public practice, even if you intend performing assurance work.
- If you are intending to be a partner, or shareholder and director, of a registered audit firm, you will be in public practice, even if you do not perform assurance work.
- All assurance work must be performed through a firm, even if you intend practising as a sole proprietor.

- If you are registering as an employee of an existing firm and you intend performing assurance work[1], please provide a letter from the firm confirming that they are aware you are registering as an assurance Registered Auditor.

I certify that the above information is true and correct in every detail, and I undertake to comply with the Auditing Profession Act, 26 of 2005, as amended, the Code of Professional Conduct, as published from time to time, as well as the CPD policy of the IRBA as published, with amendments, if any.**

I attach proof of payment of the registration fee in the prescribed amount of **R**_____ for the year ending **31 March _____.**

I understand that the registration fee is not pro-rated and I will be invoiced for annual renewal fees on an annual basis with effect from 1 April in the financial year subsequent to my registration. Please note that the IRBA's financial year runs from 1 April to 31 March.

The IRBA's banking details are:

Bank:	Standard Bank
Branch:	Eastgate
Branch Code:	018505
Account Number:	221290532

Please note we cannot start processing your application without confirmation of payment.

Please note further that if you are re-registering, we cannot start processing your application until any outstanding fees or other amounts owed to the IRBA, if any, have been paid.

If you withdraw or cancel your application for registration, you will be refunded the registration fee less a 15% administration fee on submission of proof of your banking details to registry@irba.co.za.

_____ _____

Date Signature of applicant

** The Auditing Profession Act, IRBA's Code of Professional Conduct and the CPD policy are available on our website at www.irba.co.za.

Please email your application form and supporting documentation to registry@irba.co.za.

Please note that in order for the IRBA to engage with you, it will have to Process certain Personal Information which belongs to you, which Processing is described and explained under the specific and informative IRBA Processing Notices, housed for ease of reference on IRBA's website at https://www.irba.co.za/library/popi-act, which we ask you to download and read. By providing us with the required Personal Information, such act will be taken as an indication that you have read and agree with the provisions described under the Processing Notice and, where applicable, you consent to the processing by us of your Personal Information.

[1] Please refer to the Code of Conduct for the definition of Assurance Work

ANNEXURE A

WHAT IS HIGH AND LOW RISK ASSURANCE WORK?

High risk audits and related assurance work:

This refers to assurance engagements that are performed by RAs and firms that are required in terms of legislation or regulation. These engagements include but are not limited to:

- Audits required in terms of the Companies Act of 2008 (as amended), of:
  - public companies;
  - state-owned enterprises;
  - private companies with a public interest score of 350 or more;
  - private companies with a public interest score of less than 350 but at least 100, if its annual financial statements were internally compiled; and
  - private companies with a public interest score below 350 and where the Memorandum of Incorporation was altered to include an audit requirement. Such an engagement is not considered to be a voluntary audit.
- Audits of banks and regulatory returns to the South African Reserve Bank in terms of the Banks Act regulations.
- Audits required per the South African Reserve Bank Act.
- Audits required by legislation under the Financial Services Conduct Authority, of:
  - insurance companies;
  - collective investment schemes;
  - pension and retirement funds;
  - provident funds; and
  - any other audits required by the Financial Advisory and Intermediary Services Act (FAIS).
- Audits of Medical Schemes.
- Audits on behalf of the Auditor-General:
  - Secondment of staff to assist the Auditor-General – no opinion is expressed and consequently these engagements should be excluded;
  - Performance of an engagement under the supervision of the Auditor-General (so called "contracted out" engagements). Although this audit opinion is signed by the Auditor-General, a substantial portion of the work is performed by the contracted firm. These engagements should be included; and
  - Audits performed and signed by a firm in terms of Section 4(3) of the Public Audit Act, 2004 (as amended). These engagements should be included.
- Trust accounts for legal practitioners (including attorney trust accounts).
- Estate Agents (business and trust accounts).
- Audits of Cooperatives.
- Audits of non-profit organisations where the turnover is **more than R50 million**.
- Audits of all tertiary educational institutions.
- Audits required by the Sectional Titles Schemes Management Act, 2011 (as amended).
- Assurance work related to other regulatory returns in respect of **any of the above audit clients**.

Low risk assurance work, being all assurance work not already stated above and including:

- Voluntary audits by decision.
- Independent reviews required in terms of the Companies Act of 2008, as amended.
- Other assurance work.

INTEGRITY I PUBLIC INTEREST I AUDIT QUALITY

ANNEXURE B

FORM 2

INDEPENDENT REGULATORY BOARD FOR AUDITORS

(Established under Section 3 of Act 26 of 2005)

APPLICATION BY A FIRM FOR ADMISSION TO THE REGISTER OF AUDITORS

(For application in terms of Section 38(2)) and Section 40 (2)

This firm hereby applies to be registered as a Registered Auditor and submits the following information in support of its application:

1. **FIRM DETAILS:**

(a)	Full name of firm (head office):	
(b)	Type of firm (Sole Proprietorship, Partnership or Incorporated Company):*	
(c)	Company Registration Number (if applicable):	
(d)	Postal address of firm (including province and postal code):	
(e)	Street address of firm (including province and postal code):	
(f)	Physical area in which firm practices (this will be the area displayed on the IRBA website).	
(g)	Firm's telephone number:	
(i)	Firm's primary email address: (This is the email to which IRBA will send all communications, except accounts, and which will reflect on the IRBA website.)	
(j)	Firm's Secondary email address for firm: (This email address will only be used if we are unable to contact the firm on the primary email address provided.)	
(k)	Firm's website address (if applicable):	

* These are the only entities that may be registered with the IRBA as audit firms in terms of section 38 of the Auditing Profession Act, 26 of 2005.

2. **ACCOUNTS CONTACT PERSON**

(a)	Name of accounts contact person:	
(b)	Email address:	
(c)	Direct telephone number:	

3. REGISTERED AUDITORS IN THE FIRM

Full names of RAs in firm	IRBA registration no (if individual application in process, write "pending")	Status in firm **(please specify whether partner, director, senior partner, sole practitioner, employee, consultant, CEO, Quality Leader, or Risk Leader)**	Is this RA assurance or non-assurance?	Is this RA attached to a branch? If branch, please indicate which branch.

4. BRANCHES:

For each branch, please provide the following information. If your firm has more than one branch, please provide the additional information on an attached page in this format.

(a)	Name of branch:	
(b)	Telephone number of branch:	
(c)	Email address of branch:	
(d)	Postal address of branch (including province and postal code):	
(e)	Street address of branch (including province and postal code):	
(f)	Area in which branch practices (this will be the area displayed on the IRBA website).	

5. BROAD BASED BLACK ECONOMIC EMPOWERMENT STATUS

Please select one of the following to indicate the category of your firm's B-BBEE status. Is your firm:

1.	A Start Up Enterprise (a recently formed or incorporated Entity that has been in operation for less than 1 year	Yes	No
2.	An Exempted Micro Enterprise	Yes	No
3.	A Qualifying Small Enterprise to which the QSE scorecard applies	Yes	No
4.	An Enterprise to which the Generic Scorecard applies	Yes	No
5.	An Enterprise to which a Sector Code Scorecard applies	Yes	No

If you selected 3, 4 or 5 above, have you obtained a Rating of your B-BBEE status from an accredited Verification Agency or approved RA or a member of an Approved Professional Institute? _Yes / No__

If yes, please attach a copy of your Verification Certificate and Scorecard.

Please indicate the level of your B-BBEE status as reflected on your Verification Certificate by selecting the equivalent level:

B-BEE status	Please select
Level 1	
Level 2	
Level 3	
Level 4	
Level 5	
Level 6	
Level 7	
Level 8	
Non-compliant	

The following documents must be attached to this application (see **Annexure A** for further information):

- Business plan;
- A statement that ISQM has been implemented, with substantiation as set out in Annexure A;
- Details of firm ownership and directorship, if applicable, including memorandum of incorporation, shareholders agreement, copy of shareholders register / securities register, share certificates and CIPC COR39 Form.

I certify that the above information is true and correct in every detail.

I attach proof of payment of the registration fee in the amount of **R**_____ in respect of the year ending **31 March** _____

I understand that the registration fee is not pro-rated.

The IRBA's banking details are:

Bank: Standard Bank
Branch: Eastgate
Branch Code: 018505
Account Number: 221290532

_____ _____
Date Signature

_____

Capacity

Please note we cannot start processing your application without confirmation of payment.

Please note further that if you are re-registering a firm, we cannot start processing the firm's application until any outstanding fees or other amounts due to the IRBA by the previously registered firm, if any, have been paid.

If you withdraw or cancel your application for firm registration, you will be refunded the registration fee less a 15% administration fee on submission of proof of your banking details to registry@irba.co.za.

PLEASE NOTE YOUR FIRM APPLICATION WILL TAKE 4 TO 6 WEEKS TO REVIEW DUE TO THE DOCUMENTS TO BE EVALUATED, DEPENDING ON THE VOLUME OF APPLICATIONS RECEIVED. IN THE ORDINARY COURSE OF EVENTS, YOU CAN THEREFORE EXPECT FEEDBACK WITHIN THIS TIME FRAME.

THE FIRM DOCUMENTS ARE REQUIRED FOR BOTH NEW AND RE-REGISTRATIONS OF FIRMS.

Please email your application form and supporting documentation to registry@irba.co.za.

Please note that in order for the IRBA to engage with you, it will have to Process certain Personal Information which belongs to you, which Processing is described and explained under the specific and informative IRBA Processing Notices, housed for ease of reference on IRBA's website at https://www.irba.co.za/library/popi-act, which we ask you to download and read. By providing us with the required Personal Information, such act will be taken as an indication that you have read and agree with the provisions described under the Processing Notice and, where applicable, you consent to the processing by us of your Personal Information.

ANNEXURE A

DOCUMENTATION TO BE SUBMITTED WITH THIS APPLICATION

We require all candidates who are registering a new firm, re-registering a previously registered firm where the below documents were not submitted on the previous registration of the firm, or converting existing firms from non-assurance to assurance, to first set up their audit quality structures before we register their firms.

We require this because we believe it is in the public interest for the IRBA as a regulator to ensure that all firms have their Quality Management structures in place. This also ensures that your firm is running in accordance with ISQM.

We generally find that the process of setting up these structures is one that is very beneficial to you and those you will be working with as it focusses on the overall structures in terms of quality.

The following documents must be submitted with this application relating to the practice you intend to register:

1. Business plan (practice plan);

2. A statement that ISQM has been implemented, supported as per the below details; and

3. Firm ownership and directorship confirmation (if applicable).

---

1. BUSINESS PLAN

The business plan must contain more than an introduction. It must contain items such as:

- the structure of the firm;
- services offered by the firm;
- resources (HR, IT etc. including what software the firm will be using);
- financial projections including revenue streams (such as will your clients be private or public sector clients,
  how will clients be sourced);
- organogram of firm;
- risk identification and mitigation strategy; and
- firm's transformation strategy and objectives.

2. QUALITY MANAGEMENT:

2.1 A statement that ISQM1 has been implemented, supported by:

2.1 (a) Evidence in respect of all relevant components in accordance with paragraphs 57 to 60 of ISQM1; and

2.1 (b) Evidence of compliance with the specified responses in paragraph 34 of ISQM1.

In assessing the fulfilment of the requirements of paragraph 9.2.4.2 above, recognition and application of the scalability considerations described in paragraph 10 of ISQM1 will apply.

3. CONFIRMATION OF FIRM OWNERSHIP AND DIRECTORSHIP

- If the firm you wish to register is an incorporated company, we will require the following documents:
  - Copy of shareholders register / securities register / share certificates and
  - Copy of the latest COR39 from CIPC indicating all the directors of the company.
- If the firm you wish to register is a partnership, we will require the following document:
  - Copy of partnership agreement or equivalent.
- If the firm is a sole proprietorship, we do not require any confirmation documents.

INTEGRITY I PUBLIC INTEREST I AUDIT QUALITY

ANNEXURE C

FORM 2A

INDEPENDENT REGULATORY BOARD FOR AUDITORS
(Established under Section 3 of Act 26 of 2005)

DETAILS OF BRANCH OF A FIRM

This form is only to be used to provide details of branches of firms.

Please complete one Form 2A per branch of a firm

1. **FIRM DETAILS**

(a)	Name of firm applying for registration on Form 2 or currently registered with the IRBA:	
(b)	If the firm is currently registered with the IRBA, what is the firm's IRBA practice number?	
(c)	Name by which branch is known:	

2. **BRANCH CONTACT DETAILS**

(a)	Postal address of branch (including province and postal code):	
(b)	Street address of branch (including province and postal code):	
(d)	Telephone number of branch:	
(e)	Email address of branch:	
(f)	Physical area in which firm practices (this will the area that will be reflected on the IRBA website)	

3. **RESIDENT RAs AT BRANCH**

Please attach additional page in this format if there is insufficient space below to list all the RAs.

Name and surname of RA	IRBA Registration Number	Role in firm (ie. director / partner / senior partner / employee / consultant / CEO / Risk Leader / Quality Leader)

ANNEXURE C

I confirm that the above information is true and correct in every detail to the best of my knowledge and belief.

_____
Date

_____
Signature

_____
Capacity

Please email the completed form to registry@irba.co.za.

Please note that in order for the IRBA to engage with you, it will have to Process certain Personal Information which belongs to you, which Processing is described and explained under the specific and informative IRBA Processing Notices, housed for ease of reference on IRBA's website at https://www.irba.co.za/library/popi-act, which we ask you to download and read. By providing us with the required Personal Information, such act will be taken as an indication that you have read and agree with the provisions described under the Processing Notice and, where applicable, you consent to the processing by us of your Personal Information.

ANNEXURE D

FORM 5

INDEPENDENT REGULATORY BOARD FOR AUDITORS
(Established under Section 3 of Act 26 of 2005)

APPLICATION BY AN INDIVIDUAL TO REGISTER AS A REGISTERED CANDIDATE AUDITOR
(For application in terms of Section 37(1))

I hereby apply to be registered as a Registered Candidate Auditor (RCA) and I submit the following information in support of my application:

1. Is this your first application to be registered as an RCA? _____

2. If the answer to question 1 is no, please provide your previous registration number and reasons for your previous registration. _____

3. Name in full: (please use block letters)
   (a) Title: _____
   (b) Surname (and maiden name, if applicable): _____
   (c) Forename(s) as per ID: _____
   (d) Preferred name: _____

4. Addresses: **(Please complete all the address details.)**
   (a) Your physical address: _____
   _____
   (b) Your postal address: _____
   _____
   (c) Your firm's postal address:_____
   _____

5. Telephone number: (_____) _____
   Cell number: (_____) _____ Email address: _____

6. Identity number: _____ Race* _____
   Gender*_____
   (Please attach a copy of your identity document or card)

7. If you do not have a South African identity document, please provide the following details

   Passport number: _____ Country of issue: _____

   Date of issue: _____ Date of expiry: _____
   (please provide a copy of the passport)

8. I was registered as a trainee accountant from _____ to _____

   and my registration number was _____

9. Do you intend applying for the Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) for a part of the period since completion of your training contract; if so indicate the period you intend to apply for RPL? Also indicate whether this period was attained in your current firm.
   _____
   _____
   _____

10. I passed the Assessment of Professional Competence (APC) on _____ (date)

ANSWER "YES" OR "NO" TO QUESTIONS 12 TO 16

11. Are there any outstanding or in-progress disciplinary matters against you? If yes, please provide details on a separate page _____

12. Have you at any time been removed from an office of trust because of misconduct related to a discharge of that office? If yes, please provide details on a separate page. _____

13. Have you at any time been convicted, whether in the Republic or elsewhere, of theft, fraud, forgery, uttering a forged document, perjury, an offence under the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004, or any other offence involving dishonesty? If yes, please provide details on a separate page. _____

    PLEASE NOTE THAT A VALID POLICE CLEARANCE CERTIFICATE MUST BE SUBMITTED WITH THIS APPLICATION.

14. Are you, for the time being, declared by a competent court to be of unsound mind or unable to manage your own affairs? If yes, please provide details on a separate page. _____

15. Are you an unrehabilitated insolvent, have you entered into a compromise with your creditors, are you under debt review, or have you been provisionally sequestrated? If yes to any of these questions, please provide details on a separate page. _____

16. Are you a member of a professional body accredited as such by the Board? _____

    16.1 If you answered yes to question 16, please state the name of the body and your membership number **(please attach proof of good standing with the professional body accredited by the IRBA)**:
    _____

    Please note that membership of a professional body accredited by the IRBA is required for registration and continued registration with the IRBA. The only professional body currently accredited by the IRBA is the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA).

17. Are you resident within South Africa? _____

    Please note that residence in South Africa is a requirement for registration and continued registration with the IRBA.

PLEASE NOTE AND BE AWARE OF THE QUESTIONS ON FORM 1 TO APPLY FOR REGISTRATION AS A REGISTERED AUDITOR, WHICH FORM YOU WILL NEED TO COMPLETE TO APPLY FOR REGISTRAITON AS AN RA ONCE YOU HAVE COMPLETED YOUR ADP. PLEASE PAY SPECIFIC ATTENTION TO THE QUESTIONS RELATING TO FIT AND PROPER. YOU WILL FIND THIS FORM UNDER THE REGISTRY SECTION OF THE WEBSITE.

FIRM INFORMATION

18. Name of a registered audit firm that will offer the Audit Development Programme (ADP)

_____

19. Full name and surname of the Oversight Registered Auditor (ORA)

_____

20. ORA's IRBA registration number

_____

21. ORA's identity number

_____

22. ORA's email address

_____

PLEASE PROVIDE BRIEF RESPONSES TO THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS:

Firms with candidates registered on the ADP will be required to go through a monitoring process. The monitoring process is useful for creating an environment that is conducive to the development of professional competence of aspirant Registered Auditors. (Please refer to the IRBA website for the Standards and Indicators that form the basis of the ADP Monitoring process).

23. Has the abovementioned firm been subject to and undergone an IRBA firm inspection in the past three years?

_____

24. Please provide details of your firm's audit methodology? .

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

25. Does the firm have an established quality control system as required by international standards on quality control? Please provide details

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

26. Does the firm have policies and procedures in place for acceptance of new clients and continuance with existing clients? Briefly explain.

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

27. Does the firm have policies and procedures regarding documentation retention? Briefly explain.

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

FIRM'S JOB PLANNING TOOL

28. Firm's job planning
(Please attach a copy of your firm's job planning documentation or use the provided template. The job planning template should indicate the clients that you have been allocated for either a six-month or 12- month period – refer to the ADP Booklet for more details in this regard.)

I certify that the above information is true and correct in every detail, and I undertake to comply with the Code of Professional Conduct, as updated from time to time by the IRBA. **

I enclose a cheque, or proof of payment, in the amount of **R**_____ in respect of the application fee.

The IRBA's banking details are:

Bank:	Standard Bank
Branch:	Eastgate
Branch Code:	018505
Account Number:	221290532

Please note that we cannot start processing your application without confirmation of payment.

Please sign:

_____ _____

Date Signature of applicant

_____ _____

Date Signature of ORA

* This information is requested in order to gauge the profession's success in becoming more representative of the people in South Africa.

** The IRBA's Code of Professional Conduct is available on our website at www.irba.co.za.

Please e-mail us your application form and supporting documentation to adpadmin@irba.co.za.

Please note that in order for the IRBA to engage with you, it will have to Process certain Personal Information which belongs to you, which Processing is described and explained under the specific and informative IRBA Processing Notices, housed for ease of reference on IRBA's website at https://www.irba.co.za/library/popi-act, which we ask you to download and read. By providing us with the required Personal Information, such act will be taken as an indication that you have read and agree with the provisions described under the Processing Notice and, where applicable, you consent to the processing by us of your Personal Information.

INTEGRITY I PUBLIC INTEREST I AUDIT QUALITY

ANNEXURE E

FORM 6

INDEPENDENT REGULATORY BOARD FOR AUDITORS
(Established under Section 3 of Act 26 of 2005)

APPLICATION BY AN INDIVIDUAL REGISTERED AUDITOR TO CHANGE FROM A NON-ASSURANCE TO AN ASSURANCE REGISTRATION STATUS

I, a Registered Auditor, hereby request to change my registration status from non-assurance to assurance:

1. PERSONAL DETAILS

Surname:	
Forename(s):	
IRBA individual registration number:	

2. ASSURANCE CATEGORY

Is any of the assurance work you intend to perform classified as high risk as per **Annexure A**?	

3. FIRM DETAILS

You must be linked to a firm registered with the IRBA in order to perform assurance work.

3.1 If you are currently linked to a firm registered with the IRBA, please provide the following details:

Name of firm:	
IRBA practice number:	
Role in firm: (Please select either partner, director, sole proprietor, senior partner, CEO, Risk Leader, Quality Leader or employee.)	

If the firm to which you are currently linked is a non-assurance firm (eg. you are the sole proprietor and are non-assurance, or there is more than one partner in the firm and all partners are non-assurance), you will also need to provide a business plan for the firm, an ISQM manual and the name and RA number of the RA identified as the practice's Quality Reviewer as well as copies of the agreements entered into with the Quality Reviewer. (See **Annexure B**)

3.2 If you are intending to join a firm registered with the IRBA, please submit a completed **Form 1A** with this application.

3.3 If you are intending to register a new firm with the IRBA, please submit a completed **Form 2** with this application.

3.4 If you are an employee in a firm, please also submit a letter from the Senior Partner, CEO or equivalent of the firm confirming your position in the firm, your assurance proficiency, how your

assurance proficiency was determined and that they are aware you are applying to change your status to assurance.

4. SUPPORTING DOCUMENTS

If it has been more than three years since you were last assurance or if you were registered with the IRBA as non-assurance, you will need to submit the following documents with your application:

- A brief CV detailing your professional history with specific reference to your assurance roles and experience;
- completed CPD reflective plans including your final reflections for the past three years, including the current year and your most current assurance CPD;
- A letter motivating why you now seek assurance registration;
- If you are a partner or shareholder and director in a firm, a letter from the Senior Partner, CEO or equivalent of the firm confirming your position in the firm and your assurance proficiency, how your assurance proficiency was determined; and that they are aware you are applying to change your status to assurance.

In these scenarios, you will be required to attend an interview with the IRBA's Proficiency Assessment Panel and a proficiency interview fee in the amount prescribed by the Board for the relevant year of the application will be payable prior to the date of your proficiency interview.

I CERTIFY THAT THE ABOVE INFORMATION IS TRUE AND CORRECT IN EVERY DETAIL.

_____ _____

Date Signature of applicant

Please submit your completed form to registry@irba.co.za.

Please note that in order for the IRBA to engage with you, it will have to Process certain Personal Information which belongs to you, which Processing is described and explained under the specific and informative IRBA Processing Notices, housed for ease of reference on IRBA's website at https://www.irba.co.za/library/popi-act, which we ask you to download and read. By providing us with the required Personal Information, such act will be taken as an indication that you have read and agree with the provisions described under the Processing Notice and, where applicable, you consent to the processing by us of your Personal Information.

ANNEXURE A

WHAT IS HIGH AND LOW RISK ASSURANCE WORK?

High risk audits and related assurance work:

This refers to assurance engagements that are performed by RAs and firms that are required in terms of legislation or regulation. These engagements include but are not limited to:

- Audits required in terms of the Companies Act of 2008 (as amended), of:
  - public companies;
  - state-owned enterprises; and
  - private companies with a public interest score of 350 or more;
  - private companies with a public interest score of less than 350 but at least 100, if its annual financial statements were internally compiled;
  - private companies with a public interest score below 350 and where the MOI was altered to include an audit requirement. Such an engagement is not considered to be a voluntary audit.
- Audits of banks and regulatory returns to the SARB in terms of the regulations to the Banks Act.
- Audits required per the South African Reserve Bank Act.
- Audits required by legislation under the Financial Services Conduct Authority, of:
  - insurance companies;
  - collective investment schemes;
  - pension and retirement funds;
  - provident funds; and
  - any other audits required by the Financial Advisory and Intermediary Services Act (FAIS).
- Audits of Medical Schemes.
- Audits on behalf of the Auditor-General:
  - Secondment of staff to assist the Auditor-General – no opinion is expressed and consequently these engagements should be excluded;
  - Performance of an engagement under the supervision of the Auditor-General (so called "contracted out" engagements). Although this audit opinion is signed by the Auditor-General, a substantial portion of the work is performed by the contracted firm. These engagements should be included; and
  - Audits performed and signed by a firm in terms of Section 4(3) of the Public Audit Act, 2004 (as amended). These engagements should be included.
- Trust accounts for legal practitioners (including attorney trust accounts).
- Estate Agents (business and trust accounts).
- Audits of Cooperatives.
- Audits of non-profit organisations where the turnover is **more than R50 million**.
- Audits of all tertiary educational institutions.
- Audits required by the Sectional Titles Schemes Management Act, 2011 (as amended).
- Assurance work related to other regulatory returns in respect of **any of the above audit clients**.

Low risk assurance work, being all assurance work not already stated above and including:

- Voluntary audits by decision.
- Independent reviews required in terms of the Companies Act of 2008, as amended.
- Other assurance work.

ANNEXURE B

We require all candidates who are registering a new firm, re-registering a previously registered firm where the below documents were not submitted on the previous registration of the firm, or converting existing firms from non-assurance to assurance, to first set up their audit quality structures before we register their firms or process the change of status from non-assurance to assurance.

We require this because we believe it is in the public interest for the IRBA as a regulator to ensure that all firms have their Quality Management structures in place. This also ensures that your firm is running in accordance with ISQM. (ISQM is effective from 15 December 2022).

We generally find that the process of setting up these structures is one that is very beneficial to you and those you will be working with as it focusses on the overall structures in terms of quality.

The following documents must be submitted with this application relating to the practice you intend to register:

1. Business plan (practice plan);

2. Quality (ISQM) manual – the quality manual must be drafted in accordance with ISQC1; and

3. Name and IRBA number of the RA identified as your firm's Quality Reviewer together with agreements entered into with the Quality Reviewer; and

---

1. BUSINESS PLAN

The business plan must contain more than an introduction. It must contain items such as:

- the structure of the firm;
- services offered by the firm;
- resources (HR, IT etc. including what software the firm will be using);
- financial projections including revenue streams (such as will your clients be private or public sector clients,
  how will clients be sourced);
- organogram of firm;
- risk identification and mitigation strategy; and
- firm's transformation strategy and objectives.

2. QUALITY MANUAL:

Your manual must contain all the established procedures and policies covering all aspects of ISQM.

Please ensure that you also submit to us all your templates and checklists as identified in your manual.

Please note that we do not provide templates or examples of the quality manual as we see this as a developmental process you will go through as you familiarise yourself with the requirements of ISQM.

Leaving the process open is very important as different practitioners will have different manuals applicable to their own circumstances.

3. AGREEMENT WITH REVIEWER:

We are generally led by you regarding the structure of the agreement with your reviewer. However, the agreement must cover, amongst others, the following aspects:

- Scope of the review
  - Indicating your expectation from the reviewer on entering into such an agreement
    - Including aspects to be considered or focused on; how you will determine engagements to be reviewed (please ensure that the agreement specifically states that the first three engagements will require a review); and indicating the stages of an audit that would require a review

- Reporting requirement
  - Indicating the report and format thereof to be issued by the reviewer at the end of their review.

- Duration of the review
  - Estimate of the length of the review to be carried out by the reviewer.

- Commencement date
  - Commencement date of the agreement.

- Fees
  - The fees that would be payable to the reviewer for each of the reviews.

- Terms and conditions
  - These would be general terms and conditions of the formal arrangement you are entering into. Such terms would include the responsibilities of the firm.

BOARD NOTICE 468 OF 2023

FINANCIAL SECTOR CONDUCT AUTHORITY

FINANCIAL MARKETS ACT, 2012

APPROVED AMENDMENTS TO THE JSE EQUITIES RULES, JSE DERIVATIVES RULES AND JSE INTEREST RATE & CURRENCY DERIVATIVES RULES: RECOGNITION OF THE JSE OMBUD SCHEME

The Financial Sector Conduct Authority ("FSCA") hereby gives notice under section 71(3)(c)(ii) of the Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act No. 19 of 2012) that the amendments to the JSE Rules have been approved. Please be advised that the rules have been published on the website of the FSCA (www.fsca.co.za) and the website of JSE Limited (www.jse.co.za).

The amendments come into operation on the date of publication.

Ms. Astrid Ludin
Deputy Commissioner
Financial Sector Conduct Authority

Printed by and obtainable from the Government Printer, Bosman Street, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001
Contact Centre Tel: 012-748 6200. eMail: info.egazette@gpw.gov.za
Publications: Tel: (012) 748 6053, 748 6061, 748 6065